Chinese Dialogues
(Pinyin Edition)

By
Fred Fang-yü Wang

Edited by
Henry C. Fenn & Pao-ch'en Lee

August 1975

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
COPYRIGHT NOTICE

This Pinyin version of Fred Fang-yü Wang, CHINESE DIALOGUES (copyright 1953), was prepared by Defense Language Institute and is printed with the kind permission of the copyright owners. It is not for duplication or public sale. It is reproduced by Defense Language Institute only for purposes of the U.S. Government. All inquiries regarding other uses should be addressed to Far Eastern Publications, Yale University, New Haven, Conn.

Except for the conversion to Pinyin, the text, including the Introduction, is unchanged from the 1953 edition. Thus, there may be occasional wordings which are not relevant to current practice at the Defense Language Institute.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction

Lesson 1 Dàoole Shànghǎi (Arriving in Shànghǎi)
   2 Zài Zhàojiā (At the Zhào's')
   3 Zài Zhàojiā Chīfàn (Dinner at the Zhào's')
   4 TĀn Tiānqì (Talking about Weather)
   5 Suōbiàn Tántān (A Chat)
   6 Jī Xīn (Mailing a Letter)
   7 Mǎi Xiè (Buying Shoes)
   8 Zǐ Fāng (Renting a House)
   9 Jiè Jiājù (Borrowing Furniture)
   10 Gu Chúzi (Hiring a Cook)
   11 Dǎ diànhuà (Making a Phone Call)
   12 Diū Dōngxi (Burglary)
   13 Jiāngyǎng (Giving a Lecture)
   14 Dào Shàoxiān Qù (To Shàoxiān)
   15 Zuǒ Lǐbài (Going to Church)
   16 Cānguān Xuéxiào (Visiting a School)
   17 Cānguān Shànghē (Visiting a Class)
   18 Kànbing (Seeing a Doctor)
   19 Chūqu Wánr (An Outing)
   20 Yēcān Yīhòu (Describing a Picnic)
   21 Xīn Xī Lǚxǐng (A Trip to West Lake)
   22 Kàn Shū Kàn Bào (Reading)
   23 TĀn Fàngjiā (Talking about Vacation)
   24 Kèqihuà gen Sūhuà (Courtesy Talk and Proverbs)

List of Notes on Sentence Structure

Vocabulary Index
INTRODUCTION

This book is planned for students of spoken Mandarin who have completed the study of Mr. M. Gardner Tewksbury's *Speak Chinese* or its equivalent (approximately 12 weeks of 25 contact hours per week). The twenty-four lessons are based on everyday conversational situations, and each lesson comprises the following study materials for the student:

1. Dialogues
2. Vocabulary Usage
3. Sentence Structure
4. Pronunciation Drill
5. Questions
6. What Would You Say?
7. Memorization (or Story)
8. Translation

A separate Teacher's Manual is being prepared, containing oral drills for comprehension and other instructional materials which should not be placed in the hands of the student. In addition, both the basic materials of the Teacher's Manual have been recorded on SoundScriber records to make it possible for the student to do a large part of his studying by ear rather than by eye.

Each lesson calls for eight to ten contact hours plus an equal amount of individual study and listening to records. This heavy proportion of classroom contact to homework is necessitated by the objective, which is to speak the language, not to read it. Chinese differs from occidental languages in that the normal medium of reading in Chinese is the ideographic character, which is not essential to the mastery of the spoken language. The spoken language is taught more quickly and effectively through the medium of romanization, but this romanization should be regarded chiefly as a tool. Learning to speak requires plentiful oral drill and the use of recorded materials.

Each teacher will have his own ideas as to how much time should be spent on each section of the lesson. The following outline, recording the experience of the Institute of Far Eastern Languages at Yale University over a period of seven years, is suggestive rather than mandatory.

**Dialogue.** The dialogue is a live situation, and each expression in it is used in a setting. Obviously a student cannot learn the use of an expression without knowing its meaning, but it is equally axiomatic that he doesn't fully understand its meaning without knowing the context in which it is used. Each sentence of the dialogue is important insofar as it shows the student how to use words in a natural situation to express a non-artificial idea. Hence the aim has been to avoid the artificial sentences that once cluttered the pages of language texts - grammatically correct but not necessarily met in current conversation.

Where records are available, the student should prepare for recitation by listening to the sound recording of the dialogue, both with and without reference to the printed text. The normal life situation for learning a language is to listen without preparation to natural conversations and guess new terms from their context. This setting is best simulated if the student is willing to listen several times to the recording without reference to his text, trying to pick new expressions out of the blue. In this way he avoids approaching them as isolated words in a vocabulary list, meeting them instead as dynamic parts of living speech.
The first class period the instructor reads the dialogue to the class in a normal conversational manner and at normal speed, watching for signs of comprehension or of failure to understand. This may be followed by drawing the story out of the class in English and piecing it together. The teacher may read it through a second time with occasional stops to ask a student to translate a sentence as a check on comprehension. The first objective is complete comprehension of the dialogue, without which the subsequent exercises will be relatively ineffective.

Vocabulary Usage. To stress the belief that a word cannot be fully understood apart from a setting the use of each term except the noun is illustrated by one or more sentences. This procedure saves the student the trouble of turning back to the dialogue for an example of use and offers additional contexts in which the term may be used. Nouns seldom raise major problems of usage in Chinese. Drill teachers should avoid merely asking the meaning of a given vocabulary item; the student should be asked to make a sentence using the specified term. Instructors who prefer to give their own examples of use for the new words should take care not to step outside the limits of the lessons already covered. Words frequently have other uses for which the student is not yet ready, the introduction of which at the moment may only complicate his learning without strengthening his understanding.

Sentence Structure. In Speak Chinese the basic sentence patterns of the Chinese language were introduced in a logical order. The second level of instruction, for which Chinese Dialogues has been prepared, calls for review of all patterns introduced on the first level plus extensions and elaborations. This should be done not in order of ease but in topical grouping for comparison. Thus the patterns for the expression of Time are reviewed comparatively, with stress on the positional difference between expressions of time when, which stand before the verb, and time used as a measure, which stands after the verb. Each lesson reviews one or more problems of structure and idiom, and adds further materials and exercises to aid in mastery.

Pronunciation Drill. At the outset of his study of Chinese, the student's pronunciation problems were primarily a matter of mastering unfamiliar sounds. At the second level this adjustment to new sounds should have been completed, but for a long time there may remain the problem of appropriating the rhythms or normal speech and carrying them over from one situation to another. Consequently there is need for drill in imitating rhythmic enunciation of complete phrases or sentences. Here the teacher should be constantly on his guard against 'reading' the drill material rather than 'saying' it conversationally. The Chinese national, raised on the monosyllabic character, used to reading it in a somewhat staccato rhythm, is particularly liable to this fault in teaching. It is easily obviated by quickly memorizing each sentence and saying it without reference to the book.

Questions. A set of questions is offered to which the student is expected to work out appropriate answers. He should constantly bear in mind the principle laid down in Speak Chinese, that the pattern of the question and the pattern of the answer normally parallel each other very closely, in marked contrast to the English custom of inverting the order of subject and verb. This principle actually simplifies the problem for the student; nevertheless it seems to be difficult to persuade him to rely on it. Once he has this rule firmly implanted in his mind, other answer patterns which deviate from this principle may be introduced to enrich the student's speech.
What Would You Say? This is merely a variation on the question-and-answer drill. Given a certain situation, what question would you ask or what remark would you make? The instructor may vary the drill still further by giving a statement and asking what question would be calculated to produce it as an answer. He may have one student make up a question and another student answer it. The old game of "Twenty Questions" is a realistic and palatable way of making the student ask and answer questions.

Memorization or Story. Memorization is sometimes overdone, sometimes underdone, but it certainly has a place in teaching spoken language. The writer studied German under the author of a well-known German grammar. Part of the regular assignment was to commit to memory the illustrative sentences given in the day's quota of grammar text. They were all fundamental structural patterns and some of them have never been forgotten. A contemporary course in Russian is reputed to consist mainly of memorizing a list of several hundred pattern sentences. In the present work a memorization passage is given in every other lesson. The goal in recitation should be correct sentence structure, but deviations in wording which do not affect the essential meaning can well be ignored. The purpose of these exercises is not the reproduction of gems of literature which permit no editing but the acquisition of structural patterns useful in everyday speech.

The stories which alternate with the memorization passages should be treated even more freely. The student studies the story to get the sequence of events and idiomatic expressions. He then tells the story back in his own words. This procedure may be varied by introducing the round-robin approach, which keeps each student alert against the moment when he is called upon to 'go on from there'.

Translation. There are many ways of handling translation exercises. Most laborious of all, most commonly used, but not necessarily most effective is for the instructor to collect and correct all translation exercises and return them to the student - who has on occasion been known to consign the product of the instructor's labors to the waste basket. The main objective of a translation exercise should be to locate the student's problems and forestall repetition of error. Unless grading be considered of prime importance, it seems more economical of teacher time, as well as more effective, to exchange papers in class while the instructor conducts with the aid of a blackboard a clinical analysis of how each English sentence may best be expressed in Chinese and why. Attention to individual problems is assured by questions from the class. The need for grades can easily be met by a brief test after every four or five lessons.

The reader may be surprised that no place has been given to written translation from Chinese into English. This, it is felt, can better be covered orally. The objective of the course is ability to comprehend and to speak, not to compose written translations. The written translations from English into Chinese are tolerated only because they reflect the student's problems of expressing himself in an alien tongue.

Comprehension. Too much time cannot be given to comprehension work of one kind and another. The student of Chinese in America cannot go out onto the street and hear Chinese spoken as he might if he were living in China. The Teacher's Manual offers limited materials aimed at making good this lack. Constant listening to recorded materials offers a second remedy for the situation. To many students this becomes boring after a few repetitions, but such boredom must be overcome, for the student has no better way of getting the rhythms of the language into his subconscious.
We have used at the Institute at least two types of classroom exercise in comprehension. The one is commonly referred to as 'rapid fire'; it consists of reeling off sentences of moderate length at high speed to stimulate the student's attention and accustom him to grasping meaning in complete phrases and sentences rather than word by word. Difficult at the outset, this soon brings the student to the point where he feels a pardonable pride in his ability to understand normal speech at normal speed. The second type of exercise gives the student, at the normal rate of speech, a paragraph at a time, or even an entire anecdote at a time, asking him to catch the train of thought and report the general idea or plot. These two processes complement each other.

**What Next?** It is assumed that most students of Chinese will have taken up the study of the Chinese character and mastered several hundred by the time he has completed **Chinese Dialogues**. From this point on he will naturally devote more time to the character, while his spoken Chinese will arise from the character text he may be studying. To facilitate this transition a romanized sketch of Chinese History, **Zhōngguó Lìshì Gāngyào**, has been prepared. It offers abundant material for classroom discussion in Chinese, not only on the history of China in the past, but on current news. Thus it becomes an appropriate preparation for the reading of the Chinese newspaper. This text is accompanied by a Chinese character version for the convenience of Chinese nationals who may be instructing and for the use of students whose knowledge of characters has reached this level.

Henry C. Fenn

June 15, 1953

**ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

The author wishes to thank Mrs. Gwendolyn T. Lee for her services in preparing the Vocabulary-Index of this book.

Fred Wang
DIYIKE - DÀOLE SHÀNGHÁI

I. Duihuà - (Dialogue)

Sī xiāngsheng cōng Měiguó dào Zhōngguó qù. Dàole Shànghǎi, xià chuán yǐhòu, kànjiàn tàde yiwèi Zhōngguó pěngyou, Zhào Zīǎn, Zhào xiāngsheng. Sī xiāngsheng shàng chuán yǐqián gěi Zhào xiāngsheng dàle yīge diànbào, suǒyì Zhào xiāngsheng dào mǎtoushang qu jiē ta. Zhào xiāngsheng kànjiàn Sī xiāngsheng jiù guόqu gen ta shuō:

Zhào: Sī xiāngsheng, nín láile. Hǎo a?
Sī: Hǎo, nín hǎo a? Xièxiè nín lái jiē wo.
Zhào: Búkèqi. Wǒ jīzhào nín dì diànbào, xīnli fēicháng tōngkuǎi. Chuán shì liùyuè sānhào kālde ma?
Zhào: Yǐdīng hěn lèile ba?
Sī: Nà bùtāi màfan ma? Wǒ xiǎngh wǒ zhù lǐguān ba.
Sī: Nàmen qǐng nǐn děng yídīng. Wǒ qu wǒde xǐngli qu.
Zhào: Xíngli, děng yīhuī jǐào yòngrén lái qǔ, hǎo buhǎo? Wǒmen xiān huìqu ba.
Sī: Yě hǎo. Wǒmen zuò shēnme chē qù ne?
Zhào: Děi xiān zuò gōnggōng-qīché, zài zuò diàncē. Xièle diàncē zài gōu liǎngtiāo jiē jīu dāole.
Sī: Gōnggōng-qīchézhàn zài nǎr?
Zhào: Jiù zài nèibianr yīge yàopū qiāntou. Dào nèige shíziìlǚkǒur, wàng yǒu yìzǒu jīu shì.
Sī: Piào-duōshào qián?
Zhào: Nǐn bùyòng guānle. Wǒ gěi nǐn mǎi.
Sī: Wǒ zǐjǐ mǎi ba.
Zhào: Bù, wǒ mǎi, wǒ mǎi.
Sī: Nàmē xièxiè nín.
II. Shēngzì Yòngfā – (Vocabulary Usage)

(English translations of sentences used in the vocabulary of each lesson as examples of usage can be found in section two of Part VIII of each lesson.)

1. diàn
   N: electricity
1.1 diànhào
   N: telegram, cable
1.2 diànhè
   N: trolley car
1.3 diànhuà
   N: telephone
1.4 diànhuán
   N: electric switch
1.5 dǎ diànhào
   VO: send a telegram
1.6 dǎ diànhuà
   VO: make a phone call

   a. Qǐng nǐ bǎ diànhuàn kāikāi.
   b. Nǐ wèi shénme měigǒi wǒ dǎ diànhuà?

2. mǎitou
   N: dock, wharf

3. jiē
   V: receive, meet (at a train, boat, etc.)
3.1 jiē rén
   VO: meet someone
3.2 jiēzhào
   RV: received, met
3.3 jiē diànhuà
   VO: answer a phone call

   a. Wǒ dào chēzhàn jiē pénghou qule.
   b. Shéi dào tà jiā qu jiē ta qu?
   c. Jǐntiān wǒ jiēzhào tà yífēng diànhào.
   d. Wǒ gěi tà dǎ diànhuà, tà bùjǐē.

4. xīn
   N: heart, mind
4.1 yòngxīn
   SV/VO: put heart into, apply one's mind to

   a. Nǐ dǐ dǎo yòng diànhuà xīn.
   b. "Rén lǎo xīn bùlào."

5. tōngkuài
   SV: be content, be happy

   a. Wǒ yǐkànjiàn tà, xǐnì jīu tōngkuài.
   b. Zúōtiān wǒ jiēzhào yíwěi láo pénghou, tiándé tōngkuàijiē.

6. tǐng
   V: stop, park
6.1 tǐng chē
   VO: park a car, stop a train

   a. Wǒde bǐǎo tǐngle.
   b. Wǒ zhǎoobuzhào dǐfang tǐng chē.

7. dàjiā
   N: everybody
7.1 wǒmen dàjiā
   N: all of us

   a. "Lěng shí yīge rén lěng; rè shì dàjiā rè."

8. máfān
   N: trouble, nuisance
   V: bother, annoy
   SV: be bothersome, annoying
8.1 zhǎo máfān
   VO: look for trouble, make trouble

   a. Wǒ bùyùányi gěi nín zhǎo máfān.
   b. Zhèjiān shǐqìng zhēn máfānjíé.
9. qū | V: fetch, take out, call for (jiě and qū both mean 'fetch', but jiě usually refers to people, qū to things)
9.1 qū xíngli | VO: get baggage
9.2 qū dōngxi | VO: fetch things
9.3 qū qián | VO: fetch money, withdraw money
9.4 qūchulái | RV: take out, withdraw

a. Wǒ děi huí jiě qū wǒde màozi qu.
b. Qián dàgài jīntian qūchulái.

10. xíngli | N: baggage (M: -jiàn)
11. yòngren | N: servant
11.1 nányòngren | N: male servant
11.2 nányòngren | N: maid
12. gōnggòng-qíchē | N: bus, public vehicle (M: -liàng for cart, -tàng for trip)

13. guò | V: pass, cross over
13.1 guòlai | RV: come over
13.2 guòqu | RV: go over, pass away (die)
13.3 guò jiě | VO: cross a street
13.4 guò NU-tiáo jiě | VO: go NU blocks

a. Qīng ni ràng wo guòqu.
b. Tā fùqín zuótian wǎnshāng guòqule.
c. Wáng qián zǒu, guò sāntiáo jiě jiu dào le.

14. yào | N: medicine
14.1 yàopù | N: medicine (herb) shop
15. shízǐ-lùkǒu | PW: street or road intersection
15.1 shízǐ | N: a cross in the shape of the Chinese character ten (十)
15.2 lùkǒu(r) | N: end of a street
16. pǐào | N: ticket (M: -zhāng)
16.1 huǒchēpǐào | N: railroad ticket
16.2 ménpǐào | N: entrance ticket (of any kind)
16.3 xíngli pǐào | N: baggage ticket

17. guǎn | V: manage, take care of, attend to
17.1 guànhèliǎo | RV: can manage (actual form uncommon)
17.2 guǎnbuzháo | RV: none of one's business (actual form uncommon)
17.3 būguǎn | V: don't care whether, no matter whether

a. Zhèjiān shìqìng shèi guǎn?
b. Tā guǎn háizi guǎndé hěnhào.
c. Tāmēn liǎngge rénde shìqìng, wǒ guǎnbuliǎo.
d. Nǐ guǎnbuzháo.
e. Wǒ būguǎn nǐ yǒu qián méi qián, wǒ děi yào yīge màozi.
III. 习近平 — (Sentence Structure)

1. The topic of a sentence: While the topic of a Chinese sentence is most commonly a noun, the following situations are also common:

1.1 Number measure:

\[
\text{Yīge bùgòu.} \quad \text{(One is not enough.)}
\]

1.2 Specifier (with or without measure):

\[
\text{Zhè(ge) shì wǒde.} \quad \text{(This one is mine.)}
\]

1.3 Funtive verb:

\[
\text{Zǒuzhe tài màn.} \quad \text{(Walking is too slow.)}
\]

1.4 Stative verb:

\[
\text{Tài xiǎo méiyǒng.} \quad \text{(Too small is no use.)}
\]

1.5 Verb object:

\[
\text{Chánggēr zhēn yōuyī.} \quad \text{(Singing is very interesting.)}
\]

1.6 Complete sentence:

\[
\text{Wǒ gěi qián, yě xíng.} \quad \text{(It's all right for me to pay.)}
\]

But it is quite common for a Chinese sentence not to have a topic or a subject. When a thing has already been mentioned in the previous sentence, the subject or object referring to it is often omitted. Usually it is the same topic but sometimes the former object may be used as a new topic which is understood. The first two sentences of this lesson illustrate this type:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Sī xiānsheng cóng Měiguó dào Zhōngguó qù.} \\
\text{(Sī xiānsheng) dào le Shānghǎi,} \\
\text{(Sī xiānsheng) xià chuán yīhòu,} \\
\text{(Sī xiānsheng) kǎnjiàn tāde yīwèi Zhōngguo péngyou,} \\
\text{(Péngyou) shì Zhào Zǐǎn, Zhào xiānsheng.}
\end{align*}
\]
In order to comprehend the full meaning of the sentences, one must figure out what the topic of each sentence is.

2. Purpose of coming or going and directional ending:

2.1 A purpose may be expressed in three forms with lái or qù:

- Tā dào chēzhàn qu jiē péngyou.
- Tā dào chēzhàn jiē péngyou qu.
- Tā dào chēzhàn qu jiē péngyou qu.

2.2 Exercise: Translate the following sentences into Chinese, using all three forms:

- He went back home to fetch his hat.
- My friend will come to meet me at the bus depot.
- I plan to go to the country to live.
- He said that he wanted to go to town to have a bus ride.
- He said that he wanted to go to town by bus to buy something.

3. Use of wàng and cōng:

3.1 Wàng may be followed by certain directional boundforms in the pattern:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{wàng} & \quad \text{fēi} \\
\text{-shàng} & \quad \text{zǒu} \\
\text{-xià} & \quad \text{pǎo} \\
\text{-qián} & \quad \text{lái} \\
\text{-hòu} & \quad \text{qù} \\
\text{-zuō} & \\
\text{-yòu} & \\
\text{-dǒng} & \\
\text{-nán} & \\
\text{-xi} & \\
\text{-běi} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

When these directional boundforms are made into full placemarks by the addition of a positional suffix such as -biānr or -tōu, the resultant placemarks may follow both wàng and cōng. E.g.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{shàng-} & \quad \text{dōng-} \\
\text{-tou} & \quad \text{nán-} \\
\text{-biānr} & \quad \text{xī-} \\
\text{qián-} & \quad \text{běi-} \\
\text{-hòu} & \quad \text{zuō-} \\
\text{bìānr (but not -tou)} & \quad \text{yòu-} \\
\end{align*}
\]

3.2 Cōng differs from wàng in three respects:

3.21 In the patterns cōng—lái (come from) and cōng—qù (go from), only dōng, nán, xī, and běi may stand.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cōng} & \quad \text{dōng} \\
\text{nán} & \quad \text{lái (or qù)} \\
\text{xī} & \\
\text{běi} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

3.22 Cōng may refer to time as well as place, so may be followed by TW as well as PW, while wàng may not.
3.23 **Trong** in the sense of 'by way of', 'via', may be followed by either a **PW** or a **N**.

a. Tā shì công zhèr (PW) guòqude.
b. Tā shì công chuānghu (N) jīnlaide.

3.24 **With opposite pairs of directional boundforms, công** may stand before the first of the pair and **wàng** or **dào** before the second. Furthermore, a **wàng**-phrase (CV-O) may always be used by itself, while a **công**-phrase cannot.

\[
\text{công} \begin{cases} 
- shàng \\ - zuò \\ - qián \\ - dōng \\ - nán \\
\end{cases} \begin{cases} 
- wàng \\ - dào \\
\end{cases} \begin{cases} 
- xià \\ - yòu \\ - hòu \\ - xī \\ - bì \\
\end{cases}
\]

3.3 **Exercise:**

3.31 Make sentences using the boundforms listed in 3.1. Use each both independently and as a positional suffix.

3.32 Make sentences with the word **công** meaning 'by way of' or 'through'.

---

IV. Pinyin Liànxié - (Pronunciation Drill)

1. Nǐ gěi shéi dǎ diànbiào le? Wǒ gěi wǒ péngyou.
10. Lǎojiā, huǒchēzhàn zài shènmé dīfāng? Yízhī wàng dōng zǒu, jiù dào le.

---

V. Wèntí - (Questions)

1. Sī xiǎoshēng công shènmé dīfāng dào shènmé dīfāng qu?
2. Tā dào Shānghǎi mātou kānjiān shéi le?
3. Zhào xiǎoshēng zhěnme zhídào Sī xiǎoshēng shènme shīhou dào Shānghǎi?
4. Zhào xiǎoshēng kānjiān Sī xiǎoshēng yǐhou, gèn ta shūshènmé? Sī xiǎoshēng shūshènmé?
5. Sī xiǎoshēng zuòde néitiāo chuán shì jīyuè jīhào kǎidē? Zài lǚshāng tǐngle méítǐng?
6. Néitiāo chuán zǒude kùlǐ bùkùlǐ? Yīgōng zǒule dùōshào tiān?
7. Sī xiǎoshēng shì bùshí hěn lèlè?
8. Sī xiǎoshēng zài chuānshāng yǒu péngyou ma?
9. Sī xiǎoshēng zài chuānshāng de shīhou, zuò shènmé shīqíng?
10. Zhào xiǎoshēng yě juéde zuò chuán yǒuyìsi ma?
11. Zhào xiǎoshēng gěi Sī xiǎoshēng zhào lǚguān 1 le ma? Wèi shènmé?
12. Sī xiǎoshēng wèi shènmé yào zhǔ lǚguān?
13. Sī xiǎoshēng wèi shènmé yào qǐng Zhào xiǎoshēng děng ta yīhuī?
14. Zhào xiǎoshēng wèi shènmé bùrán Sī xiǎoshēng qu qǔ xínglǐ?
15. Công mạtou dào Zhàoxiānshēng jiè déi zuò shènmé ché?  
16. Gōnggōng-qíchézhàn zài shènmé dìfang? Dàole shízǐlúkǒu wàng nèibianr zǒu?  
17. Piāo shì shéi màide? Duōshào qián?  
18. Sī xiānshēng yào mǎi piào, Zhàoxiānshēng shuō shènmé?  
19. Công xuéxiào dào nǐ jiā zěnme zǒu?  
20. Công xuéxiào dào fāngwūnr déi guò jìtiáo jiè?  

VI. Nǐ shùō shènmé — (What Would You Say?)  
1. Yàoshi nǐ dàoole Zhōngguó, yíxià chuán jiu kànjian yiwèi péngyou lái jiè ni láile, nǐ dou wèn ta shènmé?  
2. Nǐ yǒu yìwèi Zhōngguó péngyou, dào Měiguó láile. Nǐ dào mài tōushang qu jiè ta. Nǐ kànjian ta yìhuò, wèn ta shènmé?  
3. Nǐ yào dào huǒchēzhàn qu, kěshì bùrènshī lù. Nǐ zěnme wèn?  
4. Nǐ yào qǐng nǐ péngyou dào nǐ jiā zhuò liǎngtiān, nǐ zěnme gèn ta shuō?  
5. Yàoshi nǐ zhǎobuzháo gōnggōng-qíchézhàn, nǐ zěnme wèn?  

VII. Bèishì — (Memorization)  
A: Lǎojià, dào huǒchēzhàn qu zěnme zǒu?  
B: Nǐ shì zǒuzhe qù, shì zuò chē qù?  
A: Yuǎn buyuǎn?  
A: Yàoshi zuò chē ne?  
B: Qǐántou nèige yàopū nar, jiūshì gōnggōng-qíchézhàn. Zuò sānhào chē, yǐzhǐ jiù dào le.  
A: Hǎo, xièxiè, xièxiè.  

VIII. Fángyì — (Translation)  
1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese:  

1.1 Did you send that telegram?  
1.2 He went to the railway station to meet some friends.  
1.3 Can you go after her?  
1.4 Will they receive the letter I wrote by tomorrow night?  
1.5 They did go to the dock to meet you, but they missed you.  
1.6 As soon as I heard this I felt very unhappy.  
1.7 You cannot park your car in front of this building.  
1.8 None of them went after our baggage.  
1.9 I can ask him to do it for me, but I don't like to bother him.  
1.10 This is really a lot of trouble, don't you think?
1.11 I have to go to the school to get my pen.
1.12 Go to the left three blocks and you will be there.
1.13 Who takes care of meeting Mrs. Lee?
1.14 No matter whether I can afford it or not, I still must buy one for her.
1.15 That's my business, you don't need to interfere.

2. Below are English translations of sentences used in the vocabulary of this lesson as examples of usage. Translate these back into Chinese (numbers corresponding to those in Part II):

(1) a. Please turn on the switch.
     b. Why didn't you phone me?

(3) a. I went to the station to meet some friends.
     b. Who is going to her home to go after her?
     c. I received a telegram from him today.
     d. I called him on the phone, but he wouldn't answer the phone.

(4) a. You must put a little more heart into it.
     b. "Only old in body but not in spirit."

(5) a. As soon as I see him, I feel very happy.
     b. Yesterday I met an old friend and we had a most delightful chat.

(6) a. My watch stopped.
     b. I can't find a place to park.

(7) a. "In cold weather some people are cold; in hot weather everybody is hot."

(8) a. I don't want to cause you any trouble.
     b. This matter is really very troublesome.

(9) a. I have to go home to get (fetch) my hat.
     b. Probably I cannot take this money out today.

(13) a. Please let me pass.
     b. His father passed away last night.
     c. Go straight ahead for three blocks and you will be there.

(17) a. Who takes care of this matter?
     b. She disciplines her child very well.
     c. I cannot manage those two person's affairs.
     d. It's none of your business.
     e. Whether you have money or not, I must have a hat.
DIÈRKE - ZÀI ZHÀOJIA

I. Dùnhuà

Sîmîzî Xs, gĕn Zhào Xs, dàole Zhàojia, Zhào Tt, gĕn liăngge xiăo háizi dou dào kētīngli lái jiān Sî Xs.

Zhào Xs: Lái lái lái, wǒ gěi nimen jièshào jièshào. Zhèwèi shì Sîmîzî Xs, gĕng cong Mèiguó lái. Zhè jiù shì wǒ tài tài gĕn liăngge xiăo háizi.

Sî: O! Zhào Tt! Jiăyăng jiăyăng.

Zhào Tt: Wǒ chăng tīng Zīăn shuō, nǐn yào dao Zhōngguó lái. Liăngge lǐbài yíqiè wǒ jiù bā wūzi gei nǐn shōushihăole. Nǐn zài lùshāng yíqiè dōu hăo ba?

Sî: Hĕn hăo. Chuănshāng yíqiè dōu hĕn fāngbiăn. Nǐn zhei liăngge xiăo háizi jisû le?

Zhào Tt: Dàde básui le. Xiăode wūsûi.

Sî: Dōu shāngxué le ba? Jiăniânjí le?

Zhào Tt: Gēge zai sānniânjí. Dīdī hái měishāngxué ne.


Zhào Tt: Nǐn xiān xǐxi liăn, xiūxiūxi ba. Dēng yihuīr qǐng nǐn gēn wōmen yīkuài chīfăn.


Zhào Tt: Būmāfān. Dēng yihuīr jiān ba.

Sî: Hăo, dēng yihuīr jiān.

II. Shēngzī yòngfā

18. jiăyăng

IE: I've longed to meet you

A: Wǒ xīng Zhāng, wǒ jiăo Zhāng Yūshí.
B: Q, Zhāng Xs! Jiăyăng, jiăyăng!
19. shōushi
   V: fix, repair, clean up, put in order, straighten out.
19.1 shōushi dōngxi
19.2 shōushi wūzi
19.3 shōushi xíngli
19.4 shōushi gīchē
19.5 shōushihāole
19.6 shōushiwánle

   a. Wǒ jīntian zǎoshang děi shōushi shōushi wūzi.
   b. Zhègè zhūōzi huàile. Tā shōushile bāntiān měishōushihāo.

20. yìqiè
    N: all of anything

    a. Yìqiède shòqing nǐ dōu bùyòng guānle.

21. -niánjì
    M: grade in school
21.1 jīniánjì
    PW: what grade or year (in school)?
21.2 sīniánjì
    PW: fourth grade or year (in school)

    a. Tā zài ērniánjíde shíhou, niànshū niànde bùxíng.

22. bǐzi
    N: nose

23. zuǐ
    N: mouth

24. ěrduo
    N: ear (M. -zhī, one of a pair)

25. xiàng
    AV: resemble, seem like
    SV: look alike
25.1 kànzhè xiàng
25.2 tīngzhè xiàng
25.3 xiàng...zhèyàng
25.4 xiàng...nàyàng

    a. Tāmen liǎngge rén hěn xiàng.
    b. Tā shuō huà tīngzhè xiàng cháng gěr.
    c. Wǒ méikànjiānguó xiàng tā nàyàngrde rén.

26. yǎnjìng
    N: eye (M. -zhī)

27. jiānzhi(de)
    A: simply, just

    a. Jiānzhi(de) shuō ba. Wǒ bùyuányi qù.
    b. Tā jiānzhi(de) bùxǐhuān niàn shū.

28. -jiān
    M: (for rooms)

    a. Zhègè fángzi yīgòng yòu wūjiān wūzi.

29. chuāng
    N: bed (M. -zhāng)

30. shōujīn
    N: towel (M. -tiáo; -kuàì)

31. yízi
    N: soap (M. -kuàì)

32. yá
    N: tooth
33. shuā
33.1 shuā yá
33.2 shuā yǐshang
33.3 shuāzì
33.4 yáshuā
V: brush
VO: brush teeth
VÖ: brush clothes
N: brush (M. -bǎ — generally for things which have handles or parts grasped by the hand in using)
N: toothbrush (M. -bǎ)

a. Zhège màozi tài zāngle, wǒ kàn shuābùgānjingle.

34. yágāo
N: toothpaste (M. -tōng — meaning tube, keg, barrel, tank)

35. (xī)zǎofāng
35.1 xīzāo
N: bathroom (M. -jiān)
VO: to take a bath

36. qiānwàn
A: by all means, without fail, be sure

a. Qīng nǐ qiānwàn bié wàngle.

37. xiūxi
V: rest, take a vacation

a. Wǒ zhèi jìtiān tài lèile, děi xiūxi jìtiān le.

38. bùhǎoyílsì
A/SV: be embarrassed, be shy

a. Nǐ gèn tāmen shuō nèige huà, ràng wǒ hěn bùhǎoyílsì.
b. Wǒ bùhǎoyílsì yào tūde qiān.

III. Jùzì Gòuzào

1. Shí—de Construction:

1.1 The shí—de construction is used to stress some attendant circumstance such as time, place, means, purpose, rather than the action of the main verb. In every case, the action of the main verb is already known or has been mentioned, and it is the when, where, who, what or how of the action that is to be stressed. While the de follows the main verb, the shi is generally right before the Circumstance to be stressed:

1.11 Tā (shi) zuótiān cóng Nǐyuē zuò huǒchē láiide.
1.12 Tā zuótiān (shi) cóng Nǐyuē zuò huǒchē láiide.
1.13 Tā zuótiān cóng Nǐyuē (shi) zuò huǒchē láiide.

Note that the shì is sometimes omitted in this construction, in which case the stress depends entirely on the voice.

1.2 It has just been stated that the de is generally placed right after the main verb. However, when there is an object after the main verb, the de can be placed either after the verb (V-de-O) or after the object (VO-de):

1.21 Nèige ren shì shàngyuè huìde guó. (or)
1.22 Nèige ren shì shàngyuè huì guó de.

The former pattern is more common and is recommended for general use.
1.3 **Exercise**: Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

1.31 I bought a book. Do you know how much I bought it for?
1.32 He has already come. He came by boat.
1.33 Did you fix your room? Yes, I did. When did you fix it?
1.34 Have you brushed my clothes? Which brush did you brush them with?
1.35 It was this morning I bought this watch at that store.
1.36 It was at that store I bought this watch this morning.
1.37 This morning I bought this watch at that store for three dollars.
1.38 When did you have lunch today?
1.39 I didn't buy this book myself. He bought it for me.

2. **The Use of **bǐ**:**

2.1 *bǐ* has been introduced in *Speak Chinese* as a co-verb. However, it can also be used as a full verb.

Wǒmen lǐngge ren bǐ le bǎntiān, hǎishì bùzhīdao shéi gāo.

2.2 A co-verbal phrase with *bǐ* (*bǐ*–*O*) generally modifies a stative verb as in the example in 2.1. But it may also modify:

2.21 Certain auxiliary verbs such as *xǐhuān* and *ài*. When the meaning is well established, the functional verb can sometimes be left out:

Tā bǐ wǒ ài wángr.
Wǒ bǐ tā xǐhuān (chǐ).

2.22 Or a functional verb preceded by certain such adverbs as *duō*, *shāo*, *zǎo*, *wǎn*, *xiān* and *hòu* (and possible some others) and followed by a number-measure:

Tā bǐ wǒ duō chǐle yīwǎn fàn.
Tā bǐ wǒ zǎo láile yīge zhōngtuō.

2.3 Degree of comparison is expressed by a predicate complement which is put after the stative verb. It may take any of the following forms:

\[ \text{Zhěige } bǐ \text{ nèige guī} \]

\[ \{ \text{duōle} \quad \text{–} \quad \text{duō} \]
\[ \quad \text{yìdiǎnr} \]
\[ \quad \text{zānmáo} \text{ (qián)} \]
\[ \quad \text{hǎoxí} \]
\[ \quad \text{bùshǎo} \]
\[ \quad \text{bùduō} \]
\[ \quad \text{bùsháo} \]

It is important to remember that the two superlative adverbs *hěn* and *tài* never precede the stative verb in a sentence expressing degree of comparison.
2.4 **Exercise:** Translate into Chinese:

- 2.41 Her eyes are much more beautiful than her sister’s.
- 2.42 This towel is a little cheaper than that one.
- 2.43 I can fix it much better than he can.
- 2.44 He is one inch taller than I.
- 2.45 He works one more hour than I do.
- 2.46 This pen is one dollar cheaper than the other one.
- 2.47 I am three years older than he is.
- 2.48 I came here only five minutes earlier than he did.
- 2.49 He knows much more than I do.
- 2.410 As soon as you compare these two books, you will know which one is better.

3. **Liàn—Dōu (or Yē):**

3.1 **Liàn** is a co-verb whose object may be either nominal or verbal. The main verb of the sentence, which is modified by the **liàn-O** phrase, must be preceded by dōu or yē. Examples of the different types of object which may follow liàn are:

- 3.11 a noun: Liàn yǒu rén dōu méiyǒu,
- 3.12 a verb: Liàn kàn yě bùkàn,
- 3.13 a S-V: Liàn wǒ qù dōu bùxíng,
- 3.14 a V-O: Tā liàn chǐfàn dōu chībuqǐ,
- 3.15 a S-V-O: Liàn wǒ gěi qián tā dōu bùyuǎnyì, or
- 3.16 a SV: Tāde liàn lián hóng dōu měihóng, and possibly some others.

3.2 **Exercise:** Translate into Chinese:

- 3.21 Even the children know a few words of English.
- 3.22 I don’t even know where he is.
- 3.23 He won’t even give a dollar for it.
- 3.24 Don’t ask him to buy it. He cannot afford even an old car.
- 3.25 He won’t even listen to his wife.
- 3.26 He doesn’t want to sell even if I buy it.
- 3.27 He feels dull even when drinking.
- 3.28 Mrs. Zhōu won’t even come even if I invite her.
- 3.29 When I got up this morning, it wasn’t even daybreak.
- 3.30 He won’t wash his face even when I offered him one dollar.

IV. **Fāyín Liànxi**

1. Wǒ gěi nǐn jièshào jièshào. Zhèwèi shì Zhāng Xs. jīyāng jīyāng.
2. Yíděde dōngxi, dou shōushíhào ma? Dōu shōushíhào.
5. Shōujīn, yīzǐ, yāshū, yágǎo, dōu mǎile ma?
   Shōujīn, yīzǐ, dōu mǎile, yāshū, yágǎo, hái méimǎi ne.
7. Tāde bīzǐ, zuǐ, yǎnjīng, èrduo dou xiàng shèi? Shèi dou bùxiàng.
V. Wèntí

1. Sīmīzī Xs. dào le Zhào Xs. jia, shéi lái jiàn ta? Dào shénme dìfang lái jiàn ta?
2. Zhào Xs. jiēshaode shìfhou, shì zěnme shuōde?
3. Zhào Xs. gěi tūmen jiēshaowánle yǐhou, Sī Xs. shuō shénme?
4. Zhào Tt. zěnme zhǐdào Sī Xs. yào dào Zhōngguó lái?
5. Zhào Tt. shuō, ta shénme shìfhou jiù bā Sī Xs. de wūzǐ shǒushihǎole?
6. Zhàojia yǒu jǐge háizi? Shì nán de shì nǚ de? Jīsūl 1e?
7. Zhàojiade háizi shàngxué le méiyòu? Zài jīniánjī?
8. Sī Xs. shuō dà háizi xiàng shéi? Shénme dìfang zú xiàng?
9. Xiǎode xiàng shéi? Shénme dìfang xiàngde lǐhài?
10. Zhào Tt. ràng Sī Xs. kàn tāde wūzǐ méiyòu?
11. Zhào Tt. shuō nèige chuāng zěnmeiyàng?
12. Nǐ xiǎng Sī Xs. zài Zhàojia zhù bǐ zhù lǚguān zěnmeiyàng?
13. Zhào Tt. gěi Sī Xs. yǔbei le shénme dōngxi 1e?
14. Yàoshì Sī Xs. yào yòng bǐde dōngxi, tā děi zěnme bān?
15. Zhào Tt. qīng Sī Xs. kàn wánle wūzǐ, gēn Sī Xs. shuō shénme?
16. Zhào Tt. qīng Sī Xs. gēn tūmen yǐkùài chī wānfàn, Sī Xs. shuō shénme?
17. Nǐ zài pěngyou jiāli zhùguō méiyòu? Nǐ juéde zhùzài pěngyou jiāli bǐ zhù lǚguān fāngbian ma?
18. Nǐ shénme shìfhou kěyì shuō "jīyǎng"?
19. Nǐ xiǎng nǐ fǔqin, xiǎng nǐ mùqin?
20. Nǐ hui shǒushì qǐché ma? Nǐ hui shǒushì shénme?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshì yǒu rén gěi ni jiēshào xīn pěngyou, nǐ tīngjiān tāde míngzi yǐhou, shuō shénme? Nǐ wèn ta shénme?
2. Nǐ gěi nǐde pěngyoumen jiēshāode shìfhou, zěnme shuō?
3. Nǐ kànjiàn nǐ pěngyoude xiǎo háizi de shìfhou, wèn ta shénme? Nǐ wèn ta fūmǔ shénme?
5. Yàoshì nǐ qīng pěngyou zài jiāli zhù, nǐ yào ràng tā kànkan tāde wūzǐ, gāosòng tā shénme dōngxi zai shénme dìfang, nǐ zěnme shuō?
VII. Gùshì
(On Record)

VIII. Pànyì

1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

1.1 I must straighten up the dining room.

1.2 He said that he didn't know how to repair this automobile, but he fixed it.

1.3 He is in the fourth grade. What grade are you in?

1.4 His nose certainly looks like his mother's.

1.5 These two girls look very much alike.

1.6 It sounds like Chinese.

1.7 He simply does not think.

1.8 He just doesn't understand.

1.9 When you go down town, be sure you don't forget to buy some tooth brushes for me.

1.10 I take a bath in the morning and wash dishes at night.

1.11 Do you want to have a rest?

1.12 I want to rest a couple of weeks.

1.13 I want to take a week's vacation.

1.14 I am embarrassed to tell him.

1.15 It was a very embarrassing situation.

2. Translate back into Chinese the following sentences which are translations of the examples of usage in the vocabulary of this lesson:

(18) A. My surname is Zhāng and my given name is Yūshí.
    B. Oh, Mr. Zhāng, I've longed to meet you.

(19) a. This morning I must straighten up my room.
    b. This table is broken. He has tried to repair it, but didn't succeed.

(20) a. You don't have to worry about any of the business.

(21) a. When he was in the second grade, his studying was futile.

(25) a. The two of them are very much alike.
    b. When he talks, it sounds like singing.
    c. I have never seen anyone like him.
(27) a. To speak frankly, I don't want to go.
b. He simply does not like to study.

(28) a. Altogether this house has five rooms.

(33) a. This hat is too dirty, I don't think it can be brushed clean.

(36) a. Please don't under any circumstances forget it.

(37) a. These few days I have been too tired. I must rest for a few days.

(38) a. (When) you said that to them, it made me very embarrassed.
b. I feel very embarrassed to take his money.
DISÄNKE - ZÄI ŻHÄOŻIA ČHĪFÂN

I. Duihuā

Liùdian zhōng Żhào Xs. dào Sī Xs. wūzī lǎile.

Żhào Xs: Fàn hǎole. Qīng dao fàntsīng chīfàn ba.

Sī: Hǎo. Wǒ lǐkè jiù qù.
(Sī Xs. dào le fàntsīng yīhòu.)

Żhào Tt: Nǐn qīng zuò ba. Wǒ gěi nǐn yǔbeile dǎozi chāizi le.


Żhào Tt: Nǐn Zhōngguó huà, shūde tài hǎole.

Sī: Guǒjiāng, guǒjiāng.

Żhào Tt: Nǐn xuéde jǐnìán le?


Sī: Xíngle! Wǒ bùyàole. Zhègè càide wèir hǎojìle. Zhème dōude cài, dōu shì nǐn yīge rèn zuòde ma?

Żhào Tt: Měi shēnme cài. Nǐn zài chī yídianr zhègè yù ba.


Żhào Tt: Zhèi shì chǎobǎicài.

Sī: Duībuqǐ! Wǒ méitīngqǐngchu. Qīng nǐn zài shuō yífēi.

Żhào Tt: Wǒ shuō zhèi shì CHĀO-BÁI-CĀI.


Żhào Tt: Shì zháde.

Sī: Zuò zhègè cài, yǒng yǒu yòngdě hěn duō ba?

Żhào Tt: Dùlè. Nǐn zài chī yídianr fàn ba.


Żhào Tt: Zhēn chībǎole ma? Zài hě yídianr jīdàntāng.
Zhao Ti: Name nin qing dao keding he di anr cha ba.
SI: Hao! Xiexie nin.

II. Shengzi Yongfa

39. sufaran...keshi... A: although...(yet)...
   a. Te sufaran nianguo yidiannr zhongguo shu, keshi kan bao haishi kan budong.

40. guojiang IE: you flatter me
   A. Ninge ger changde zhen hao.
   B. Guojiang, guojiang.

41. budao V: less than, not quite (usually followed by a numeral)
   a. Te nige bi, budao liangkuai qian.

42. jihul N: opportunity, chance

43. chang V: taste
   a. Nige cai haochiji le. Ni changle meiyou?

44. xian SV: be salty
   44.1 xianyu N: salted fish
   44.2 xianrou N: salted meat
   44.3 xianjiadan N: salted egg
   44.4 xiancai N: salted vegetables
   a. Wo bu ta xihuan chi xian dongxi.

45. yan N: salt

46. hujiamoianru N: (ground) pepper

47. you N: oil, sauce
   47.1 caiyou N: vegetable oil
   47.2 jiangyou N: soya sauce

48. weir N: taste, flavor, odor

49. wen V: smell
   49.1 haowen SV: be good to smell
   49.2 wenchuan RV: smelled
   a. Ni wenjianle ma?
   b. Ni wenwen, zhei wuzili shenme weir?

50. xiang SV: be fragrant, smell good
   50.1 xiangweir, N: good smell, aroma
   50.2 xiangshui, N: perfume
   a. Zheige wuzili zennme zennme xiang a?
51. chǎo
   51.1 chǎo cài
   51.2 chǎocài
   51.3 chǎo fàn
   51.4 chǎofàn
   V: sautè, fry
   VO: to prepare a fried dish
   N: a fried dish
   VO: to fry rice
   N: fried rice

   a. _Generic_wǒ chǎowán zhèige cài, wǒmen jiù chǐ fàn.

52. bái cài
   N: cabbage (M: -kě, for trees and some vegetables)

53. yōuyìdīăn
   A: a little bit

   a. Zhèige fānguǎnrde cài, yōuyìdīăn tāi gūl.

54. tián
   SV: be sweet

   a. Tā bùxǐhuan chǐ tián dōngxi.

55. dūbānr, duōbàn
   A: most likely, most of, the majority

   a. Wǒde qián dūbānr dōu shì tā gěi wǒde.

56. Guǎngdōng
   PW: Kwangtung (province)
   56.1 Guǎngdōng rén
   N: Cantonese (people)
   56.2 Guǎngdōng huà
   N: Cantonese (dialect)

57. hǎoxiàng
   V/A: resemble/a good deal like, just as though, it seems that

   57.1 hǎoxiàng...
   de yàngzi
   resemble, appearance of...

   57.2 hǎoxiàng...shìde
   resemble

   a. Tā hǎoxiàng bǐngle shìde.
   b. Tā hǎoxiàng bù dā li shūhuā.
   c. Nēige rén hǎoxiàng yǒubǐngde yàngzi.

58. jī
   58.1 jídàn
   N: chicken (M: -zhī)
   N: (chicken) egg (M: -dá, dozen)
   58.2 jídántāng
   N: egg drop soup
   58.3 chǎojídàn
   N: scrambled egg
   58.4 chǎo jídàn
   VO: scramble an egg

59. zhá
   59.1 zháyú
   N: fried fish
   VO: fry fish
   59.2 zhá yú
   N: fried chicken
   VO: fry chicken

   a. Zháde dōngxi dōu bùrǒngyi zuò.

60. mānmānr(de)
   A: slowly

   a. Bùmáng, nǐn mānmānr xiē ba.
III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Adverbs in Associated Pairs: Certain adverbs are used to introduce a clause and to show its relation to a second clause. If the clause so introduced is incomplete in sense without the second clause, it may be termed a 'dependent clause'. The second clause usually requires an adverb to introduce it also. Some connective adverbs are used exclusively in the first clause or in the second; others are movable. Some of them are used in associated pairs, a certain adverb in the first clause calling for a certain adverb in the second clause.

Connective adverbs may be divided into the following groups in terms of their location:

1.1 First clause only: (the adverbs introducing the second clauses are not necessarily the only ones which can stand there.)

- Būdàn... yě... (not only... but also...)
- Yǐshì... jìu... (If... then...)
- Yǐnwéi... suǒyì... (Because... therefore...)
- Suīrán... kěshì... (Although... nevertheless...)
- Yāobùshì... jìushì... (If not... then...)
  jiū yǐdìng shì... (If not... then certainly...)
  (Gāng) yì... jìu... (As soon as... then...)

1.2 Second clause only: (The adverbs introducing the first clauses are merely suggestive, since they are frequently omitted entirely.)

- (Hǎoxiàng... kěshì... (It seems as if... but...)
- (Xiān... zǎi... (First... then...)
- ... jìu... (When... then...)
- ... suǒyì... (... so...)
- (Yǐjìng... cāi... (Translates most readily into the negative in the form Not until... did...)

1.3 Either clause:

- ... yǐnwéi... (..... because...)
- Yǐnwéi... suǒyì... (Since, therefore...)

1.4 Reduplicated Pairs: Note in the following pairs that some are compounds of shí and some are not. Those which are not may not be followed by a noun; those which contain shí may be followed by either a noun or a verb. The first, of a pair, is often omitted.

- (shí).... shí.... Is it.... or is it....?
- (háishí)... háishí.... Is it.... or is it....?
- (huòshí)... huòshí.... Either... or....
- (yě)... yě... Both... and....
- (yěshí)... yěshí.... Both... and....
- (yóu)... yóu.... Both... and....
- (yóushí)... yóushí.... Both... and....

Note that the distinction of fixed and movable adverbs governs the position of these connective adverbs also.
1.5 **Exercise:** Translate into Chinese:

1.51 If you didn't go to New York, then you must have gone to Washington.

1.52 Because I didn't pay him anything, he wouldn't do it for me.

1.53 This seems rather expensive, but it is imported (has come) from abroad.

1.54 If he is going, then I don't need to.

1.55 I'll be there, although I may be late.

1.56 It seems that he studied hard, but just couldn't make it. (Couldn't learn well.)

1.57 If I had had the money, I would have bought it.

1.58 If it isn't that his car is out of order, then it is that he has to go to New York.

1.59 I am not going to buy it even if it is inexpensive.

1.60 It is just because he isn't rich that I want to be friends with him.

2. **Xiàng** and **hǎoxiàng** are similar in meaning but differ somewhat in use.

2.1 We find three possible situations in the use of **xiàng**:

2.11 It may be used as a stative verb:

Tāmen liǎngge ren hěn xiàng.

2.12 It may function as a verb:

Tā hěn xiàng ta mǔqin.

2.13 It may serve as an auxiliary verb:

Tā xiàng xǐ yǐshàng shìde.

2.2 There are two possible situations for **hǎoxiàng**:

2.21 It can be treated as a functive verb:

Tā hǎoxiàng Fāguó ren.

2.22 It can also be treated as a movable adverb:

Tā hǎoxiàng shūjiāo ne.
Hǎoxiàng tā shūjiāo ne.

Unlike **xiàng**, **hǎoxiàng** cannot be preceded by hěn, nor can it function as a stative verb.

2.3 Note that both **xiàng** and **hǎoxiàng** may take "shìde" or "de yàngzi" at the end of the sentence without changing the meaning:

2.31 Tā hěn xiàng ta mǔqin (shìde).
2.32 Tā hǎoxiàng shūjiāo (de yàngzi).
2.4 **Exercise:** Translate the following sentences:

2.41 It seems as though I knew him.
2.42 It looks as though it might be hot today.
2.43 The door seems to be closed.
2.44 Those two students certainly look alike.
2.45 Those two boys both look very much like their father.
2.46 He looks like a school teacher.
2.47 I told him I was an American, but he said I didn't look like one.
2.48 He seems to be unwilling to go, but I think he will go if you ask him to.
2.49 This dish tastes like Chinese food. Don't you think?
2.50 He seems to be quite rich, but I don't believe he can afford this.

3. **Reduplicated Stative Verbs:** A stative verb may have three functions: to modify a noun, to stand as the predicate of a sentence, and (in some cases) to modify a verb (adverbial function). Reduplicated SV have the same three possible functions, but they more commonly appear as adverbs. In Peking Mandarin, the last syllable of a reduplicated SV acquires the high level tone, and a final er or r is frequently added. So far as meaning is concerned, the reduplication has little effect other than to add a degree of stress.

- kuàikuàirde zǒu (walk quickly)
- hǎohǎorde zuò (do it nicely)
- zǎozǎorde lǎi (come early)
- màn mànnrde chī (eat slowly)

3.1 When a two-syllable SV is reduplicated, the pattern AB becomes AABB, but the final syllable does not necessarily change to a high level tone and a final er or r is seldom added:

- suísuíbianbìànde shuō (talk freely)
- gāogāo xìng xìngdé hē diānr jiū (drink merrily)
- kēkeqì tì gé yǒu shuō (speak to me politely)
- shǐ shufū fū dé zuò yì huír (sit down for a little while comfortably)
- qǐng qíng chǔ chǔ dé gào sòng tā le (told him clearly)

3.2 **Exercise:** Translate into Chinese, using reduplicated SV as adverbs where appropriate:

3.21 When we get there let's have a meal in comfort.
3.22 If you talk with him politely, I think he'll be very glad to listen.
3.23 You'd better write him a good clear letter telling him all about it.
3.24 I only hope he will finish his work and come back early.
3.25 He just took a walk very casually.

4. **Reduplicated Functive Verbs:** Most functive verbs may be reduplicated like Kankan and wānwān, but care should be taken with two-syllable functive verbs. The pattern AB becomes AABAB (in contrast to the AABB of SV). The stress is generally on the first syllable. E.G.:

- shūshì shūshì xiū xì xì xì jī shào jī shào
If however the two-syllable word is a verb-object compound rather than a verb, only the verb part is reduplicated (not the object). E.G.:

xiéxié zì  kànkan bào  tǎntan huà

4.1 **Exercise**: Translate into Chinese:

4.11 You have walked so long. You must sit down and rest for a while.
4.12 Come, let me introduce you two to each other.
4.13 After I get home, all I can do is to have a little rest and read the papers.
4.14 I want to take a little walk. Do you want to go with me?
4.15 This room is filthy. I have to clean it up a bit.

IV. **Pǐyǐn Liànhí**

1. A. Zhèige jiēde wèi rěn hěn xiāng.
   B. Suíran hǎowěn, kěshì bùyìdǐng hǎochǐ.
2. A. Shénme shǐfū yī zhēn zài bān, hào bùhǎo.
   B. Hǎojié. Míngtiān xiàwǔ zēnmeyàng?
3. A. Nǐ Chāngchāng zhēge yù zēnmeyàng?
   B. Hǎoxiāng yǒuyìdiǎnr tāi tiān le.
4. A. Nǐn yào hùjǐāomiànng bǔyàò?
5. A. Nǐn dōubàn bùxīhuán chī chāojīdān ba?
   B. Xīhuán. Wǒ shénme dōu xīhuán chǐ.
6. A. Nǐ zēnmé le?
   B. Wǒ yǒuyìdiǎnr bushūfu.
7. A. Wǒ xìng Lǐ, jiào Děnǐān.
   B. Ō, Lǐ Xiānshēng, jiùyáng jiùyáng.
8. A. Nǐnde huàr huáde zhěn hǎo.
   B. Guōjiāng, guōjiāng.
9. A. Wǒ xiāng qǐng nín lǐbáilì chǐ wǎnfàn.
   B. Nǐn bié kēqi, lǐbáilì wǒ duōbàn mēi gōngfu.
10. A. Nǐn zài chǐ yìdiǎnr fān.
    B. Wǒ chǐbāole. Nǐn mànmǎnr chǐ ba.

V. **Wèntí**

1. Zhào Xs. wèi shénme dao Sǐ Xs. wǔzíli qu? Tā gen Sǐ Xs. shuō shénme?
2. Sǐ Xs. dàole kětīng yīhòu, Zhào Tt. gēn ta shuō shénme?
3. Zhào Tt. wèi shénme gěi Sǐ Xs. yùbei dāozi chāzi?
4. Sǐ Xs. wèi shénme bùyòng dāozi chāzi?
5. Sǐ Xs. zài shénme difang xuéde yōng kuāizi?
6. Sǐ Xs.de Zhōngguó huà shì zài shénme difang xuéde? Xuéle duōshǎo shíhòu?
7. Zhào Tt. juéde Sǐ Xs.de Zhōngguó huà zēnmeyàng?
8. Sì Xs. tīng Zhào Tt. shuò tāde Zhōngguó huà shuōde hǎo, tā shuò shénme?
9. Zhào Tt. zuò fàn zhuode zēnmeyàng? Gòu xiān būgòu?
10. Yàoshi cái būgòu xiān, nǐ zēnmme bān?
11. Sì Xs. shuò Zhào Tt. de cái zuòde zēnmeyàng?
12. Sì Xs. zài Mèiguó de shíhou, dào Zhōngguó fànɡuānér qǔguó méiyǒu?
13. Sì Xs. shuò Mèiguóde Zhōngguó fànɡuānér dùobànér shì shénme dīfāngde rén kǎide? Cāi dé wèi zēnmeyàng?
14. Mèiguóde Zhōngguó fànɡuānér nǐ qǔguó méiyǒu? Chīɡuǒ shénme cài?
15. Zhào Tt. shuōle yìju huà, Sì Xs. mèitiānqǐngchu, tā shuō shénme?
16. Sì Xs. wèi shénme yào wèn nèige jǐ shì zēnmme zuòde?
17. Sì Xs. chībǎo le yǐhòu, tā gèn Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. shuō shénme?
18. Sì Xs. chīwánle fàn, Zhào Tt. qǐng ta dào shénme dīfāng zuò?
20. Nǐ huí zuò shénme cài?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?
1. Fàn zūnɡāo, nǐ yào qǐnɡ nǐde pénɡyou dao fānɡtīnɡ chīfàn, nǐ gēn ta shuō shénme?
2. Yàoshi yǒurén shuō nǐde Zhōngguó huà shuōde hǎo, nǐ shuō shénme?
3. Yàoshi nǐ tīnɡjiàn yíɡe Mèiguó rén shuō Zhōngguó huà shuōde hěn hǎo; nǐ wèn ta shénme?
4. Yǒurén qǐnɡ nǐ chīfàn, nǐ xiǎnɡ shuō nèige cài hěn hǎo, nǐ zēnme shuō?
5. Yàoshi yǒurén gēn nǐ shuō huà, nǐ mèitiānjiàn, nǐ shuō shénme?
6. Nǐ gēn nǐde pénɡyou zài yìkǔài chīfàn, nǐ chīwánle, kěshì nǐde pénɡyou hái mēichīwán ne, nǐ gēn ta shuō shénme?

VII. Bèishū
A: Lái, Lái, wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào. Zhèiwei shì Lǐ Xs., zhèiwei shì Lù Xs.

Lǐ and Lù: Jiàoyāng jiàoyāng.

Lù: Bānniǎndùō le.
LI: Nǐndē Zhōngguó huà shuōde zhēn hǎo.
LU: Guōjiāng guōjiāng. Nǐn zài shénme dìfang zuòshí?
LI: Wǒ zài Xīn-guó xuéxiào jiāo shū.
LU: Ó! Xīn-guó xuéxiào. Nǐr yǒu yìwèi Zhāng Xs., nǐn rènshí bù rènshí?
LI: Rènshí. Zhāng Xs., rén hěn hǎo.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 I must go there, although the weather is not good.
1.2 That trolley ticket is less than a dollar and a half.
1.3 This is a big opportunity.
1.4 You taste it and tell me whether I put enough pepper in it.
1.5 Have you ever tasted this fried chicken?
1.6 Smell it, it is very fragrant.
1.7 Have you smelled it? It certainly smells good.
1.8 It sounds good.
1.9 This cabbage is a little too salty.
1.10 Most of the Chinese in the United States are Cantonese.
1.11 Most likely he doesn't know.
1.12 It seems that the flavor is very good.
1.13 This sounds a good deal like Japanese.
1.14 That dish tastes a good deal like fried eggs.
1.15 Let's walk slowly.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(39) a. Although he studied some Chinese, still he cannot read the newspapers.
(40) A: Your singing is wonderful.
     B: You flatter me.
(41) a. He bought his pen for less than two dollars.
(43) a. That dish is delicious. Did you taste it?
(44) a. I don't care much for salty things.
(49) a. Did you smell it?
     b. Take a smell, what's the odor in this room?
(50) a. Why is it that this room is so fragrant?
(51) a. Wait until I finish preparing this dish, then we'll eat.
(53) a. The food in this restaurant is rather expensive.
(54) a. He doesn't like to eat sweet things.
(55) a. He gave me most of my money.
(57) a. It seems as though he were sick.
    b. It seems that he doesn't like to talk.
    c. That man looks like he is sick.

(59) a. All fried food is difficult to cook.

(60) a. No hurry. Write it slowly.
DISIKE - TÂN TIÂNQI

I. Duíhuà

Sī Xs. zào shang qǐlai, zài yuàn zǐ lì sànbù. Zhào Xs. yè chū lai le.

Sī: Nín zǎo a!
Zhào: Zǎo. Nín kàn, jǐntiān de tiānqì duōmě hào a!

Sī: Kě bushì mà! Yīng liáng kuài yīng shù fū. Zhèrde de tiānqì zǒng shì zēnme hào mà?

Sī: Dōngtiān zhèr ye xià xūe ma?
Zhào: Zhèr dōngtiān yǒu shēnhòu xià xūe, kěshì xiàde bùdàng. Běifāng de tiānqì lēng, xūe xiǎdále de shēnhòu, nàr dōu shì báide, zhěn hǎokàn.

Sī: Wǒ tīngshuí běi píng cháng guǎ fēng, zhǐ zhěndé ma?

Sī: Rén dōu shuō běi píng de fēng jīng hěn hào, wǒ zhēn xiǎng qu kǎn kàn.

Sī: Nà duō měi hào a! Zhèr ye cháng xià wú ma?

Sī: Hǎo! Nǐn qǐng.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

61. yuànzi
61.1 qián yuàn(r) N: yard
61.2 hòu yuàn(r) N: backyard
61.3 dòng yuàn(r) N: east yard

62. sànbù VO: take a stroll, take a walk
a. Wǒ měitiān chī wǎn fàn, dōu zài wāitōu sànbù.
63. kě bǔshì ma!  IE: isn't that the truth! sure enough!
   A: Měiguóde dōngxi, xiànzǐ dōu guíle.
   B: Kě bǔshì ma!

64. liángkuài  SV: be cool (comfortably cold)
   a. Wūzīlǐ bǐ yuànzīlǐ liángkuaiduōle.

65. zōng(shì)  A: always
   a. Zhēn qíguài, zhēige zì, tā zōng bǔhuī xiē.

66. chūnxiàqūqdōng  N: spring, summer, fall and winter
   66.1 chūntiān  TW: spring
   66.2 xiàtiān  TW: summer
   66.3 qiūtiān  TW: fall
   66.4 dōngtiān  TW: winter

67. yǔ  N: rain
   67.1 xià yǔ  VO: rain (falls)
   a. Yǔ xiàde dà budà?

68. yīn tiān  N/VO: cloudy day
   a. Yīn tiān de shíhou wǒ zōng bǔdà shūfu.

69. xuě  N: snow
   69.1 xià xuě  VO: snow (falls)
   a. Jīnniandē xuě xiàde tài duōle.

70. -fēng  BF: direction, a region
   70.1 nánfēng  N: the South
   70.2 běifēng  N: the North
   70.3 nánfēng rén  N: Southerner
   70.4 běifēng rén  N: Northerner

71. fēng  N: wind
   71.1 guā fēng  VO: wind blows
   a. Xiàwánle xuě yǒu guā fēng, lǐngjíle.

72. tǔ  N: dust, earth

73. fēngjǐng  N: scenery, view

74. shù  N: tree, (M. kę)

75. nuǎnhuo  SV: be warm (comfortably warm)
   a. Zhēige fángzi hǎojíle, dōngtiān nuǎnhuo, xiàtiān liángkuài.

76. huār  N: flower (M. -duō)
   a. Tiānquí yǐnuǎnhuo, huār jiù dōu kāile.

77. yánshe, yánsè  N: color
78. yèzi  N: leaf
78.1 shùyèzi  N: tree leaf
78.2 cháyè  N: tea leaf

79. cǎo  N: grass, straw
79.1 cǎodo  N: lawn
79.2 cǎomaor  N: straw hat

80. yóuqí(shí)  A: especially, above all
a. Nǐge rén zhēn yóuyísi, yóuqíshí shuǐhuàde shíhou, jiānzhíde yóuyísijíle.

81. qíng tiān  N/VO: clear sky, day or weather
a. Xiànzài tiān qíngle.

82. yúncái  N: cloud (M. -kuài)

83. niǎo  N: bird (M. -zhī)
83.1 niǎo jiǎo  singing of birds

84. wù  N: fog
84.1 xià wù  VOI: become foggy
a. Xià wù de shíhou kāi qíchē, zhēn dēi xiǎoxìn.

85. Nǐn qíng  IE: please go ahead, after you

III.  Jùzì Gùzào

1. Time Expressions may be classified into two general groups: time-when group, denoting when the action happened or will happen, and time-spent group, indicating the length of time of the action.

1.1 Time-when group of time expressions all serve as movable adverbs which precede the main verb. It consists of three kinds:

1.11 A time word or a combination of them such as jīntiān, jīntiān wànshāng and jīntiān wànshāng bādiǎn zhōng:

Wǒ xiǎng wǒ míngtiān xiàwǔ cáid néng huílái ne.

Note when such time words are used as nouns, they may either precede or follow the verb which is limited to a very few verbs used in the equational sense, such as shí and jiǎo:

Míngtiān shí lǐbāiwǔ.
Zhēngge yuē jiǎo liùyīwǔ.

1.12 Time clauses ending with yǐqián, yǐhòu, de shíhou, etc.:

Chīfàn yǐqián bié niǎnshí,
Wǒ xiǎode shíhou xīhuān wànér.

1.13 A Nu-M-(N) preceded by a specifier:
Tā měi sāngé yuē qù yícì.
1.2 Time-spent group of time expressions generally follows the Nu-M-(N) pattern such as:

sāngē zhōngtōu,
liùnián, etc.

However, in this group, there are certain expressions which denote an indefinite amount of time, such as:
bùjīū,
hěn jīū,
hěn duōde shíhou,
hěn dāde gāngfu, etc.

1.21 The time-spent expression generally follows the main verb and precedes the object if there is one:

Tā zài zhèr zhànle bāntiān le.
Tā yào niǎn sānnián shū.

1.22 In certain cases, it may precede the main verb. It will be explained more in detail in Lesson VI.

1.3 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

1.31 Three days ago, I didn't know whether he would come or not.
1.32 When it rains, it is a little cold here.
1.33 It has been foggy here for a week already.
1.34 This tree has been in blossom for quite a while.
1.35 I usually take a walk before breakfast.

2. THE POSITION OF SV-YIDIÀNR - This phrase may function either as an adverbial modifier of the verb, or as a predicate complement. In the first case it precedes the verb; in the second it follows it. Some SV followed by yidiànr may take either position.

2.1 PREDICATE COMPLEMENT

```
               \(\Delta(yidiànr)\)
              /
           (Nǐ) xiě dà(yi)diànr.
       (Nǐmen) zhàn yuǎn(yi)diànr.
```

2.2 ADVERBIAL POSITION

```
               \(\Delta(yidiànr)\)
              /
           (Nǐ) kuǎi(yi)diànr zǒu.
       (Wǒ) wǎn(yi)diànr lái, xíng buxing?
```

2.3 BOTH POSITIONS PERMISSIBLE: kuài, màn, zǎo, wǎn (plus yidiànr)
2.4 Exercise: Translate the following:

2.41 Will you please come a little earlier tomorrow?
2.42 May we eat a little later today?
2.43 It's getting late; let's go faster.
2.44 When you write, write a little slower and make it clearer.
2.45 Please speak a little more slowly.

3. If not..., then..., otherwise...
The pattern in Chinese is:
Búshì..., jiùshì..., yào buràn...

3.1 Exercise: Translate into Chinese:

3.11 The weather was very bad these several days.
   If it didn't rain, (then) it snowed, otherwise, the wind was very bad.

3.12 None of these tables will do. If they aren't too high,
   (then) they are too long, otherwise they are too expensive.

3.13 He didn't buy a thing. It was either that he didn't like the color,
   or else that he didn't care for the style, otherwise, he said that the article was too expensive.

3.14 How did people know that spring is here? If they didn't notice
   that the weather was getting warmer, (then) they must have heard the singing of the birds,
   otherwise, they must have seen those blossomed trees.

3.15 When I get a letter from my son, if he doesn't ask for money,
   (then) he wants to use the car, otherwise, he would say that he cannot come back this weekend.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxi

1. A. Jīntiān tiānqì zěnmeyàng?
   B. Yīntiān, kěshì hěn liángkuài.

2. A. Zhèige dīfang qiūtiān cháng xià yǔ ma?
   B. Bǔcháng xià yǔ, kěshì cháng guāng fēng.

3. A. Nǐ měitiān zài yuànzhǐ lǐ màn bù ma?
   B. Wǒ zài jiē shàng lǐ màn bù.

4. A. Zhèige dīfang hěn nánhuò.
   B. Kě bù shì mà!

5. A. Nèige huār shì shénme yánshèr?
   B. Wǒ xiàng shì hóngde.

6. A. Xiànzáì yǒu shì qiūtiān le.
   B. Shéi shūō bù shì ne. Shùyèzǐ dōu huángle.

7. A. Yǒu xià xué le.
   B. Xià xué de shíhòu, fēngjǐng hěn hǎo.

8. A. Zhèige níxìor jiàode hěn hǎotíng.
   B. Kěshì yánshèr bútài hǎokàn.
9. A. Jīntian shì qīngtiān ma?  
B. Yīdiǎnr yǐncǎi dōu méiyǒu.

10. A. Zhègè dīfang wèi shénme zǒng xià wū?  
B. Yīnwèi lǐ hǎi tài jǐn.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. zǎoshāng qǐlái, zuò shénme?
2. Nèitiān diānqì zěnmeyàng?
3. Nèige dīfang de tiānqì zōngshì nème hǎo ma?
   Chūntiān zěnmeyàng? Xiàtiān ne? Qītìán gèn dōngtiān ne?
4. Zhōngguó de běifāng, dōngtiān xià xuě ma? Xià xuě de shíhou hǎokàn ma?
5. Bēipíng cháng guā fēng ma? Guā fēng de shíhou zhēnme bùhǎo?
6. Bēipíngde fēngjīng zěnmeyàng?
7. Bēipíng gèn bìde chéng zhēnme bùyíyàng?
8. Nánfàngde fēngjīng zhēnme hǎo? Huār dōu shì shénme yánshì? Yèzǐ shì shénme yánshì?
9. Qīngtiān de shíhou, tiān shì shénme yánshì? Yǐncǎi gèn shuí ne?
10. Shànghǎi xià wū bǔxià? Shénme dīfang cháng xià wū?
11. Zhègè dīfang chūntiān diānqì zěnmeyàng? Xiàtiān zěnmeyàng?
   Qǐtìán gèn dōngtiān ne?
12. Zhègè dīfang shénme shíhou cháng xià yǔ?
13. Zhègè dīfang yǒu shíhou xià xuě ma?
14. Zài zhèr cháng guā fēng ma?
15. Zhègè dīfang qǐtìán, shì qīngtiān de shíhou duō hǎishi yǐntiān de shíhou?
16. Nǐ juède shénme dīfang de fēngjīng zú hǎo? Zhēnme hǎo?
17. Nǐ xǐhuān chūntiān ma? Wèi shénme?
18. Nǐ juède shénme yánshì zú hǎokàn? Shénme yánshì gèn shénme yánshì zài yīkuài zú hǎokàn?
19. Zhègè dīfang chūntiān de huār dōu shì shénme yánshì?
20. Nǐ shì nàrde rèn? Nǐmén nèige dīfang de tiānqì zěnmeyàng?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi yǒu rèn wèn nǐ Měiguó de tiānqì zěnmeyàng, nǐ shuō shénme?
   Nǐ wèn ta shénme?
2. Yàoshi nǐ xiāng wèn, yige dīfang de tiānqì zěnmeyàng, nǐ zěnmé wèn?
3. Yàoshi yǒu rèn shuō Mǐyǔshè de tiānqì bǔdà hǎo, nǐ juède zěnmeyàng?
   Nǐ gèn tā shuō shénme?
4. Yàoshi yǒu rèn wèn nǐ chūnxīqiūdòng, shénme shíhou zú hǎo, nǐ shuō shénme?
   Yàoshi nǐ wèn, nǐ zěnmé wèn?
5. Yàoshi nǐ xiāng wèn yige dīfang de fēngjīng, nǐ zěnmé wèn?

VII. Gùshì

(On Record)
VIII. Pānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:
   1.1 There are some beautiful birds in his backyard.
   1.2 I take a walk along the bank of the river everyday.
   1.3 It is always very cloudy in the fall here.
   1.4 We have a lot of rain in the spring.
   1.5 Don't you think it is a pretty flower? It certainly is.
   1.6 What is the color of the grass? It is green.
   1.7 We had a snow storm last night here.
   1.8 I never feel good when it is foggy.
   1.9 She is very talkative, especially when she has been drinking.
   1.10 The leaves on this tree are very pretty, especially in the fall.

2. Translate back into Chinese:
   (62) a. I take a walk after supper every day.
   (63) A. Everything in America is high now.
        B. Isn't that the truth.
   (64) a. It is much cooler inside than out in the yard.
   (65) a. It's really strange. He can never write this word.
   (67) a. Is it raining hard?
   (68) a. I never feel good when it is cloudy.
   (69) a. We have had much snow this year.
   (71) a. The wind blew after the snow and it was terribly cold.
   (76) a. As soon as the weather gets warm, the flowers bloom.
   (80) a. That person is very interesting, especially when he is talking.
   (81) a. Now the sky is clear.
   (84) a. One has to be very careful when he drives on a foggy day.
DIWUKê - SUÍBIÀN TÁNTAN

I. Duīhuà

Sî Xs. gȩ̂n Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. chîwânìe zàòfàn, zài kȩ̂tîngli zuòzhè, chòu yân de chòu yân, hê châ de hê châ. Tâmên yîbîânr hê châ yîbîânr tâñ huâ.

Sî: Zhào Tt., nîn fûshâng shì shénme dîfang?
Zhào Tt: Wô shèngzài Tiānjīng, kêshi wô shì zài Bêîpìng zhângdâle de.
Sî: Nîn jiālì dôu yîu shènme rèn?
Zhào Tt: Wô yîu fûqîn, mùqîn, yîge gêge, yîge dîdi, hái yîu yîge xiāo mèimeı.
Sî: Nînde gêge dîdi dôu jiêhûn le ma?
Zhào Tt: Gêge jiêhûn le. Dîdi sulshu hái xiāo, hái mèi ne. Xiànzài gêge tâmên gȩ̂n fûmû zài Tiānjīng zhû, dîdi mèimeı zài Bêîpìng shângxuê.
Sî: Zîân, nîn shì shénme dîfang rèn?
Zhào Xs: Wô lâojîn zài Shândông. Wôde fûmû xiànzài hái zài nèr zhû.
Sî: Nîn shì Shândôngshêng nêî yîxiàn?
Zhào Xs: Yàntâi. Nîn tîngshuôguo ba?
Sî: Dângrân dângrân! Nà shì yûumîngde dîfang. Tîngshuô nêr yû yîzhîng pîngguô, yû xiàngjiăo wèir. Shi zhêndê ma?
Zhào Xs: Kê bûshî ma! Jiào xiàngjiăo-pîngguô, zhên hào.
Sî: Nînde dàxuê shì zài shénme dîfang shângdê?
Zhào Xs: Wô shì Bêîjìng Dàxuê bîyê de.
Sî: Nîn shì nêîniàn bîde yê?
Sî: Shì yîjiûsûnîînîdìe qiûtîan, dûl budûl? Wô jîde wômen pêngjiànâ de dièrtîan, wômen yîkuâir kài qîchê chûqû kân hôngyê. Nîn xiàngxiàng, dûl budûl?
Zhào Xs: Yîdiănr ye bûcû. Wô jîde wô gâng dào Yêlû Dàxuê méi jîtiân, jiù pêngjiàn nîn le. Hâoxiâng shì zài yîge Zhôngguo fângguănrlî pêngjiànâ, shî bûshi? Dào xiànzài yîjîng chàbudûô èrshídûôniân le. Rîzi guôde zhên kuài.l
Sî: Nîn zài Yêlû de shîhou shì yânjuî shênhûlxuê, shî bûshi?
Zhào Xs: Dûlê.

34
SI: (Duì Zhào Tt.) Zǐān zài Yělǔ Dàxué de shìhou, hěn yōnggōng, gōngkè hǎojiē. Pénghyounmen dōu shuō tāde xuéwen hào.

Zhào Xs: Nǐn bié kěqíle. Shuō zhěndē, nǐn dàsuàn zài Shǎnhǎi zhù duōshào rìzi?

SI: Hǎi bùyìdìng. Wǒ xiǎng bùhū tāi chǎng.

Zhào Xs: Yǐhòu cháng zhùzài nǎr ne?

SI: Yě hǎi méiyìdìng. Děi děng Měiguó lài xīn zài shuō.

Zhào Xs: Wǒ xiāng nǐn nēng zài zhèr duō zú xǐ chǐ rìzi.

SI: Wǒ yě yuǎnyí duō zú jìtíān. Čǐshì shéi zhǐdào ne!

Zhào Xs: Zài chōu yízhǐ yǎn ba.

SI: Hǎo.

Zhào Tt: Yánghuǒ zài zhèr ne. Wǒ gěi nǐn diān ba.

SI: Wǒ lái, wǒ zǐjǐ lái.

II. Shēngzì Yōngfǎ

86. yān N: tobacco, cigarette (M: -zhī, stick; -gēn, stick; -hē(r), box; -bāo, pack; tiáor, carton); smoke

86.1 chōu yān V0: smoke

a. Nǐn chōu yān buchōu?

87. yǐbiānr...yǐbiānr... A: on one side...on the other,
on one hand...on the other

a. Tā yǐbiānr chī fàn, yǐbiānr kàn bāo.
b. Něige fángzì yǐbiānr shí fāngyuǎnr, yǐbiānr shí xuéxiào.

88. fūshāng IE: home, residence, family (courteous reference to other people's)

a. Wǒ mǐngtīan dào nǐn fūshāng qu kàn nǐn, hǎo buhǎo?
c. A. Nǐn fūshāng zài shènmé difang?
   B. Wǒde jiā zài Shǎndōng. (or) Wǒ jiù zuhūzài xuéxiào qiántou.
d. A. Fūshāng dōu hǎo?
   B. Dōu hǎo, xièxiē nǐn.

89. shēng V: give birth to; be born

a. Tā mǔqīn zuòtān shēnɡle yīge xiāoháir.
b. Tā shí něinián shēnɡde?

90. zhǎnɡ V: grow, rise in price

a. Nǐwèi xiǎojīe zhǎnɡde zhēn hǎokàn.
b. Něige hǎizi zhěi liàngnián zhāngɡāole.
c. Xiànzǎi chīde dōngxī yǒu dōu zhānɡle.
91. jiēhūn
   VO: marry
91.1 gēn...jiēhūn
      get married to
     a. Zhāng Xs. gēn Lǐ Xj. shénme shíhou jiéde hūn?
     b. Tāmen yǐjing jiēhūn sānnián le.

92. shēng
   N: province
92.1 Shāndōng shēng
      M: province
      Shantung province
     a. Nǐ shì nǐshēng rén?

93. xiàn
   M/N: hsien, county
94. -zhōng
94.1 zhēizhōng rén
    M: kind of, sort of, race
    this kind of person
94.2 huángzhōnggrén
    yellow race
95. píngguǒ
    N: apple
96. xiāngjiāo
    N: banana
97. dàxué
    N: College, University
    Yale University
97.1 Yālǐ Dàxué
97.2 Běijīng Dàxué
    National Peking University
97.3 shàng dàxué
    go to college
97.4 nián dàxué
    study in college
97.5 dàxué yīniánjí
    freshman
98. bìyè
    VO: graduate
     a. Tā yǐjing bìyè hǎojīnǐán le.
99. hóngyè
    N: red leaf
100. pèng
     V: bump into, run into
100.1 pèngjiān
     RV: meet by accident
100.2 pèngshàng
     RV: run into
100.3 pènghuá
     RV: bump into and break
     a. Nǐ míngtiān pèngdejiàn tā ma?
     b. Lìănggē qǐché pèngshàngle.
101. yánjiū
     V: study, make special investigation or study of
101.1 yǒuyánjiū
     SV/VO: have specialized knowledge
101.2 dui...yǒuyánjiū
     have specialized knowledge in...
     a. Zhèjiān shìqīng wǒ deì hǎohòorde yánjiū yánjiū.
     b. Tā dui Yīngwén hěn yǒuyánjiū.
102. shèhuìxué
     N: sociology
102.1 shèhù
     N: society
103. yònggōng
     VO: put time and effort into
     SV: work or study hard
     a. Yǒude cōngmíng rén būái yǒnggōng.
104. ㄏòngkè  N: field of learning, course, lessons, school work (M: -mén, course)
   a. Nǐ niàn jīmén ㄏòngkè?
   b. Nǐde ㄏòngkè mǎng bùmǎng?

105. xuéwén  N: learning, knowledge
105.1 yǒuxuéwén  SV: learned
   a. Nǐge rén hěn yǒuxuéwén.

106. huì  AV: may, would
   a. Tǐ bǔhuì bǔlái ba.

107. lái xīn  VO: send a letter (here)
107.1 qù xīn  VO: send a letter (there)
   a. Jiālǐ lái xīn le méiyou?
   b. Dào le gei wǒ lái xīn!

108. zài shuō  A-V: see about it, talk further, consider it further
   A: furthermore, moreover
   a. Dēng ta láile zài shuō;
   b. Zhēge mǎozi tài guī, zài shuō yē bùhǎokàn, bùyòng mǎile.

109. huǒ  N: fire, stove
109.1 yánghuǒ  N: matches (M: -gēn for stick; -hé(r) for box; bāo for package) -- lit. foreign fire

110. diǎn  V: light, ignite, apply a match to
110.1 diǎn yánghuǒ  VO: light a match
110.2 diǎn yān  VO: light a cigarette
110.3 diǎn huǒ  VO: light a fire
110.4 diǎnzháole  RC: lighted
   a. Láojìà bā huǒ diǎnzháo.
   b. Wǒ zǐjǐ diǎn ba.

111. wǒ lái  IE: let me do it
111.1 wǒ zǐjǐ lái  IE: let me do it myself

III. Jūzi Gōuzào

1. V〇de VO, V〇de VO:
   This is one of those expressions which cannot be translated literally. It gives the idea that some are doing this and some are doing that—everybody is engaged in some activity. For instance:

   wǒ jǐnqu yǐkàn, wǒzhǐlǐdē rén chōu yān de chōu yān, hě jǐ dē hě jǐm. (As soon as I went in, I saw some people in the room were smoking and some were drinking.)
1.1 **Exercise:** Translate into Chinese:

1.11 They all have a lot of money. Some of them bought houses and some bought new cars.

1.12 As soon as the teacher leaves the room, some of the students will start chatting, some will go to sleep—none of them will study.

1.13 The children are all grown up now. Some of them got married and some graduated from college.

2. **Duō as an Indefinite Number:**

The position of *duō* as an indefinite number is determined by whether it refers to a fractional amount above the definite number or to a whole number within the bracket set by the round number — shí, bāi, qiān, wàn, etc.

2.1 *Duō* always follows the measure when it refers to an indefinite fractional amount above the definite number:

- sāngédùō yuè (more than three but less than four months)
- shígéduō líbāi (more than ten but less than eleven weeks)
- èrshíwùkuaidùō qián (more than $25 but less than $26)
- shíyīdìándùō zhōng (past 11:00 but not yet 12:00)
- shíwùníándùō (more than 15 but less than 16 years)

2.2 When *duō* refers to an indefinite amount within the bracket set by the round number, it follows the round number and precedes the measure if there is any:

- sānshīhùdùō (ge) yuè (more than thirty but less than forty months)
- èrshīhùdùō (ge) líbāi (more than twenty but less than thirty weeks)
- lífúqiān (kuái) qián (more than $6000 but less than $7000)
- sìbāidùō nián (more than 400 but less than 500 years)
- wǔshīhù (ge) zhōngtòu (more than 50 but less than 60 hours)

2.3 Now we can see that èrshíhùkuaizhū (qián) means more than $20 but less than $21 while èrshíhùkuaizhū (qián) means more than $20 but less than $30. The former is seldom used simply because, in actual life, an indefinite amount is seldom referred to in such an exact manner, and generally is loosely referred to in the latter way.

2.4 When *bān* is used in a mixed number such as 1 1/2, 2 1/2, etc., it is preceded by the measure as well as by the whole number:

- lǐángkuaibān (qián)
- yīgěbān zhōngtòu
- sāndiǎnbān (zhōng)
- sìwǎnbān (fàn)
- yīzhǎngbān (zhǐ)

2.5 **Exercise:** Translate into Chinese:

- a little more than $32.00
- more than twenty cents
- over three sheets of paper
- seventy-odd dollars
- two and a half days

- more than $100.00
- more than an hour
- more than 20,000 people
- $1.50
- 11:30 P.M.
3. **Adverbial Use of Stative Verbs** - Many stative verbs may be used as adverbs; others are not so used at all.

```
Kuízi róngyí yòng ma?
Zhōngguó huà zhēn nán xué.
Zhōngguó zì hǎo xiě buhǎo xiě?
```

3.1 The most commonly used stative verbs in the adverbial function are:

```
hǎo kuài duǒ
gòu mǎn shǎo
róngyí zǎo
nán wǎn
```

3.2 **Exercise I** - Make sentences using the above stative verbs as adverbs.

3.3 **Exercise II** - Translate into Chinese:

- easy to walk  big enough
- difficult to say  eat a little more
- walk slowly  take one piece less
- come early  not fast enough
- go to bed late  give him one dollar less
- sleep late  bought one hat too many
- eat fast

4. **Unusual Relationship of S-V-O:** Spoken Chinese and English have certain common patterns, among them the basic structural order: Actor - Action - Receiver, better known to language students as Subject - Verb - Object (S-V-O). "I hit him" in English becomes "Wǒ dǎ ta" in Chinese. But the normal relationship of Actor - Action - Receiver does not hold in every case. Some of the seemingly V-O combinations do not express the relation of Action - Receiver. Lái and qu are among this group:

```
Lái yìge rén! (Will somebody please come!)
Lái rén le. (Some one has come.)
Qūe sāngé xuéshēng. (Three students went.)
Qūe liǎngjià fēijī. (Two planes went.)
```

The "objects" in position are really subjects in meaning in all the above illustrations.

4.1 **Exercise** - Translate into Chinese:

4.11 He gave a party last Saturday and invited more than twenty people. Only eight showed up.

4.12 As soon as he arrived there, he sent me a wire.

4.13 He has been gone three months already, but there has been no word from him.

4.14 Ten planes came to New York this morning.

4.15 I would like to go with you, but some guests just came.
IV. Fāyīn Liànxiá

1. A: Nín fūshang shì shénme dìfāng?
   B: Wǒde jiā zài Měiguó.

2. A: Nín cōngqián zài néige dàxué niǎnshù?
   B: Wǒ shì Yīlǐ Dàxué bìyède.

3. A: Nín yānjiù shènmé?
   B: Wǒ xué Zhōngguó.

4. A: Nín shì zài Zhōngguó shēngde ma?
   B: Dúshí. Wǒ shì zài Niǔyuè shēngde.

5. A: Nín jiāhūnle méiyou?
   B: Wǒ yǐjīng yǒu liàngge háizi le.

6. A: Nín zěnmé zènmé yōnggōng?
   B: Xuěxiàode gōngkè tài duó.

   B: Guǒjiāng guǒjiāng.

8. A: Chōuyān buchōu?
   B: Wǒ gāng chōuwǎn. Dēng yíhuír zài shuō ba.

9. A: Lǎojiā, nǐn you yánghuō méiyou?
   B: Dūbùqí, wǒ buchōuyīn.

10. A: Dáole gěi wǒmen lái xǐn.
    B: Yídǐng, yídǐng.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs., Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. chīwánle fàn zuò shènmé?

2. Zhào Tt. shì shènmé dìfāngde rén? Tā shēngzai shènmé dìfāng? Shì zài shènmé dìfāng zhāngdāledé?

3. Zhào Zīfān Xs.de lǎojiā zài shènmé dìfāng? Tā fūmǔ zhūzai shènmé dìfāng?

4. Zhào Tt. jīlǐ shì shènmé rén?

5. Zhào Tt.de gēge dǐdī dōu jiēhūn le méiyou? Tāmén zài shènmé dìfāng zhù?

6. Zhào Xs. shì zài shènmé dìfāng shǎngde dàxué? Shì néige xuéxiào bìde yě? Shì néinǐn bìde yě?

7. Tā bìle yě yīhū zuò shènmé le?

8. Zhào Xs. gēn Sī Xs. shì zài shènmé dìfāng pèngjiānde? Shi néinǐn pèngjiānde?

9. Zài tāmén pèngjiānde dièrtiān tāmén yǐkùài qu zuò shènmé?

10. Zhào Xs. zài dàxué de shìhou yánjiù shènmé? Tāde gōngkè zěnmeyàng?

11. Sī Xs. dàsuăn zài Shānhǎi zhù dūshāo rǐzi?
12. Sī Xs. yuàn xi yai zai Shànghǎi duō zhù xīē rǐzi ma? Wèi shènmé hái bùyìding?
13. Nǐ fǔshāng shì shènmé difang? Shì nǐ yìshēng? Nǐ yìxiàn?
14. Nǐ jiāli yǒu shènmé rén? Nǐ jiēhūn le méiyǒu?
15. Nǐ zài shènmé difang shāngde dàxué? Shì zài nǐge xuéxiào bìde yè?
16. Nǐ zài dàxué de shíhou yánjiù shènmé? Gōngkè yìdìng hěn hǎo ba?
17. Nǐ shì zài shènmé difang shāngde? Shì nǐnián shèngdé?
18. Nǐ chōu yàn bùchōu? Yáitiān chōu duōshāo? Nǐ xǐhuān chōu nǐ yǐzhōng yǎn?
19. Nǐ zuòtian pèngjiān shéi le?
20. Nèiwei xiǎnshēng dūl shēihuǒxué yǒu yánjiù ma?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shènmé?

1. Yào shì nǐ xiǎng wèn yīge rén tài shì nàrde rén, nǐ zěnmé wèn?
2. Yào shì nǐ xiǎng wèn yīge rén, tài zài nàr shāngde dàxué, shì zài nǐge dàxué bìde yè, nǐ zěnmé wèn?
3. Yào shì nǐ xiǎng wèn yīge rén tài zài xuéxiào de shíhou xué shènmé, nǐ zěnmé wèn?
4. Yào shì nǐ xiǎng qīng nǐde péngyou zài nǐ jiā duō zhù jìtiān, nǐ zěnmé gèn tā shuō?
5. Yào shì nǐ yǒu rén shuō nǐde xuéwen hěn hǎo, nǐ gèn tā shuō shènmé?

VII. Bēishū

A: Qīngzuò, qīng suībiān zuò.
B: Suībiān zuò, suībiān zuò.

A: Nǐn qǐng hē yídīănr jiù ba.
B: Duībuqǐ, wǒ būhuǐ hē jiù.

A: Hē yídīănr.
B: Wǒ zhēn bùnéng hē. Xièxiè nǐn.

B: Zhēgē cāide wèir zhēn hǎo. Shì zěnmé zūde?

A: Jīnshí yòng yǒu zháde. Wǒ zài zhá yǐqián fāngle yídīănr jiàngyǒu.
B: Ću. Zhēnshí tài hǎochīle.

A: Zài chī chī yídīănr fān.
B: Wǒ chībāo, nǐn mánmǎnr chī ba.
VIII. Pānyī

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 How long have you been smoking?
1.2 He is sending a letter and sending a telegram at the same time.
1.3 I was born in the United States but was brought up in China.
1.4 That girl has been getting prettier these last two years.
1.5 The price of everything has gone up again.
1.6 He has been married for three years.
1.7 When did he graduate from college?
1.8 I didn't bump into him.
1.9 That bus bumped into this car and damaged it.
1.10 What's your major?
1.11 He has specialized in sociology.
1.12 That student worked very hard.
1.13 What courses are you taking (in college)?
1.14 He's a learned man.
1.15 Write us when you arrive.
1.16 We'll see about it tomorrow.
1.17 I don't have too much to do there; besides, it's raining. I'd better not go.
1.18 He doesn't want to come, further more, I don't want to see him. You'd better not ask him to come.
1.19 Will you light a match for me?
1.20 The wind is too strong, if you cannot light the match, let me do it.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(86) a. Do you smoke?

(87) a. He reads while he eats.
   b. On one side of that house is a restaurant, and on the other, a school.

(88) a. May I come (to your house) to see you tomorrow?
   b. Delighted! Please come when you have time.
   c. A. Where do you live?
      B. My home is in Shantung. (or) I live just in front of the school.
   d. A. Is your family well?
      B. All very well, thank you.

(89) a. His mother had a baby yesterday.
   b. What year was he born?

(90) a. That girl is very pretty.
   b. That child has grown tall these last two years.
   c. Food prices have gone up again now.

(91) a. When were Mr. Zhāng and Miss Lǐ married?
   b. They have been married for three years.

(92) a. Which province are you from?

(98) a. He already graduated several years ago.

(100) a. Will you be able to meet him tomorrow?
   b. Two cars collided.
(101) a. I have to study this matter very carefully.
    b. He is a specialist in English.

(103) a. There are some brilliant people who don't like to work hard.

(104) a. How many courses are you taking?
    b. Is your (school) work busy or not?

(105) a. That man is very learned.

(106) a. He won't fail to show up, will he?

(107) a. Have you had any word from home?
    b. Write me when you arrive.

(108) a. We'll see about it when he arrives.
    b. This hat is too expensive, moreover, it isn't good looking.
      Don't buy it.

(110) a. Please light the fire.
    b. Let me light it myself.
DILIÈKE - JÎ XÎN

I. Duihuà

ST: Xs, xiele liàngfeng xìn, xiāng jīchuqu, kěshi burènshi yóuzhèngjú zài nàr. Yíhuīr Zhào Xs. dao ta wùzìlì láile. Tā jiù gēn Zhào Xs. dàting:

ST: Wǒ gāng xiele liàngfeng xìn, yao jīchuqu. Zhèr fūjīn yòu yóuzhèngjú ma?
ST: Yìfēng shì Méiguo, yìfēng shì Běipíng.
Zhào: Nǐn dāsuàn jī píngxīn hǎishi jī hángkōngxīn ne?
ST: Wǒ yào jī hángkōngxīn. Yīnwéi kěyì kuài yìdìǎnr. Hángkōngxīn dào Méiguo dēi duōshào yóufēi?
ST: Hángkōngxīn dào Běipíng zǒu jītiān?
ST: Yàoshi guànhào ne?
ST: Dào Méiguo dēi hángkōng-bāoguǒ néng jī bùnèng?
Zhào: Wǒ méijiāguǒ, bùzhídào. Wǒ xiǎng chéng.
ST: Lí wòmen zher zui jīn de xiǎntǒng zài nàr?
Zhào: Yóuzhèngjù qiángtòude lǐ wòmen jīn zúl jìn?
ST: Zhèr yóuchāi yìtiān sòng jījí xīn?
Zhào: Liǎngcèlǐ. Shàngwǔ yícèlǐ, xiàwǔ yícèlǐ.
ST: Diànhǎojù, zhèr fūjīn yòu méiyòu?
ST: Zài Shānghǎi dà diànhǎo, bùdào diànhǎo jù qu, yǒng diànhuà dà chéng buchéng?
Zhào: Kēngpà bùchéng. Wǒ méishìguǒ.
SI: Yingwen diànbào néng dǎ bunéng?
Zhào: Wǒ kān wǒmen xiànzaì jiù dao yóuzhēngjù qu ba.
SI: Hǎo! Wǒmen zǒu ba.

II. Shēngzǐ Yòngfǎ

112. ji V: mail, send by mail
112.1 ji xīn VO: mail letters
112.2 ji dōngxi VO: mail things
112.3 jìchūqu RV: mail out
112.4 jìchū RV: mail out
112.5 jìlái RV: send by mail (here)
112.6 jìqu RV: send by mail (there)
112.7 jīgei V: mail to
   a. Wǒ yǐdīng děi bǎ zhěifēng xīn jìchuqu.
   b. Wǒ jīgei wǒ māmei jìkuài yízi.
   c. Tā ràng wǒ bǎ zhèiběn shū gěi ta jīqu.
113. -jú BF: office
113.1 yóuzhēngjú N: Post Office
113.2 diànbāojù N: Telegraph Office
113.3 diànhuàjú N: Telephone Office
114. dàting V: to inquire or ask about
   a. Wǒ gēn nín dàting yǐdiǎnr shì.
115. fùjìn N: vicinity, near by
116. pǐnxīn N: ordinary mail (M. -fēng)
117. hāngkōngxīn N: air mail (M. -fēng)
118. kuàixīn N: special delivery (M. -fēng)
119. hāngkōng–kuàixīn N: air mail special delivery (M. -fēng)
120. yǒufèi N: postage
121. jìxìng N: memory
121.1 jì V: remember, keep in mind
121.2 jīzhù RV: fix or hold in mind
121.3 jīzhē V: keep in mind
121.4 jīde V: remember
   a. Tā shuōde huì, wǒ dōu méi jìzhù.
   b. Nǐ jīzhē, bie wàngle, wǒmen mìngtian sāndiǎn zhōng qu jiě ta.
   c. Néige rén wǒmen yìqíán chāng gen ta yǐkùài wán, nǐ hái jǐde ta ma?
122. zhù
  122.1 zhànzhù
  122.2 názhù

BF: (denoting firmness or security)
RV: stop, stand still
RV: take hold of

a. Wǒde biǎo zhànzhùle.
b. Nǐ zhěiyàng ná, nádezhù ma?

123. fǎnzhèng

MA: anyway, anyhow


124. yóupíào
  124.1 sānfēndé yóupíào
  124.2 hángkōngyóupíào

N: postage stamp (M. -zhāng)
a three-cent stamp
air mail stamp

125. guàhào
  125.1 guàhào-xīn

VO: register
N: registered letter (M. -fēng)

a. Zhèifēng xīn wǒ děi guàhào.

126. dào(shi)

A: and yet, on the contrary

a. Wǒmen dōu měiqián, suǒyi qǔbùliǎo. Tā dào(shi) yǒuqián, kěshì
tā yǒu yǒu shì, yě bùnèng qù.

127. bāoguǒ
  127.1 jì bāoguǒ
  127.2 qǔ bāoguǒ

N: parcel, parcel post (M. -jiàn, -ge)
VO: mail parcel post
VO: get parcel post

128. chéng

SV: be O.K., be satisfactory

a. Zhèige chéng bùchéng?

129. xíntōng (yǒutōng)
  129.1 xīnxìāng (yǒuxìāng)

N: mail box (M. -ge)
N: mail box (M. -ge)

130. yóuchāi

N: mail man

131. dāngzhōng

PW: the center of, middle of

a. Nǐ zhànzai zhèibianr, tā zhànzai nèibianr, wǒ zhànzai dāngzhōng.

132. shì

V: try

a. Nǐ shíle zhěijiàn yǐshang le ma?

133. Zhōngwén
  133.1 nián Zhōngwén
  133.2 xué Zhōngwén
  133.3 Zhōngwén shū
  133.4 yǒng Zhōngwén xiě

N: Chinese (language)
VO: study Chinese
VO: study Chinese
N: Chinese book
Ph: write in Chinese

134. xīnfēngr
  134.1 hángkōng-xīnfēngr

N: envelope
N: air mail envelope

135. xīnzhǐ
  135.1 hángkōng-xīnzhǐ

N: letter paper (M. -zhāng)
N: Air mail letter paper

136. hòu

SV: thick (in dimension)

a. Wǒ zhěijiàn yǐshang bǔgòu hòu.
137. báo  
SV: thin (in dimension)  
a. Zhèizhǎng zhī tài báo.

138. zhòng  
SV: heavy (in weight)  
138.1 guózhòng  
SV: overweight, too heavy  
a. Nǐ duō zhòng?  
b. Zhèifēng xīn, méiguózhòng.

139. qīng  
SV: light (in weight)  
a. Zhèige zhuōzi bùqīng, yīge rén dàgāi bānbushàngqù.

III. Hūzi Gōuzào

1. Time-Spent Expressions (Continued):

It has been said in Part III of Lesson IV that the time-spent expression generally follows the main verb. However, it may precede the verb in a negative sentence. When the action associated with the time expression is negative, indicating that for a certain length of time something did not happen, the time-spent expression may precede the verb:

Tā sān tiān mèi chī fàn, suǒyì bìng le.  
(He didn't eat for three days, so he got sick.)

Rén yào shì sān tiān bù chī fàn, yīding dǎi bìng.  
(If people don't eat for three days, they certainly will get sick.)

Tāde bìng sān tiān méihǎo.  
(He hasn't recovered after three days of illness.)

1.1 When a time-spent expression follows the verb in a negative sentence, the meaning is changed from stressing the time expression to a denial of the whole statement. However, this form is less often used. Compare:

Wǒ sān tiān mèi shuìjí.  
(For three days I didn't sleep at all)—as in 1.

Wǒ mèi shuì shí sān tiān jí.  
(I didn't sleep for three days.)

1.2 Certain NU-M time expressions preceding the verb in a sentence may look like a time-spent expression. But actually, they are time-when expressions with specifiers like zhèi, nèi and méi or verbs which they modify preceding them understood. Here are some of the common forms:

"Wǒ sì tiān dōu zài zhèr." means "Wǒ zhèi sì tiān dōu zài zhèr."  
(I'll be here for these four days.)

"Tā yīge yuè ěrbāikuài qián." means "Tā méi yīge yuè (yòng) ěrbāikuài qián."  
(He spends two hundred dollars every month.)

"Wǒ wǔtiān qù yīcì." means "Wǒ méi wǔtiān qù yīcì."  
(I go there once every five days.)
"Yīge yuè jiù xǐngle." means "Yòng yīge yuè jiù xǐngle."
(Only one month will do.)

"Yīge yuè cài xǐng ne." means "Yòng yīge yuè cài xǐng ne."
(It will take a whole month to do it.)

"Yìtiān qù, yìtiān bùqù." means "Zhèi yìtiān qù, nèi yìtiān bùqù."
or "Yòu yìtiān qù, yòu yìtiān bùqù."
(Goes there one day and doesn't the next.)

1.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:
1.31 I haven't bumped into him for almost a month.
1.32 I don't think you can finish that work in one year.
1.33 He can read one book a day.
1.34 I want to try not to smoke for a week.
1.35 It's very strange about his illness. He feels fine one day
and not so well the next day.
1.36 If you don't go to her for one day, you'll see what happens.
1.37 I give him three hundred dollars every month.
1.38 He lives in the United States for one year and in France the
other.
1.39 I don't think three months will be enough.
1.40 He hasn't graduated from college for six years.

2. ...(Dào)shi..., Kěshi (jiūshi or bǔguò)...:

The verb before the dàoshi in the first clause has the sense: "So far
as such-and-such is concerned." The same verb is repeated after dàoshi
to state the actual situation. A second clause, introduced by an adverb
such as kěshi, jiūshi, bǔguò, introduces an exception to the general
pronouncement just made.

Qù (dào)shi yuàn yì qù, kěshi wǒ méi qián.
(I'm willing to go all right, but I don't have any money.)

2.1 The verb that follows dàoshi may be negative, in which case it is
best translated "It isn't that..." In this usage the verb is
usually a stative verb.

Tā hǎokàn dàoshi bùhǎokàn, bǔguò wǒ xǐhuān tā.
(It isn't that she is good-looking, but I like her.)

Of course literally, it means: "So far as her looks are concerned,
she is not good-looking, nevertheless I like her."

2.2 Exercise - Answer the following questions, using the above patterns:

2.21 Nǐ bùhūl kāi fēijī ma?
2.22 Nǐ yào gēn wǒmen chúgu yīkuài wánr ma?
2.23 Nǐ kăn wǒ móde zhēizhēng huî píányi bupíányí?
2.24 Tāde nüpéngyou yídīng hěn yǒu qián ba?
2.25 Nǐ juède Zhōngwén tài nán ma?
2.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.31 He will go all right, but it seems that he is not happy about it.

2.32 It is a little too expensive (all right), but I still think we ought to buy it.

2.33 It isn't that I am afraid of her, but because I love her so much, I just had to buy that hat for her.

2.34 I bought the stamps all right, but I couldn't find the mail box.

2.35 It isn't that my memory is bad, but there are too many new words.

3. Must and Mustn't:

In expressing the idea "must", děi and biděi are the same in meaning and usage. They are often preceded by yídīng for stress.

Wǒ (yídīng) děi qù.
Tā (bǐ) biděi míngtiān dào cǎi jiāndezháo wǒ.

However, děi and biděi generally are not preceded by bù or méi. To express the idea "mustn't", expressions like bié (don't) and qiānwàn bié (by no means) are used instead. The stress word kě may precede either.

Nǐ (kě) qiānwàn bié qù.

3.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

3.11 I think you have to go there by yourself.
3.12 It's getting late. I must go now.
3.13 You mustn't give him that money.
3.14 You should by no means go to see them.
3.15 It mustn't rain tomorrow.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. A: Zhèige bāoguǒ nǐ yào gei shéi jǐ?
   B: Wǒ yào jīgěi wǒ péngyou.

2. A: Wǒ gèn mín dàdìng, yóuzhèng jū zài nǎr?
   B: Zài diànbāojū fùjīn.

3. A: Hángkōngxìndè yóufèi děi duōshào?
   B: Wǒ bùjíde le.

4. A: Zhèiāi duōde zǐ, nǐ jǐdezhù ma?
   B: jǐdezhù. Wǒde jīxíng bùhuái.

5. A: Yáoshī xià yǔ, nǐ hái qù ma?
   B: Búguān xià yǔ bùxià, fānzhéng wǒ děi qù.

6. A: Zhèizhěng xīnzhī xīnfēng guī bùguī?
   B: Guī dàoshī bùguī, kěshí mǎibuzháo.

7. A: Zhōngwén bùnánxué ba?
   B: Nǐ xuéxué shíshì, jiù zhīdaole.
8. A: Nǐ kàn zhēifēng xǐn guòzhòng bùguò?  
   B: Wǒ xiǎng měiguò. Nǐ shuō ne?
9. A: Zhèige zhōuqí zhèn bùqīng a!  
   B: Nǐ qí bǐ zhèige hài zhòng.
10. A: Zhēizhǎng zhī tài hòule ba?  
    B: Búyaojīn, wǒ hài yǒu bāode.

V. Wèntí

1. Sì Xs. yào jǐ xǐn, tā zhídào buzhídào yóuzhēngjù zài shénme dīfang?  
   Tā gèn shéi dāting?
2. Zhàojiade fūjīn yǒu yóu zhēngjù ma? Zài shénme dīfang?
3. Sì Xs. de xǐn shì yào wàng shénme dīfang jǐ? Tā yào jǐ píngxīn hǎishí hánɡkōnɡxīn?
4. Hánɡkōnɡxīn dào Mèiguó de yóufèi duōshào? Zhào Xs. zhídào buzhídào?
5. Zhào Xs. wèi shénme jībuzhù yóufèi duōshào qián?
6. Tāmen buzhídào yóufèi duōshào, zěnmé bān?
7. Hánɡkōnɡxīn cóng Shānghǎi dào Běijīnɡ zǒu jítian? Kùài xǐn ne?  
   Hánɡkōnɡ–kùài xǐn ne? Guǎn hào ne?
8. Wèi shénme hánɡkōnɡkùài xǐn zú hǎo?
9. Zài Mèiguó nènɡ wànɡ wāiguó jī hánɡkōnɡ–bāogōu bùnènɡ?
11. Zài Shānghǎi dǎ diànbiào, bùdào diànbiāoju qu, yǒnɡ diànhuà dǎ, xíng bù–  
    xíng? Zhào Xs. shīguò méiyǒu?
12. Zài Shānghǎi dǎ Yīnɡwén diànbiào bǐ Zhōnɡwén diànbiào guí ma?
13. Jī hánɡkōnɡxīn, yǐdīnɡ dǐ yǒnɡ hánɡkōnɡ–xīnzhǐ hánɡkōnɡ–xǐnɡēr ma?  
    Wèi shénme?
14. Yǒnɡ hánɡkōnɡ–xīnzhǐ xǐe xǐn, yǐfēnɡ xǐn xiē jǐzhānɡ, kěyī yúbùzhōnɡ?
15. Jīxīn yǐdīnɡ dǐ yǒu yóu zhēngjù qu ma? Bùdào yóu zhēngjù qu zěnmé bān?
16. Zài Mèiguó dǎ chēnɡ jītuō, yóuchái yítiān sònɡ jícì xǐn?
17. Zài Mèiguó, pínxīn, hánɡkōnɡxīn, kuǎixīn, guǎnxiàn, yóufèi dou shì  
    duōshào? Nǐ jíde ma?
18. Zài Mèiguó dǎ diànbiào, kěyī bùdào diànbiāoju qu ma?
19. Zài Mèiguó dǎ diànbiào yǒnɡ Zhōnɡwén chéng būchénɡ?
20. Lǐ zhèr zú jīn de xīnɡōnɡ zài shénme dīfang?
VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ bùzhídào yóuzhèngjù zài nàr, xiǎng gèn biérén dàqǐng, nǐ zěnme shuō?
2. Yàoshi nǐ dàole yóuzhèngjù qu jí xìn, xiǎng wènwen yóufèi duōshao, nǐ shuō shénme?
3. Zài yóuzhèngjù mǎi yòupiào, nǐ zěnme shuō?
4. Yàoshi zài diànbiǎojù lǐtou, nǐ xiǎng dàqǐng duōshao qián yíge zì, nǐ zěnme shuō?
5. Yàoshi nǐ qu mǎi xīnzhǐ xīnfēngrì, nǐ xiǎng yào bāo yǐdìănnrde, nǐ zěnme shuō?

VII. Gùshì
(On Record)

VIII. Fányì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 I mailed him a parcel post package, but he said he didn't receive it. Next time I will register it.
1.2 This air mail letter has to be mailed today.
1.3 May I inquire if there is a post office in the vicinity of the school?
1.4 He has a very good memory.
1.5 Do you still remember how much air mail special delivery postage to China is? No, I don't. I tried to recall it but didn't succeed.
1.6 Be sure to remember what I told you. Don't forget.
1.7 Can you remember all the things he asked you to do?
1.8 I don't care whether it is expensive or not, I am going to buy one anyway.
1.9 Will you buy me ten six-cent air-mail stamps?
1.10 You can mail it by parcel post all right, but you can't be sure he will get it.
1.11 I have tried this kind of soap several times, but it isn't very satisfactory.
1.12 Can you telegraph him in Chinese?
1.13 How do you like my stationery?
1.14 This letter paper is too thick.
1.15 I want some lighter clothing.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(112) a. I have to mail this letter today.
   b. I mailed my younger sister several cakes of soap.
   c. He asked me to mail him this book.

(114) a. I want to ask you about something.

(121) a. I don't remember a word of what he said.
   b. Keep it in mind and don't forget. We are going to meet him at three o'clock tomorrow.
   c. We used to play with him frequently. Do you still remember him?

(122) a. My watch stopped.
   b. Can you hold it securely this way?

(123) a. It may rain or shine, for all I care; I am not going out today anyway.

(125) a. I have to register this letter.

(126) a. None of us has any money, so we can't go. He has money, all right, but he is busy, so he can't go either.

(128) a. Will this do?

(131) a. You stand over here, let him stand over there, and I'll stand in between.

(132) a. Did you try this suit on?

(136) a. This coat of mine is not heavy enough.

(137) a. This paper is too thin.

(138) a. How much do you weigh?

(139) a. This table is not light. One person probably can't move it up there.
DIOIÈKE - MÀI XIÉ

I. Duìhu à

Sī Xs. xiàng qu mài xié. Dao Zhào Xs. wūzīlì lái gěn
Zhào Xs. shuō:

Sī: Zǐān, wǒ xiàng qǐng nǐn gen wo qu mài diānr dōngxi, nǐn you gōngfu ma?
Zhào: Nǐn dǎsuan shènme shǐhou qù?
Sī: Sāndiàn zhōng chéng chéng bùchéng?
Zhào: Nǐn dēng wo kǎnkàn. Xiānzài shì yǐdiǎnba. Xīng. Sāndiàn zhōng
nǐn dào wǒ zhèr lái, wǒ gěn nǐn yǐkūài qù.
(Dàole xièpù, huǒji guòlai shuō:)

Huǒji: Nǐn láile. Qīngzuò, qīngzuò.
Zhào: Zhēiwèi xiānshèng yào mài yīshūāng xié.
Huǒji: Shì yào píde, hǎishi yào bùde?
Sī: Wǒ yào yīshūāng píxié, yào huángde.
Huǒji: Nǐn chuān jīhàorde?
(Huǒji liǎngwánle, bā xié náchulai shuō:)

Huǒji: Nǐn shíshì zhēishūāng. Xiān kǎnkàn dàxīē hēshī buhēshī?
(Sī Xs. chuānshāng xié, shìlè shì, shuō:)

Sī: Chángduăn chàbùdù. Kuānzhǎi hǎoxiàng xiāo yǐdiǎnr. Wǒde jīdào
tài kuān. Zhènge yàngzi wo yē būdǎ xīhuān.
(Huǒji gānjīn shuō:)

Huǒji: Búyuàojiān, yǒu bǐde yàngzide. (Tā shuōzhe jiù yǒu náchù yīshūāng

meiyǒu?

Huǒji: Qīān yánshèr piāoliàng. Nǐn zhèjīe piāoliàng rén, yīnggāi chuān
piāoliàng xié.

Sī: Qīān yánshèr rónghū yīzāng. Zǐān, nǐn kān zhēishūāng zěnméyàng?
Zhào: Zhēishūāng yàngzì bùcuò.
Sī: Duōshào qiān?
Huǒji: Shièrkuài-kèrmǎowǒ.
SI: HÈ! Zěnme zènme guì a?
Huǎng: Zhuāngděxǐlǐ. Nǐn hái yào yòng diànr shénné?

II. Shēngzǐ Yíngfǔ

140. xié
N: shoe (M: -shuāng for pair, -zhǐ for one of a pair)
N: shoe store
140.1 xiépù
N: shoe
141. huǒjī
N: waiter, clerk (in stores)
142. -shuāng
M: pair (for shoes, socks, gloves, chopsticks, etc.)
143. pí
N: skin, fur, leather, hide (M: -kuài, zhāng)
143.1 pízi
N: fur, leather, hide
143.2 pìxié
N: leather shoes
143.3 píbāo
N: hand bag, brief case, suit case
made of leather
143.4 pízi zuòde
144. bù
N: cotton cloth (M: -pǐ, bolt; -mǎ, yard; -chǐ, foot; cùn, inch)
144.1 bùyīshàng
N: cotton garment
144.2 bùxīé
N: cotton shoes
144.3 zhūbù
N: table cloth
made of cloth
144.4 bù zuòde
145. -hào(r)
M: number, size
a. Nǐn dàjǐhàor mǎozǐ?
b. Nǐn diǎnhùlǔ duǒshǎo hǎo?
146. liáng
V: measure
a. Nǐ liǎngliàng zhēige zhūōzi yǒu duǒshǎo chǐ?
147. kuān
SV: be wide, broad
a. Zhēige chuānghú yǒu sānchǐ kuān, liǔchǐ gāo.
148. zhǎi
SV: be narrow
a. Zhèitiáo jiě tài zhǎi.
149. 大小  N: size
150. 长短  N: length
151. 宽窄  N: width
152. 脚  N: foot (of a person)
153. 合适  SV: be suitable, fit
153.1 正合适  just right
   a. 这件衣裳，我穿正合适。
   b. 这个枕头放在这里正合适。
154. 匆匆  A: hurriedly, at once, promptly
   a. 他一见我，我就匆匆离去。
155. 轻  SV: be light (in color), shallow (of water, thought)
155.1 轻蓝  N: light blue
155.2 轻红  N: light red
   a. 我去买了一件轻蓝的衬衫。
   b. 那条轻红的裙子真漂亮。
156. 深  SV: be deep (color, water, thought)
156.1 深绿  N: deep green
156.2 深黄  N: deep yellow
   a. 这个菜的味道很深。
157. 漂亮  SV: be attractive, smart looking
   a. 那个女孩很漂亮。
158. 亲亲  A: ought to (interchangeable with yīngdāng)
   a. 你去亲亲他。
159. 坚实  SV: be strong, durable, sturdy
   a. 这个家具很结实。
160. 便宜  SV: be cheap
   a. “请问这东西卖的便宜吗？”
161. 价钱  N: price, cost
161.1 价钱贵  expensive
161.2 价钱高  high priced
161.3 价钱低  low priced
161.4 价钱便宜  inexpensive, cheap in price
161.5 价钱好  priced right
   a. 美国货，卖给中国人，可以很便宜。
162. bāo
  162.1 yībāo dōngxi V/M: wrap/package, parcel
  N: a package of something
  162.2 yībāo yān N: a package of cigarettes
  162.3 bāoqīlái RV: wrap up
  162.4 bāoshang RV: wrap up

  a. Qǐng ni bā zhèige dōngxi gei wǒ bāoshang.

163. hēzi N: box (small)
  163.1 -hē(r) M: a box of

164. zhuāng
  164.1 zhuāngshang V: pack, load
  RV: pack up
  164.2 zhuāngqīlái RV: pack up

  a. Wǒ bā yīshāng dōu zhuāngzai pībāoli le.
  b. Qǐng ni bā zhèixīe dōngxi zhuāngqīlái.

165. wàzi N: sock, stocking (M: -shuāng, for pair; -zhī for one of a pair)
  165.1 cháng wàzi V: stocking
  165.2 duān wàzi RV: socks

  a. Wǒ děi qu mǎi liǎng shuāng wàzi.

166. -dá M: dozen

167. -xià BF: (RV-ending indicating downward motion or capacity)
  167.1 fàngxià RV: put down
  167.2 zuòbùxià RV: will not seat

168. zhāo(qián) V(O): make change

  a. Tā hái méizhāo wo qián ne.
  b. Zhèi shì wūkuái qián, qǐng nǐ zháogei wo.

III. Jìzi Gòuzào

1. Placewords as Objects:

Cóng, dào and zài may take only a placeword as object, not just any noun. Most nouns can be made into a PW by adding a localizer. In English we say "come to me" and "go to him", but in Chinese the literal equivalents "dào wǒ lái" and "dào tā qù" are not possible. To turn the pronouns wǒ and tā into PW, we may add such a PW as zhèr and nèr to them. Thus: dào wǒ zhèr lái and dào tā nèr qù.

1.1 The PW most commonly added to pronouns are:

zhèr (zhèlǐ) Nǐde shū méizai wǒ zhèr.
nèr (nàlǐ) Qǐng nǐ dào chuānghù nèr qù.
zhèibiānr Nǐ dào zhèibiānr lái.
nèibiānr Bǐ dào nèibiānr qu.
zhèige difang Wǒ zhèige difang méiyou duōshao rén.
nèige difang Zài tāmen neige difang yǒu fānguǐnr.
qiántou Qǐng nǐ bīé zhènzai wǒ qiántou.
hóutou Bǎ zhègè yīzi fāngzai tā hóutou.
qiánbǐānr Wǒ kěyì bùkèyì zuòzai nǐ qiánbǐānr?
hóubiānr Nǐ kě qiānwàn bīé cōng tā hóubiānr guóqu.
1.2 All the above placewords may also be added to nouns. In addition, there are certain localizers which can only be added to nouns but not to pronouns:

1štou  Wǒ zhūzai chéng lštou.
wlštou  Wǒ dào wūzi wältou qù yihūīr.
shڠtou  (Zai) qǐché shうこと yǒu yīge rén.
exštou  Wǒde mǐngzǐ zai tǎ mǐngzǐ xištou.
1љbíanr  Hàishi zai wūzi 1љbíanr chǐ hǎo yǐdǐānr.
wљbíanr  Zai lǒu wältianr yǒu hěn duō shūr.
sh녕bianr  Qǐng nǐ zai huār sh녕bianr xiě jīge zǐ.
xիbíanr  Bié xiēzài huār xǐbíanr.
dǐxtia  Zúihǎo bā yǐshang fāngzài zhǔōzǐ dǐxtia.
-ли  Nǐ zēnme bā wǒde qián dǒu zhǔōzài nǐde kǒudairlǐ le.
-шang  Tā yào dào jiěshang qu mǎi yǐdǐānr dōngxi.

1.3 All proper nouns which are the names of places are PW. In addition, there are certain common nouns which are treated as PW and do not require a localizer when used after nóng, dào and zài. They generally are common nouns which indicate a place:

jǐ  kětīng  chúfáng
xuéxiào  fǎntǐng  fēijīchǎng
pǔzi  shūfáng  dìànhuàjǔ
fànguǎnr  yǒuzhèngjǔ  huǒchèzhàn

1.4 There are other nouns which should from the point of view of meaning be considered PW, but which do not so function; i.e., they cannot stand as the object of a coverb of motion without the addition of a localizer:

hē  shān  jǐě
hú  lǜ
nǎi  chēng

1.5 Exercise – Translate into Chinese:

1.51 Please go to the table.
1.52 Please come to me.
1.53 Have you come from Shànghǎi?
1.54 Aren't you eating at the restaurant?
1.55 Haven't you lived at your friend's?

1.6 Exercise – Let one person ask one of the following questions; let a second person answer it with a complete statement:

1.61 Nǐ yào dào wǒ zheibianr lái ma?
1.62 Nǐ bǔyùǎnyí dào tā ner qù ma?
1.63 Tāmen dōu shì cóng Zhào Xs. ner láide ma?
1.64 Nǐde fēijī zai shěnme dīfāng ne?
1.65 Qǐng nǐ dào chuānghu zhe lǎi ba.
2. Generalizations of Quantity, Quality and Degree:

In English there are certain generalizations of quantity, quality and degree such as height, weight, width, thick-ness, shade (of color), etc. In Chinese, one of the ways to express these ideas is to combine as opposite pair of stative verbs. The most commonly used ones are:

- **changduan** (length)
- **daxiao** (size)
- **gaoshu** (height)
- **shenqiian** (depth; shade of color)
- **kuaimian** (speed)
- **lenggre** (temperature)
- **yuannjin** (distance)
- **kuanzhai** (width)
- **haohuai** (quality - of things and people)
- **baohou** (thickness)
- **guljian** (price)
- **qingzhong** (weight)
- **duoshao** (quantity)

2.1 Exercise - Make sentences using the nouns listed above.

3. Resultative Verb Endings:

Many stative verbs can be used as resultative verb endings. For example:

zhangehua ma?  
Zhige huair zhangehda ma?
chubuha  
Ta zuode fan tai shao, wo laoshi chubuha.
banghuo  
Zhei jian shi tai nan, wo banghuo.

Lai and qu and their combinations are also common resultative verb endings:

shangbulai  
Tai you bing, kongpa yige ren shangbulai.
huidaqu  
Ni yitian huidaqu ma?
bandeshanglai  
Wo bandeshanglai zhige zhuozi.

3.1 Certain functive verbs when used as resultative verb endings suffer modification of meaning. Even as RV endings they may have more than one meaning. Four of the most common endings in this group are:

- ji'an  
- zhao  
- shang  
- xia

(Four more will be discussed in the next lesson.)

3.11 -ji'an indicates perception of what is seen, heard, smelled, etc.

Eg:

kanjian  
Wo zuotian meikanjian ta.
tingjian  
Ni tingdeji'an ta chang ger ma?
wennjian  
Womei dou wenbijian wuzili you shenme weir.
pengjian  
Qianjiti'an w0 zai jieshang pengjianle yige laopengyou.

3.12 The RV ending -zhao indicates success in attaining the object of the action. Here are the most common combinations:

shuizhao  
Wo shule banjian meishuzhao.
zhaozhao  
Ni zhaozhaole nibein shu le ma?

58
jiànzháo  Nǐ míngtian qù yǐdīng jiànbuzháo ta.
jiězháo  Tā zhě liangtian yǐfēng xǐn yè méi jiězháo.
diǎnzháo  Diǎnzháo zhè ge chǎo dōu bù yào jīn.
mǎizháo  Wǒ mǎizháo le ni shūduō nèige bǐ le.
zhòngzháo  Běnlái wǒ xiǎng yòngbuzháo nèige dōngxì, suǒyì
shǒuqūnlái. Shéi zhídào xiànzài zhēn yòngzháo le.
chīzháo  Yòu duōshào qián yě chībuzháo zěnme hǎo de fàn.

Note that in the two potential forms and the negative actual
form, the ending zhǎo always gets stress, but in the affirm-
ative actual form, it is sometimes stressed and sometimes not.

3.13 Shàng as an RV ending generally indicates the accomplishment
of the action. Some of the most common combinations are:

guǎnshang  Wǒ guǎnbushàng zhèige chuǎnghu.
zhūshang  Tā xiānzài yòu qián le. Zhūshàng xīn fāngzi le.
chuǎnshang  Yīshàng tài xiǎo. Wǒ chuǎnle bāntiān méichuǎnshang.
bāoshang  Zhèizhàng zhí tài xiāo, kōngpà bāobushàng.
zhūfāngshang  Qīng nǐ bǎ nèixī yīshàng zhūfāngshang.

Sometimes the -shàng ending may be interpreted as "onto" in
chuǎnshang above, or in the following illustration:

xiěshang  Zhèizhǎng zhǐ bùhāo, xiěbushàng zì.

3.14 The RV ending -xià indicates either the downward motion of the
action or the capacity of the topic as to extent of room, space
or content. In its first meaning, the RV is usually in the
two actual forms:

fāngxià  Wǒ qīng ta fāngxia, tā méifāngxia. Hái názhe ne.
tāngxià  Tā yǐlèi jiù tāngxia xiūxi yīhuī.
zuòxià  Zuòxià ba. Bié zhānhèle.

But in its second meaning, the RV may be in any of the four
actual and potential forms:

fāngxià  Kǒu duǎnli fāngbuxià zènme duō qián.
tāngxià  Zhèige chuàng tāngdxià sāngé rén.
zuòxià  Zhèijīan wūzi zhēn zuòxiàle wūshì rén.

(The student is advised to learn only the combinations given
in the text and not to attempt making up their own combinations
without confirmation.)

IV. Fǎyīn Liànxié

1. A: Wǒ yào mǎi yīshuāng pǐxiē.
   B: Yào huángde yào hēi de?

2. A: Zhèige shì yòng shénme zuòde?
   B: Wǒ xiǎng shì yòng pízi zuò?

3. A: Tāde diānhuà duōshào hào?
   B: Wǒ jībùzhǎngchuī. Nǐ wén Lǎo Lǐ ba.

4. A: Nǐ liǎngliàng zhèige zhūduì duō chóng?
   B: Dúbùqǐ, wǒ méiyou chǐ.
5. A: Nǐ shénme shíhou hufde jī?  
   B: Wǒ yìtǐngshuō, jiù gānjīn hufquè.

   B: Piāoliang shì piāoliang, kěshì bǔjiēshì.

   B: Bùyòng. Bāoshang jiù xíngle.

8. A: Zhèige dìfàng, yánhde jiàqiàn zēnmeyàng?  
   B: Liǎngmǎowǔ yībāo.

9. A: Tā méizhānggei ni qián ma?  
   B: Zhāo shì zhāole, kěshì zhāocuōle.

10. A: Nǐ kàn zhèige zhuōzǐ, kuānzhāi hěshì būhēshì?  
    B: Kuānzhāi hěshì, kěshì chǎngduān būhēshì.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. yào jiao Zhàoxs. gēn ta zuò shénme qu? Tā dāsuan shénme shíhou qu?

2. Sī Xs. yào mǎi shénme yándōng de xié?

3. Sī Xs. chuān jǐhào de xié? Tā jǐde ma?

4. Sī Xs. bùzhīdìào tā zějiē chuān duò duō de xié, zěnme bān?

5. Huōjì gōi Sī Xs. náchuláide xié, tā chuānzhe hěshì būhēshì? Nēige yángzi tā xīhuān bōxīhuān?

6. Diērshuāng xié, Sī Xs. juéde zēnmeyàng?

7. Huōjì shuō qián yānshēr zěnme hǎo? Sī Xs. shuō qián yānshēr zěnme būhāo?

8. Zhàoxs. juéde nēishuāng xié hǎo bùhào?

9. Nēishuāng xiéde jǐa qián zēnmeyàng? Sī Xs. juéde píáníyì bùpíányì?

10. Huōjì shuō nēishuāng xié zěnme hǎo?

11. "Gulde búgūl, jiàndà būjiān" shì shénme yīlì?

12. Huōjì bǎ nēishuāng xié bāoshàngle ma?

13. Sī Xs. mǎi wǎzi le méiyou?

14. Nǐ xīhuān chuān shěnmeyándōng de xié? Shì píde shì būde? Shì hěde shì huāngde?

15. Nǐ chuān duō duò de xié? Jǐhào?

16. Nǐ juéde shěnmeyánshēr zuǐ fèi lǎoliàng? Shì shěn yánshēr shì qiǎn yánshēr?

17. Jiàqiàn gūde xié dōu jǐshì ma?
18. 这个 위치한 창문에, 공정히 집중이 되어? 你 liability meiyou?
19. 哪些美洲写了一封信, 机会使彼此和睦, 但是
20. 你是否你昨天写信, 是shiftkuai-ermao吗. 你给ta shiwukuai

VI. 你梳shenme?
1. 你是否你昨天事情没有pengyou given 你是否你yiidiang daxi, 你zemm
gan tashuosh?
2. 你导puzili qu kankan, huoji wen nai ma shenme; keishi ni buxiang mai
shenme, ni zemm gan tashuosh?
3. 你到dole xiepulu, shile jishuang xie, yode buheshi, yode ni buxihuan,
keishi huoji yiding xiang rong nai mai, ni zemm bane?
4. 你早puzili maii yiylang daxi, huoji you yao rang nai mai bigde,
ni buxiang mai, ni shuosh shenme?
5. 你ost ni gennide pengyou yiikuai qu mai daxi, ni xiang wenwen ni
pengyoude yisi zemmeyang, ni zemm shuosh?

VII. Bishu
A: Jinjian tiangqi bucuo.
B: Zhen hao. Zhen shi chuntian le.
A: Ke busi ma! Cao ye lule, huar ye kaile. Shude yanshe xiang hua
di shide.
B: Nanhuole, zai waiou sanxan bu zhen shifu. Zhei yidongtiain, busi
xia xuex juishi gua feng, you tebie leng.
A: Ren dou xihuan chuntian. Keshi zhere chuntian tai duan. Haoxiang
yihu fur jiu guoque.
B: Shla! Suoyi women yingdang zai tiangqi haoke shihou chulai wanhwan.

VIII. Fanli
1. Translate into Chinese:
   1.1 I sent him a pair of socks by air mail.
   1.2 This is made of leather.
   1.3 Will you please measure it for me and tell me the length.
   1.4 This kind of paper is just the right thickness.
   1.5 As soon as I heard what he said, I promptly wired my wife.
   1.6 It's smart-looking all right, but it doesn't fit me.
1.7 This pair of shoes is good looking and will wear well. What's more, the price is right. However, they don't fit me well.

1.8 The price of this kind of cigarettes ought to be cheaper now.

1.9 I will pack these brushes in a box.

1.10 I gave him twenty dollars, and he gave me back two and a quarter in change.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(145) a. What size hat do you wear?
   b. What's your telephone number?

(146) a. Will you measure this table and see how many feet long it is?

(147) a. This window is three feet wide by six feet high.

(148) a. This street is too narrow.

(152) a. This suit doesn't fit me.
       b. Placed there the table is just right.

(153) a. As soon as he called me, I went over at once.

(154) a. I don't like to wear light colored clothes.
       b. That river is very shallow.

(155) a. This table is too dark a brown.

(156) a. That man's clothes are very smart looking.

(157) a. You ought to tell him.

(158) a. That house is extremely well-built.

(159) a. "Expensive things are (in the end) not expensive, while cheap ones are (really) not cheap."

(160) a. American books can sell for very good prices in China.

(161) a. Please wrap this article for me.

(163) a. I packed all the clothes in the suitcase.
       b. Please pack these things away.

(164) a. I have to go and buy two pairs of socks.

(165) a. He hasn't given me the change yet.
       b. Here is five dollars. Please give me the change.
DIBAKE - ZÜ FÂNG

I. Dulhuâ

Sî Xs. jiêzhao yifêng cong Mêiguó láide xìn. Ràng Sî Xs. zai Shànghái zhū yìnián. Sî Xs. xiâng bûneng zai Zhàojia zhū nême jiù. Suóyi tâ dêi zhào fãng bân jiâ. Yǒu yìtiān, tâ zai bâoshàng kânjian yîge guǎnggào, yǒu yìsû fângzi chūzū. Tâ jiù dào nêige fângzi nêr què. Sî Xs. jiânzhào fângdōng, gen fângdōng shuò:

SÎ: Wǒ zai bâoshàng kànjiàn nín dêngde guǎnggào. Nín yào chǔzûde shî shènme yàngrde fângzi?


SÎ: Nín dàì wo kànkan, kěyî ma?

Fângdōng: Kèyî. Nín dêng wo suǒshang mîn, wǒ gên nín yîkuaìr qu.

SÎ: Zài nàr a?


SÎ: Hênh hâo! Fântîng zai nêibiànrbâ?

Fângdōng: Nîn qîng guîlái. Zhîîjian shí fântîng, cîng zhèige mîn, kěyî dào chûfâng qu.

SÎ: Chûfângli yǒu lûzi ma?


SÎ: Hâojîle. Wǒfâng zài nàr?


SÎ: Diànmen zài nàr?

Fângdōng: Diànmen zài zhêr.

SÎ: Fângzû shì ân yuè suân, shì ân lîbâi suân?

Fângdōng: ân yuè suân. Wôshîwûkuai qián, yîge yuè.

SÎ: Dîân, shuí dǒu zai lîtou ma?

Fângdōng: Dîân, shuí, wômen bûguăn.


SI: Nême wō xiān gěi nǐ yǐdiǎnr dìngqìan. Nǐn géi wō liú sān tiān chéngh bùchēng?

Fángdōng: Nǐn dàsuàn géi duōshào qián ne?

SI: Shǐkuài qián, hǎo bùhǎo?


Fángdōng: Wǒ géi nǐ xiē yīge shǒutiāo.

II. Shēngzī Yǒngfǎ

169. zǔ V: rent
169.1 zǔ fáng VO: rent a house
169.2 zūchūqu RC: rent out
169.3 zǔqìán N: rental
169.4 fángzū N: house rent
169.5 chūzū V: for rent

a. Zhèrè zìqí bùshi wǒ zìjǐde, shì zűde.
b. Zhèshìshù fáng, chūzū ma?
c. Zhèshìshù fáng, yījīng zūchūqule.

170. -jiǔ
170.1 hěnjiǔ měijiān SV: long (of time)
Ph: haven't seen you for a long time

a. Nǐ zài zhěr zhùle duōjiǔle?

171. guāngggào N: advertisement

172. děng V: insert (an advertisement, notice, etc.)
172.1 děng báo VO: put in the paper
172.2 děng guāngggào VO: put an advertisement in the paper, magazine, etc.

a. Tā yào mài tāde qǐcē, suǒyí zài bǎoshāng dēngle yīge guāngggào.

173. -suǒ(r) M: for houses

a. Zhèshìshú fángzī shì tāde.

174. fángdīng N: landlord, landlady
175. wǒfáng N: bedroom (M: -jiān)

176. děng N: lamp, light
176.1 diàndēng N: electric light
176.2 shǒu diàndēng N: flash light
177. zǐlái shuǐ
177.1 zǐlái shuǐ bǐ
N: running water
N: fountain pen

178. suǒ
178.1 suǒ shāng
178.2 suǒ qí lāi
V/N: lock (M: -bǎ)
RV: lock up (doors, locks)
RV: lock up (things, people)

179. yǎo shì
N: key (M: -bǎ)

180. qiáng
N: wall

181. dì bān
N: floor

182. lú zi
182.1 shēng lú zi
N: stove, range, heater, furnace
VO: start a fire in the stove; light the furnace

a. Nǐmen jiā shēng lú zi le meiyou?

183. pén
183.1 (xī) zǎo pén
183.2 (xī) liàn pén
N: basin, tub
N: bath tub
N: wash basin

184. huàn
184.1 huàn qián
184.2 huàn yī shāng
184.3 huàn dōng xī
V: exchange, change
exchange money
change clothes
exchange something

a. Zhèige hóng de wǒ bǔdà xǐ huan, qǐng nǐ gēi wǒ huàn yī ge lù de, xīng bù xīng?
b. Tiān tài lèng, yǎo shì chū qu, nǐ děi huàn yī jiān yī shāng.

185. guān zì
185.1 shū guān zì
N: tube, pipe (M: -gēn)
N: water pipe

186. diànmén
N: switch (electric)

187. àn (zhě)
CV: according to

a. Wǒmen jiù liǎn zé tā shū de bān ba.
b. Àn wǒ de yǐ sī, wǒmen shì bù qu, nǐ shuō ne?

188. suàn
188.1 suàn chū lāi
188.2 suàn shāng
188.3 bū suàn
V: reckon, calculate, add, count
RV: figure out
RV: include in, add, count in
doesn't count, not reckoned as, not considered

a. Nǐmen qù ba, bié suàn wǒ.
b. Zhèige bǐāo, wǔshí kuài qián, bū suàn tài guī.

189. dǐng
189.1 dǐng shì fòu
189.2 dǐng dī fāng
189.3 dǐng hào gè
189.4 dǐng qiān
V: fix, order
VO: make an appointment, set a time
VO: agree on a place, reserve a place
RV: settled
N: deposit (on purchase or rent)

a. Wǒ gēn ta dǐng hào gè, míng tiān sān diǎn zhōng jiàn.
b. Wǒ děi gēn ta dǐng yī ge shì fòu tān yī tān.
190. juédìng  V: decide
   a. Wǒ juédìngle, mìngtian búqù.
   b. Nǐ shì zěnme juédìngde?

191. liú  V: keep, set aside, detain, save
191.1 liú tiáor  VO: leave a message
191.2 liúxiá  RV: leave it here
191.3 liúqilai  RV: put away
   a. Chēfàn de shíhou tā méihuālai, wǒ gěi tā liúle yědiānr cài.
   b. Wǒ liú tā zài jiālǐ chīfàn.
   c. Tā yídǐng yào zǒu, wǒ bǎ tā liúxiále.

192. jiù nème bān  IE: Good, let's do it that way.
   A: Mìngtian wǒ gēn nǐ dào nǐmen xuéxiào qu kànkan qu.
   B: Hǎo. jiù nème bān.

193. dàhòutiān  TW: three days from today
193.1 dàqiántiān  TW: three days ago

194. tiáor  N: brief note, short message
194.1 shōutiáor  N: receipt

III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Resultative Verb Endings (continued):

   It has been said in the last lesson that certain functive verbs, when
   used as RV endings, suffer a change of meaning. Four of these most
   common ones have been introduced. Here are four more:

   -liǎo  -qǐ  -zhù  -kǎi

   1.1 -Liǎo as an RV ending indicates capacity either for doing something,
   like:

   zuòbùliǎo  Zhēijiān shì tài nán. Wǒ zuòbùliǎo.
   bāndìliǎo  Nǐ yīge rén bāndìliǎo zěnme duō shì ma?
   méináiliǎo  Tā zuòtiān yào lái méináiliǎo.

   or for carrying it through completion, like:

   chībùliǎo  Fān tāi duō. Wǒ kōngpà chībùliǎo.
   yòngdèiliǎo  Yīge rén yīge yuè yòngdèiliǎo sānbiāikuài qián ma?
   méináiliǎo  Wǒ yīge rén méináiliǎo neme duō dōngxì.

   Note that RV with a -liǎo ending seldom takes the affirmative
   actual form.

   1.2 -Qǐ as an RV edning carries the meaning of (1) high up either in
   opinion or in position (2) able to afford (in a financial sense).

   Some of the most common ones that carry the first meaning are:

   kàngdeqǐ  (to have a high opinion of...)
            Wǒmén dōu hěn kàngdeqǐ ta.
Kàn buqi (to have a low opinion of...)
Biè kàn buqi rèn.

duideqi (able to look someone in the face)
Zhè jian shì, wǒ hěn duideqi ta. Tā wèi shénme hái bū gāoxìng?

dūibuqi (unable to face a person due to some fault, etc.,
hence, a form of apology—"Excuse me!")
Tā hěn dūibuqi wo. (He owes me an apology.)
Dūibuqi, zhuōtian wǒ méílái. (Excuse me for not being here
yesterday.)

Some of those which carry the second meaning are:

màideqi Zhèige qíchē, wǒ màibuqi, tā màideqi.
zhùbuqi Zhèige difang wǒ kě zhùbuqi.
chībuqi Wǒmen chībuqi nème hǎode dōngxi.
kàn buqi Diānyīngr tài gūl. Wǒ kàn buqi.

RV with a -gǐ ending do not take the actual forms. Note that the
combinations kàndeqi and kàn buqi may carry either of the two meanings,
the interpretation depending on the context.

1.3 The RV ending -zhù indicates (1) firmness and security; (2) to stop
or stump. It carries the first meaning in the following common
combinations:
nàzhù Nǐ yízhù shǒu kǒngpà nábùzhù.
jìzhù Zhèi yìkè wǒ niǎnle sānshíduō cì hái shì méijīzhù.
zhànzhù Wǒde bǐng hái méi hǎo, zhàn bù zhù. Wǒ kěyǐ zuòxià ma?

The following common combinations carry the second meaning of
-zhù:
tíngzhù Chē kǎide yàoshì tài kuài, jiù bùnèng lìkè tíng zhù.
wènzhù Zhèige wèntī tài nán, bā wǒ gěi wènzhule.
nánzhù Tā shènmé dòu dōng. Nǐ yídīng nán bù zhù ta.
zhànzhù Wǒde bǐng zhànzhule.

Note that zhànzhù has been listed in both groups. Its meaning
depends on the context.

1.4 -kāi as an RV ending carries the meaning of separation, "away" and "off".
kāikai Nǐ kāidekāi zhèige hēzi ma?
lǐkai Tāmen liǎngge rèn tiānqìān zài yíkuài, jiānzhíde lǐbukāile.
nàkai Kuài bā zhèige nàkai. Yǒu wèir le.
zǒukai Zhèrde shìqíng mǎngjíle. Wǒ yǐliǎngtiǎnli zǒubukāi.

The student is again warned not to attempt to make up his own combinations
with these RV endings.

1.5 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.51 It is very difficult for me to leave this place.
1.52 Please hold this box for me. Have you really got hold of it?
1.53 Stop! Don't go any further.
1.54 The child is too small to be away from his mother.
1.55 I don't have much money. I cannot afford to go to New York everyday
1.56 I think he looks down on me. Therefore I won't talk to him.
1.57 This is too difficult. I don't think I can do it.
1.58 It's going to rain shortly. I am afraid we cannot go.
1.59 You prepared too much food. We certainly won't be able to finish it.
1.60 Don't do anything to people that will make you unable to look them in the face.

2. Various Uses of Suàn: Suàn has several uses with varying meaning:

suàn................to calculate, figure out
suānchulái...........to calculate, figure out
suānhǎole...............finished calculating

suānshang...........to count in, include
suānzǎi yǐkuāir same
suānzǎi lǐtōu same

suàn(shi)...............to count as being, be considered as, be classed as.
(followed by a descriptive expression)

suānle...............forget it, let the matter drop, call it quits

2.1 Examples of the various uses of suàn:

2.11 To calculate

Yīgōng yǒu duōshǎo qián, qīng nǐ suàn yīsuàn.
(Please figure out how much it is altogether.)

Yòng zhège fázi yīsuàn jíu kěyǐ suānchulái.
(With this method you can figure it out at a glance.)

2.12 To include

Nǐmen qu chīfàn, bié wàng qǐ bā wǒ suānshang.
(When you go out to eat, don't forget to count me in.)

Suānshang jīntiān yòngde qián, yě bùguò bāshíwǔkuài.
(Including what was spent today, it still doesn't exceed $85.00.)

2.13 Be considered

Yào shì tā yǐjīng bùtòuténgle, tā neige bīng jīu suàn hǎo le.
(If his headache has stopped, then his ailment can be regarded as cured.)

Nǐmen liàngge rén de yǐsī būyìyǎng, kěshí nà bùnèng suānshì
tā cuò le.
(You two don't hold the same opinion, but that doesn't mean that he is wrong.)

2.14 Forget it!

Yào shì tā būkěn, jīu suānle.
(If he isn't willing to do it, let the matter drop.)
Suànle ba! Xià yǔ bùnèng qùle.
(Let's drop the matter. It's raining so we can't go anyway.)

Wǒ kăn nǐ suànle ba; méi qián, qù yǒu shénme yīsi?
(I think you'd better let the matter drop; we haven't any money, so there's no point in going.)

2.2 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.21 That plan of yours is fine, but first do a little figuring as to how much money it's going to take.
2.22 If you count me in too, there will be thirty-one people.
2.23 If you two can't agree, just call it quits.
2.24 How much did it cost the three of us to eat last night? Well, not counting the tip, it was $7.65.
2.25 I haven't yet finished figuring; when I have, I'll tell you.
2.26 Including these of mine, there are two hundred and forty-five in all.
2.27 If no one claims this money by tomorrow noon, I shall consider it mine.
2.28 When we were figuring out how much food to take along, we didn't count those two fellows in.
2.29 Have you figured out how many miles an hour that type of plane travels?
2.30 Have you finished figuring out that problem I asked you to figure?

IV. Fēiyīn Liànxi

2. Hěn jiǔ měijiàn, hǎo ba? Hěn hǎo. Nǐ xiàitài hǎo?
V. Wèntí

1. Sì Xs. jiēzhàode xǐn, shì cóng shénme dìfang lái de? Xīnlì shuō shénme?
2. Sì Xs. wèi shénme yào zǔ fáng?
3. Sì Xs. zhǎo fáng zěnme zhǎo?
4. Tā jiànzhou fángdōng gèn fángdōng shuō shénme?
5. Tā zhǎode fángzi shì shénmeyàngrde fángzi? Yīgòng jǐjiǎn? Yǒu diànhuà zīlǎishuí meiyou?
6. Néige fángzi zài shénme dìfang? Dàmén suǒzhe meiyou?
7. Néige fángzi hào bǔhào? Kètīng zěnmeiyàng?
8. Cóng fàn tíng dào chúfáng yǒu mén meiyou?
9. Chūfángli you lúzi ma? Chūfángde dìfang dà bùdà?
10. Wǒfáng zěnmeiyàng? Zǎofáng ne?
11. Fángzū zěnme suàn? Shì àn yuè suàn, shì àn líbài suàn? Diàn shuǐ, fángdōng guān buguān?
12. Fángdōng wèi shénme jiao Sì Xs. zǎo yídǐnr juèdéng?
13. Sì Xs. wèi shénme yào gěi dīngqián? Tā yào gěi duōshao dīngqián?
14. Yǐoshi Sì Xs. sāntian yīhòu bùyuànyi zū nǐsuǒr fáng, tā gěide dīngqián zěnme bān?
15. Nèitian shì jīhào? Fángdōng xīwàng shénme shǐhòu zhīdào Sì Xs. yào bùyào zū nǐsuǒr fángzì?
16. Fángdōng gěi Sì Xs. xiě shōutiàor le meiyou?
17. Yǐoshi nǐ xiǎng zhǎo fáng, nǐ zěnme zhǎo?
19. Nǐde wǒfáng dà bùdà? Yǒu jī ge chuānghu? Wǒfángli yǒu xǐliǎnpén meiyou?
20. Nǐ shénme shǐhòu gei rén xiě shōutiàor? Shénme shǐhòu liú tiàor?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yǐoshi nǐ xiǎng zūfáng, nǐ kànjiàn fángdōng nǐ zěnme wèn tā?
2. Yǐoshi nǐ xiǎng qīng nǐde péngyou tī nǐ zhǎo fáng, nǐde péngyou wèn nǐ yào shénme yàngrde fángzì, nǐ zěnme shuō?
4. Yàooshi nǐ kànle yǐsuǒ fángzi, nǐ bùnéng juédìng zěn buzuǐ, nǐ xiǎng
dièrtian zài gàosòng tā yào buyào, nǐ zěnme gèn tā shuō?

5. Yàooshi nǐ juédìng zěn nèisuǒ fáng lè, nǐ děi gèn fángdōng shuō shénme?

VII. Gùshì
(On Record)

VIII. Fànyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 I want to rent this house, but I don't know what the rent is.

1.2 The rent he asked was too high. I don't think he can rent it. Do you?

1.3 How long have you been studying Chinese? Not very long.

1.4 He did put an advertisement in the paper, but nobody called.

1.5 The landlady said: "It is a ten-room house: two each of living
rooms, dining rooms, kitchens, bed rooms and bath rooms."

1.6 Everything in this house - such as lamps, switches, heater, bath
tub, flooring, water pipes, even the locks, has been changed recently.

1.7 The rent of this house is fifty dollars, not including electricity
and water.

1.8 This key doesn't fit this lock. You cannot open the door with it.
If you don't believe me, try it.

1.9 The furnace has been repaired lately.

1.10 Do you want to change with me?

1.11 According to my opinion, it is not satisfactory.

1.12 Will you figure out how much it is altogether?

1.13 Five dollars cannot be considered cheap for this kind of pen.

1.14 We have set a time to have lunch together.

1.15 He and I decided that we will go to New York together by the three-
oc'clock train.

1.16 I have not decided yet whether I am going to rent the house or not.

1.17 I saved a piece of candy for him.

1.18 Will you please hold this room for a couple days? I'll give
you five dollars deposit on it.
1.19 I have set aside some stationery for him, but I can't be sure he will come for it.

1.20 May I leave five dollars for him?

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(169) a. This house isn't mine. It's rented.
   b. Is this house for rent?
   c. This house has already been rented.

(170) a. How long have you been living here?

(172) a. He wants to sell his car, so he put an advertisement in the paper.

(173) a. This house is his.

(182) a. Have you started the furnace in your house?

(184) a. I don't like this red one very well. Will you please change it for a green one?
   b. It's too cold. If you go out, you must change your clothes.

(187) a. Let's do what he says.
   b. In my opinion, we are not going. What do you say?

(188) a. You go ahead. Don't count me in.
   b. Fifty dollars can't be considered too much for this watch.

(189) a. He and I decided that we'll meet at 3:00 tomorrow.
   b. I have to set a time to have a chat with him.

(191) a. He didn't come back in time for supper, so I saved some food for him.
   b. I kept him for supper.
   c. He insisted on going, but I persuaded him to stay.

(192) A: Tomorrow I'll go with you to visit your school.
   B: O.K. let's do that.
DLJÜKE – JIE JIÄJÜ

I. Dülhuä

ST: Xs. känle fäng, huídào Zhàojia, zhào Zhào Tt. qu shängliang.

Zhào Tt: Nín huîlaile. Fângzi zhäohäole meiyou?


Zhào Tt: Zài nár a?

ST: Dàxîlû sänshiwûhao. Wûjiân fâng.

Zhào Tt: Shî shênme yângrde fângzi?


Zhào Tt: Fângzû duǒshao qián?

ST: Yîge yuè wûshiwûkuai qián, diân shuí lîngwâi suân.

Zhào Tt: Zhîr piányi. Xiànzâi zhâiyàngrde fângzi kë zhên bûrôngyi zhào. Bûdâi jiâju ba?


ST: Hâojîle. Jiû nêmë bân ba. Nîn nêng jiègei wo shênme jiâju ne?


ST: Wô xiàng dû nêng yông. Wô bûjiângjiu. Pânzhûng wô jiùshî zhânshî yông jiège yû. Chûfângli yôngde dîngxi xiàng pànzî, wên dû zai nár mài?


ST: Dîtân nîn yû ma?


ST: Nême wôfâng ne?

Zhào Tt: Wôfângde chuâng, yîgûl, yîzi dû yôu. Kân nîn hái xûyào shênme?
SI: Wǒ xiǎng chuángdānzi, tānzi, zhěntou, zhěntoutào, háiyǒu chuānghulìánzi, dōu dài māi.


SI: Dōu zài nǎr ne?

Zhào Tt: Jiù zài hòoutou wǔzīlǐ ne. Yāoshì nín méi shǐ, wǒ xiànzài jiù gēn nín qù.


II. Shēngzhì Yòngfǎ

195. jiè  V: borrow, lend, loan
195.1 jiè(gei)  V: lend to
195.2 gèn...jiè  CV...V: borrow from
195.3 jiè qián  VO: borrow money, lend money

   a. Wǒ gèn ta jièle wùkuài qián.
   b. Tā jiègei wǒ wùkuài qián.
   c. Wǒ xiāng jiè nǐ nèibèn shū kǎnkàn.

196. jiāju  N: furniture (M: -jiàn, -tào)
196.1 dài jiāju  VO: be furnished, include furniture

   a. Mǐ zùde nèige fāngzi, dài jiāju bùdài?

197. shāngliang  V: discuss, talk over

   a. Nèijian shìqìng yōngbuzháo gèn ta shāngliang.

198. -shī  N: style, pattern fashion
198.1 xīshī  western style or fashion
198.2 Zhōngshī  Chinese style
198.3 xīnshī  modern style
198.4 jiǔshī  old style
198.5 xīshī féngzī  western style house
198.6 xīshī jiāju  western style furniture
198.7 nánshī zhājī  southern fried chicken

199. lǐngwài  A: besides, in addition to

   a. Wǒ hái lǐngwài niànr yǐdiānr biéde gōngkè.
   b. Búshī zhèige péngyou shuōde, shǐ lǐngwài yīge (biéde) péngyou shuōde.

200. huán(gei)  V: return (borrowed money or things)

   a. Tā qùnián gēn wo jiède qián, hái méihuán wo ne, xiànzài yǒu yào jiè.
201. -tào
201.1 yǐtao jiāju M: set of, suit of
201.2 yǐtao yǐshāng M: set of furniture
201.3 yǐtao pánzi wān M: suit of clothes
201.4 yǐtao shū M: set of dishes
201.4 yǐtao shū M: set of books

202. shāfā N: sofa (M: -gê, -tào)

203. guī(zì) N: chest, cabinet
203.1 yǐ(shāng)guī N: wardrobe, chest of drawers
203.2 shūguī N: book shelf
203.3 wānguī N: cupboard

204. jiàzi N: rack, shelf, frame
204.1 shūjià(zì) N: book shelf, book case
204.2 yǐshāngjià(zì) N: frame for hanging clothes, clothes hanger, clothes tree, clothes rack

205. shénmede N: and so on
205.1 xiàng...shénmede such as...etc.
   a. Wǒ dēi māi yìdiǎnr yǐzi, shūjīn, yāshuā, yāgāo shénmede.
   b. Xiàng zhuōzǐ, yǐzi shénmede, nǐ gè pūzi dōu hěn piányi.

206. jiāngjiù SV: be meticulous, particular
   V: be meticulous or particular about; care a great deal about
   a. Tāmen jiālìde jiāju, jiāngjiùjié.
   b. Tā nǐ gè rěn hěn jiāngjiùchí.

207. zhànsǐhí A: temporarily, for the time being
   a. Xīn qíchē tài guī. Wǒ zhànsǐhí yòng zhègè jùde ba.

208. -pán M: plate of, platter of
208.1 yǐpán cài M: a dish of food
208.2 pánzi... N: plate, platter, tray
208.3 chàpánzi M: tea tray

209. chūzǐ N: cook

210. dìtān N: rug, carpet (M: -kuài, -zhāng)

211. xūyào V: need
   N: need
   a. Nǐ xūyào shénme dōngxi, gào song wǒ, wǒ gěi nǐ mǎi.
   b. Nǐ yòu shénme xūyào de shìhou, qǐng bǐ kēqi.

212. chuángdānzi N: sheet

213. tǎnzi N: blanket (M: -kuài)

214. zhēntou N: pillow

215. liánzi N: curtain
215.1 chuāng(hu)-liánzi N: drapes, shades, curtains
216. fēi...bùkě
IE: must, it won't do otherwise
  a. Wǒ fēi dao Zhōngguó qu bùkě.
  b. Zhèjiān shí, fēi tā bàn bùkě.

217. língsuī
217.1 língqián
SV: odds and ends of, sundry
N: small change
217.2 língsuī(de) shìqìng
   N: sundry affairs
217.3 língsuī(de) dōngxī
   odds and ends, sundry articles
217.4 línglingsuīsūde
dundries
  a. Wǒ jiū bā dà dōngxī bānzōu le. Língsuīsūde xiǎo dōngxī, wǒ dou
tuǒ bān.
  b. Bānjiănde shìhou línglingsuīsūde dōngxī zúi máfān.

218. yídīănryīdīănrdē
A: little by little
  a. Tā yídīănryīdīănrdē bā língsuīsūde shìqìng dōu zuòwánle.

III. Jùzi Gōuzào

1. Lend and Borrow:

In English, the difference between lending and borrowing is made clear
by using different verbs to indicate these two actions. But in Chinese,
the word jiè may mean either to borrow or to lend:

Wǒ jièle ta wūkuài qián. (I borrowed $5.00 from him.) or
   (I lent him $5.00.)

Although the meaning of jiè may be clear from the context, it is
advisable to use distinctive forms to avoid possible ambiguity.
For lending, the two following forms are most often used:

jiègei Wǒ jiègei ta wūkuài qián. (I lent him $5.00.)
jièchuqū Wǒ jièchuqū wūkuài qián. (I lent out $5.00.)

For borrowing, the most commonly used form is:

gēn...jiè Wǒ gēn ta jièle wūkuài qián.
   (I borrowed $5.00 from him.)

1.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.11 My friend loaned me his car for a week.
1.12 He wanted to borrow $5.00 from me, but I refused.
1.13 I don't own this book. I borrowed it from Mr. Wang.
1.14 If I were you, I wouldn't lend him that much money.
1.15 May I borrow your boat tomorrow?

2. The Use of Língwài:

Língwài is most commonly used as a movable adverb and as a specifier.

2.1 As a movable adverb it means "besides", "in addition".

   (Língwài) Tā (língwài) gēile wǒ wūkuài qián.
   (In addition, he gave me $5.00.)
(Lìngwài) Wǒ (lìngwài) yǒu yīge hǎo biǎo.
(I have a good watch besides this one.)

2.2 As a specifier it means "another":

Nà shì lìngwài yījiàn shìqìng.
(That's quite another matter.)

Wǒ yào dào lìngwài yīge dìfāng qù zhǔ jìtiān.
(I'm going elsewhere to spend a few days.)

2.3 Exercise – Translate into Chinese:

2.31 I have another blanket like this.

2.32 I bought a watch for him besides (this one).

2.33 He didn't come here last Friday. It was another day he came.

2.34 That student has spent all of the $500 he borrowed last month. Now he borrowed another $500.

2.35 It was another friend of mine who gave me that bookshelf.

3. Duó(me), Zěnme, Zhème (Zènme) and Nème:

These are all adverbs, some of which are movable and some fixed.

3.1 The interchangeable forms duó and duóme are both fixed adverbs which immediately precede a stative verb only. They carry the two meanings of "how"—interrogative and exclamatory. Therefore, the sentence "Tā duóme gāo ā" may be punctuated:

Tā duóme gāo ā! (How tall he is!) or
Tā duóme gāo ā? (How tall is he?)

depending on the intent and the context.

3.2 Zènme, when used as a fixed adverb immediately preceding a functive verb, carries the meaning "in what way" and is generally stressed:

Nǐ zènme qù? (How are you going?)

But when used as a movable adverb, it means "why" or "how is it that", usually stressing the subject of the verb that it precedes or follows:

Zènme nǐ qù? (How is it that you are going?)
Nǐ zènme qù?

3.21 Zènme sometimes has the function of a verb. It usually appears in these forms:

Nǐ zènmele? (What is the matter with you?)

(wǒ) méizènme. (Nothing.)

Nǐ shuō zènme(zhe) cài hǎo ne? (What do you think should be done?)

77
3.22 Sometimes zěnme can also be used as a specifier:

Tā shì zěnme yīge rén?
(What kind of a person is he?)

Zhè shì zěnme (yi)huì shì? (What happened?)

3.3 Zhème or zěnme carries the meaning "so...", "like this", "in this way" and is a fixed adverb which immediately precedes the FV or the SV:

Wǒmen dān zhème bān.
(We must handle the matter like this.)

Nǐ zěnme qùle zěnme dōu tiān ne?
(Why have you been gone for so many days?)

3.4 Nème has the meaning "so...", "like that", "in that way", when used as a fixed adverb:

Zhème bān měiyǒu nème bān hǎo.
(Doing it this way is not as good as doing it that way.)

Tā zuò fān zuòde nème hǎo, wǒ méi fāzì gēn tā bǐ.
(Her cooking is so good that I cannot possibly compete with her.)

Nème, when used as a movable adverb, means "in that case":

(Nème) wǒ (nème) jiù bùqùle.
(In that case, I will not go.)

Note that zhème and nème both mean "so..." in English. The difference is when "so good" means "this good---as good as this", "zhème hǎo" should be used; when "so good" means "that good---as good as that", "nème hǎo" should be used.

3.5 Like zěnme, zhème and nème sometimes have the function of a verb. In like manner, they are usually followed by (zhe):

Zhème(zhe) nǐ xǐng a!
(This will never do!)

Nǐ yào shī nème(zhe), wǒ jiù bùxīhuàn nǐ le.
(If you behave like that, I won't like you any more.)

3.6 Since duōme and zěnme are both question words, they can be used as indefinites too:

Bùzěnme hǎo.
(Not so good.)

Wǒ zěnme(zhe) tā dōu bùgāoxíng.
(She is displeased no matter what I do.)

Zhèige rén méiduō(me) gāo.
(This person isn't very tall.)

Duō(me) hǎo ye měiyǒng.
(It's useless no matter how excellent it is.)
3.7 Zěnme can be combined with zhème or nème and together they mean "why is it that N is so..."
Zhège zhuōzi zěnme zhème cháng a?
(Why is it that the table is so long?)
Tā zěnme nème huài a?
(Why is it that he is so bad?)

3.8 The use of duōme, zěnme, zhème and nème can best be illustrated in the form of questions and answers:
Zěnme xiě?
Zěnme xiě.
Zěnme bàn?
Háishì nème yàng(r) bàn hǎo.
Duōme gāo?
Zhème gāo.
Zènme(zhe) cài xǐng ne?
Nème(zhe) jiù xǐng le.
Zhè shì zěnme (yi)huī shī?
Shì zènme (yi)huī shī.
Tā shì zènme yīge rèn?
Shì zhème yīge rèn.

3.9 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:
3.91 Look, how beautiful she is!
3.92 Why is he so stupid?
3.93 I think he would be angry if we did it like this.
3.94 Why can't he rent out his house?
3.95 Why should we do it as he said?
3.96 No matter how he describes his house, I still wouldn't rent it.
3.97 A bathroom as good as this might cost one thousand dollars
3.98 Why haven't you decided yet?
3.99 I don't understand what this is all about.
4.00 If you do like this, it stops. If you do like that, it goes.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxí

1. Nǐ dāsuàn gēn ta jiè shénme?
   Wǒ yào gēn ta jiè yīge shùjiàzi.
2. Nǐ wèi shénme jiè tāde qǐchē?
   Wǒ měifān ta jiè, shì ta yào jìegei wǒ de.
3. Nèijian shì, nǐ gèn Zhāng Xs. shāngliàng mà?
   Méiyǒu. Kěshì wǒ gèn lǐngwài yīge pěngyǒu shāngliàng.
4. Nǐ zhěikuài dìtǎn zhēn hǎo.
   Zhěikuài būsuàn tài hǎo. Wǒ lǐngwài yǒu yíkuài hǎodé.
5. Tā jiè nǐde qian, huánlè meiyǒu?
   Huánlè yìdiān. Hǎi méihuànwán ne.
6. Tā yòngde dōngxi dòu jiāngjiūjīe.
   Zhènde mà? Wěi shénme yào nème jiāngjiū?
10. Æ Yǒu shì chūntiān le. Rīzi yītiān yītiān duō de zhēn kuài.

V. Wèntí

1. Sī Xs. kànle fāng yīhòu, hái méi juédìng zǔ bùzū de shíhou, tā qu zhǎo shéi shāngliàng què?
2. Zhào Tt. wèn Sī Xs. shènme? Tā gào song Zhào Tt. shènme?
3. Tā zúde fàngzi dà jījiu būdài?
5. Zhào Tt. juède tā yīngdǎng zǔ nèisuǒr fàngzi ma?
6. Nèige fàngzi būdài jījiu, Zhào Tt. shuō zènme bān?
7. Zhào Tt. nèng jiègei ta shènme jījiu ne? Jiède jījiu shènme shíhou huán ne?
8. Zhào Tt. yào jiègei ta de jījiu dōu shì xīndé ma?
9. Sī Xs. de kētīngli dou xiūyào shènme jījiu? Wǒfáng ne? Fândīng ne? Zāofáng ne?
10. Sī Xs. děi yōng jiāngjiūde jījiu ma? Tā děi yōng duōsháo rìzǐ?
11. Chūfángli yòngde děngxi, tā yě jīle ma? Chūfángli dou xiūyào shènme děngxi?
12. Chūfángli yòngde děngxi wèi shènme yáo jiào chúzǐ mǎi?
13. Kētīnglide děngxi, Zhào Tt. shuō tā yǒu shènme? Dōu děi mǎi shènme?
14. Zhào Tt. yǒu dītān meiyou?
15. Wǒfánglide děngxi, Zhào Tt. nèng jiègei ta shènme? Tā hái děi mǎi shènme?
16. Fândīnglide děngxi, Zhào Tt. nèng jiègei tā shènme? Nǐ xiǎng tā hái děi mǎi shènme?
17. Zhào Tt. shuō lǐnglingsulsu̍lde děngxi zěnme bān?
18. Zhào Tt. yào jiègei ta de jījiu dōu zài nàr fàngzhé ne? Tāmen qu kànle ma?
19. Nǐ xiānzài zhùde fàngzi shì zūde shì zhījīde? Nǐ jiāli dōu yǒu shènme jiājiū?
20. Nǐ xiānzài yòngde jījiu shì jiède shì zhījīde? Hāishi zūde? Dōu shì xīnshìde ma?
VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?
1. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng gēn nǐde péngyou jiè yīběn shū, nǐ zěnme shuō?
2. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu rén gēn nǐ jiè dōngxi, nǐ bùnénɡ jiègei tā, nǐ zěnme shuō?
3. Nǐde péngyou xiǎng mǎi yìyànɡ dōngxi, nǐ yǒu nèige dōngxi, yuàn yì jiègei tā. Nǐ zěnme gēn tā shuō?
4. Nǐ kěyǐ bā nǐ jiālǐde jiāju shuō yǐshū ma?
5. Yǒu rén gēn nǐ dàting, dào Zhōngguó qu, dōu děi dài shénme jiāju, nǐ shuō shénme?

VII. Běishǔ
A: Qǐnɡ nín kǎnkān zhèifēnɡ xìn, guòzhōnɡ búguŏ?
B: Shí jǐ pínɡxīn, shí jǐ hánɡkōnɡxīn?
A: Hánɡkōnɡ xīn.
B: Guòlè.
A: Děi duōshào yóufèi?
B: Yímáoèr.
A: Qǐnɡwén, dào Zhōnɡɡuó de bāoguǒ néng jǐ bùnénɡ?
B: Nín dēng wǒ kǎnkān. Bùxínɡ.
A: Nín gěi wǒ shíɡē liùfēnɡ hánɡkōnɡ yóupiào, shíɡē sān fēn duì.
B: Hǎo. Yǐɡōnɡ jiāmáo qián.
A: Zhèi shí jiāmáo qián.
B: Xièxiè.

VIII. Fānyì
1. Translate into Chinese:
   1.1 May I borrow the car you just bought?
   1.2 I want to borrow some stamps from you.
   1.3 I loaned him a curtain and some odds and ends.
   1.4 He has not yet returned the blanket he borrowed. Now he wants to borrow some money.
   1.5 I want to discuss this matter with him. Maybe he can help me out.
   1.6 This is a modern-style house.
1.7 This watch is not fast but another watch of mine is.
1.8 I want to buy some other things too.
1.9 He's meticulous about his clothes.
1.10 I will use this old one temporarily.
1.11 He's a good cook.
1.12 Tell me what your need is.
1.13 Wait until I have sold these odds and ends.
1.14 I will handle those odds and ends, you don't have to bother.
1.15 We learned it little by little.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(195) a. I borrowed five dollars from him.
    b. He loaned me five dollars.
    c. I want to borrow that book of yours to read.

(196) a. Is the house you rented furnished?

(197) a. You don't have to discuss the matter with him.

(199) a. I am taking some other courses too.
    b. It wasn't this friend who said it, but another one.

(200) a. He hasn't yet returned the money he borrowed from me last year. Now he wants to borrow some more.

(205) a. I have to buy soap, towel, toothbrush, toothpaste, etc.
    b. Things like tables and chairs, (etc.) are very cheap in that store.

(206) a. Their home is very nicely furnished.
    b. He is very particular about what he eats.

(207) a. New cars are very expensive. I'd better use this old one temporarily.

(211) a. Tell me what you need and I'll buy it for you.
    b. Whenever you are in need of anything, please don't hesitate to let me know.

(216) a. I simply must go to China.
    b. Only he can handle this affair.

(217) a. I moved out only the big things. I didn't touch any of the little odds and ends.
    b. When you are moving, the odds and ends are most troublesome.

(218) a. He finished all the odds and ends little by little.
DÌSHIÈ – GÛ CHÛIZI

I. Dùlhuâ

SÌ Xs. công Zhàojia bâñchulai, xûyào yîge chúizi gëi ta zuòfàn. Tà yào qîng Zhào ZÎân Xs. gei ta jiêshào yîge. Êòu yìitiên, SÌ Xs. dao Zhàojia lâîlî. Dàole mënköur Zhào Xs. zhèng công mën litou chúizi.

Zhào: Aí! SÌ Xs. công nàr lái a?
SÌ: Cóng jiā lái. Nîn yào chúi qu ma?
Zhào: Dülle. Bûyaojîn, wǒ mèi shenme yâoqiînde shî. Qîng jînlai zuò yihûr ba.
Zhào: Nîn qîng jînlai ba. Wǒ bûmûng.
Zhào: Dûlûqì. Yè mèijînlai hê diânr chá.
(Dièrtian chúizi dao SÌ Xs. jiâ lâîlî.)
SÌ: Nî xîng shênme?
Chûizi: Xîng Lî.
SÌ: Nîde mîngzi jiào shênme?
Chûizi: Wǒ jiào Lî Yûcâî.
SÌ: Nî shì zuò nànfang cáî, háishi bëifang cáî?
Chûizi: Wǒ dûu nêng zuò. Xîcân wǒ ye nêng zuò yîdîânr.
Chûizi: Shûòqìngchule.
SÌ: Wǒ tïngshûô nî yîu qînjîn yîu chëngshî. zuò cáî yè zuòde hâo. Nî nêng cong jîntian qî, lâî zuò shî ma?
Chûizi: Xîng. Gângcâî wǒ dao chûfâng kànle kàn, nîn chûfângli yîngde dûngxi háoxiàng dûu méiyou?
ST: Dulie. Wǒ zhèng yào gēn ni shuō. Wǒ xiǎng jiào nǐ qu gěi wo mǎi. Nǐ kàn dōu xǐyào shénme?

Chúzi: Wǒ xiāng tiānqiān yòngde pánzi wān, bōlibēi, kuàizi, dāozi chāzǐ shēnmede, dāgāi dōu děi mài ba.


II. Shēngzī Yōngfǎ

219. ㄅ

219.1 ㄍu rén
219.2 ㄍu yōngren
219.3 ㄍu chúzǐ
219.4 ㄍu chē

a. Wǒ děi ㄍu yīge yōngren.

220. měnkōur
220.1 jiā měnkōur
220.2 pǔzi měnkōur

221. ㄕ

221.1 ㄕtīng hǎo
221.2 ㄕtīng shūfǔ
221.3 ㄕtīng yōuyīsi

222. qīnjín

a. Tā zuǒ shì fēicháng qīnjín.

223. chéngshìfēi

SV: be diligent, (refering to physical work)

a. Tā jīng rén, dui rén hěn chéngshi.

224. míngzi

224.1 míngzi jiào...
224.2 qǐ míngzi
224.3 jiào shénme míngzi?

SV: be honest, sincere

a. Wǒ xǐng zhào, míngzi jiào Zǐān.

b. Zhèige míngzi shì shéi gěi ta qǐde?
225. xiăncăn  
   N: Western-style meal (M: -dân)

226. jiăndăn  
   SV: be simple
   a. Tā shuōde huà, nǐ jiăndăn, nǐ qǐngchu.

227. qǐng kè  
   VO: invite guests, give a party
   a. Zuótiān tā qǐng kè, nǐ zěnme méiqù?

228. jiùshì...yě...  
   A: even if (in supposition)
   a. Nǐ jiùshì yǒuqían, yě méi dīfang mǎi qu.

229. gōngqian  
   N: wage

230. cóng...qǐ  
   CV...V: from...on
   a. cóng xiànzài qǐ, wǒ yǐdīng bǔzài hē jiǔle.

231. bōli  
231.1 bōlî  
231.2 bōli zuòde  
231.3 bōli pófāo  
   N: glass, plastic
glass
made of glass or plastic
plastic hand bag

232. bēizi(zi)  
232.1 bēi  
232.2 jiǔbēi  
232.3 chābēi  
232.4 bōlibēi  
   N: cup, glass
glass of, cup of
wine, cup or glass
teacup
glass, tumbler

233. dāochā  
   N: knife and fork (M: -fènr, -tào)

234. niúnăi  
234.1 niú  
234.2 năi  
   N: cow's milk
cow, ox, cattle
milk

235. kǎomiànhào  
235.1 kǎo  
235.2 miànhào  
235.3 kǎomiànhào  
   N: toast
V: toast, bake
N: bread (M: -kuài for slice; -gē for loaf)
VO: toast or bake bread

a. Qǐng nín gei wǒ kǎo yíkuài miànhào.

236. júzi  
236.1 júzìshuí  
   N: orange, tangerine
N: orange juice

237. guănxi  
237.1 yǒu guănxi  
237.2 méi(you) guănxi  
237.3 méiguănxi  
   N: relation, connection, relevance
VO: to be related to, to be relevant
VO: not related to, not relevant
IE: It doesn't matter, it's not important.

a. Zhèijiān shì gēn nèijiān shì yǒu hěn dàde guănxi.
b. A: duībuqǐ
   B: Méiguănxi
   c. A: Nǐ juéde qù hǎo, búqu hǎo?
   B: Qù buqǐ, méiguănxi.

238. shèng  
238.1 shèngshì/  
   shèngshí  
   SV/VO: trouble-saving/save trouble
   V: save (economize)
238.2 shèngqián/shèng qián  SV/VO: economical/save money  
238.3 shèngshíhou/shèng shíhou  SV/VO: time-saving/save time

a.  Bú yòng jǐnchéng le.  jiù zài fūjīn mǎi ba.  Shèngshí.  
b.  Wǒ de shěng yídànr qián le.

239. fèi  V: waste, use a lot  
239.1 fèishí/fèi shí  SV/VO: laborious/take a lot of work  
239.2 fèiqián/fèi qián.  expensive/cost money, take money  
239.3 fèishíhou/fèi shíhou  time consuming/use time, take time

a.  Bǐ fèishí, nǐ yǒu shénme, wǒ jiù chī shénme.  
b.  Zuò zhèige cài, fèile hěn duō shíhou.

240. wèi  CV: for

a.  Zhèige bìǎo wǒ shì wèi tā mǎide.

241. qīngcài  N: green vegetables

242. shuǐguǒ  N: fruit

243. bǔlún(wǔlún)  A: it doesn't matter, no matter what

a.  Bǔlún shénme shíhou, tā dōu zài jiǔ.

244. kānzhe bān  IE: do as you see fit

a.  Nèijian shè, tā shuō jǐlǐ wǒmen kānzhe bān.

245. hǎoshuōhuà  SV: be affable, easy to get along with

a.  Tā bùdà hǎoshuōhuà.

III. Jùzì Gōuzào

1. The Various Uses of Question Words:

The most common question words in Peking Mandarin are:

shénme  zěnme  duǒme  duǒshao
shèi  nár  nèi-M  jī-M

Although wèi shénme and shénme dīfang are single words in English (why, where), they are combinations of two words in Chinese, the literal translations of which are "for what" and "what place".  Wèi shénme is a combination of CV-N and shénme dīfang one of N-N.  Therefore, they are not considered as single words.

The eight question words listed above are not the same part of speech:

Noun:  shénme, shèi
Placeword:  nár
Specifier:  nèi-
Numerals:  duǒshao, jī-
Adverbs:  duǒme, zěnme

It is worthy of note that the part of speech of a question word decides its position in a sentence.
1.1 We recall that all question words can be used as indefinites. In this usage, there are several common patterns, in one of which the question word (as indefinite) is preceded by a negative verb:

\[ \text{bù} \] \{ \text{méi} \} \ldots \ldots \ldots \text{one of the indefinites} 

Nǐ dao zhèr lāi yǒu shénme shì a? Wǒ méi shénme shì. 
(What business brings you here? I am doing nothing.)

Nǐ dao nǎr qù? Wǒ bù dào nǎr qù. 
(Where are you going? I am not going anywhere.)

Tā zǎngdē bùzěnme hǎokàn. 
(She isn't too pretty.)

Wǒ méizěnme yǒngxīn jiù hulü. 
(I didn't put in any special effort and I learned it.)

Tā bùdàsuàn gěi shéi shénme dōngxi. 
(He isn't planning to give anyone anything.)

Rén shuò wǒ yǒuqián, kěshì wǒ méi duōshào qián. 
(People say I am rich, but I don't have much money.)

1.2 Another use of the question word is that it may be preceded by bùlùn, wùlùn, or bùguàn (any of which may be omitted) and followed by dōu or yě, indicating inclusive ideas such as "everyone" and "everything" or exclusive ideas such as "no one", "nothing" and "no matter...":

(bùlùn) \{ dōu \} \ldots \ldots \ldots \{ yě \} \ldots \ldots \ldots

Shéi dōu méilái. 
(No one came at all.)

(bùlùn) dōu(me) hǎo wǒ ye bùxǐhuàn. 
(No matter how good it is, I don't like it.)

Tā (wùlùn) duōshào qián dōu bùmài. 
(He won't sell it for any price.)

Zhèjiān shì (bùguàn) zěnme bān yě bùxíng. 
(No matter how this matter is handled, it won't do.)

Nèige rén (wùlùn) shénme dōu bùhūi. 
(That person cannot do anything)

Zhèi sānběn shū (wùlùn) nǐ běn tā ye bùniàn. 
(He won't read any of these three books.)

Nǐ wèi shénme bùqù? Wǒ shénme dōu bùwèi. 
(Why aren't you going? For no reason at all.)

1.21 The above pattern with two alternatives replacing the question word in the middle gives the same inclusive or exclusive ideas:

(bùlùn) (shì) hǎo(de) (shì) huáide, wǒ dōu mǎi. 
(I will buy it no matter whether it is good or bad.)
(Wúlùn) (shi) zăo (shi) wăn, dōu chéng.
(It's all right no matter whether it is early or late.)

(Būguăn) (shi) hóngde (shi) lüde, tài dōu bùxǐhuan.
(No matter whether it is red or green, he doesn't like it.)

(Būlùn) (shi) nǐ qù (shi) wǒ qù, dōu yǐyàng.
(No matter whether you go or I go, it's the same.)

1.3 Inclusive expressions such as whatever, whoever, whenever, however, whichever take a two-clause pattern in Chinese:

Wǒ yào shénme (jiù) mǎi shénme.
(I buy whatever I want.)

Nǐ rì liángkuài wǒ (jiù) dào nǐr qù.
(I go wherever it is cool.)

Shéi yǒu gōngfu shéi qù, hǎo buhǎo?
(Whoever has time will go. Will that do?)

Nǐ geō piányi wǒ mǎi něige.
(I'll buy whichever is cheaper.)

zěnmé róngyí zěnmé zuò. Bié fēi shì.
(Do it whichever way is easier. Don't waste effort.)

Tā zuòde fàn yào duóme hǎo jiù yǒu duóme hǎo.
(Her cooking is as fine as you can ask for.)

Nǐ gěi wǒ duōshào wǒ yào duōshào
(I'll take as many as you give me.)

Xuēyào jīge ná jīge. Bié dōu názōu.
(Take as many as you need. Don't take them all.)

1.4 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.41 I don't want anything.
1.42 He doesn't want to give anybody anything.
1.43 Whatever she says is always right.
1.44 I don't have anything to do.
1.45 He'll take whatever you want to give.
1.46 I'll leave whenever he arrives.
1.47 We don't have much money.
1.48 Whoever has money, she will marry.
1.49 I didn't live there for long.
1.50 No matter who tells me, I don't want to hear it.
1.51 I'll go wherever it is warm.
1.52 Everybody feels embarrassed to borrow money.
1.53 It doesn't matter who lent him the money; in any case he got it.
1.54 I don't want to borrow anything.
1.55 He isn't particularly fussy about clothing.

2. The Uses of zài:

zài is a fixed adverb which carries at least two meanings, both of which are very common in usage:
2.1 It has the meaning of "again" and "some more", referring to the repetition of a previous action. In this sense it is stressed and is usually followed by V NU-M:

Tā yījīng mǎi le yīge, hái yào zài mǎi yīge.
(He has already bought one and he wants to buy one more.)

Zuōtiān tā dào Nǐyǔ qù. Míngtiān (hái) yào zài qù (yīcì).
(He went to New York yesterday. Tomorrow, he will go again.)

2.2 When zài is preceded by a time expression or a clause with a verb other than the one after it, it has the meaning of "not until" and "before...". In this case, zài is often not stressed:

Nǐ chīwān fàn zài niànnǚ bā.
(You'd better finish your meal before you study.)

Wǒ jǐntiān yǒu shí. Míngtiān zài qù hǎo bǔhǎo?
(I have something to do today. Let's not go until tomorrow.)

Note that zài, meaning "not until" and "before...", is usually used in a plan, command, resolution, request or suggestion.

2.21 The most common patterns in the use of zài, meaning "not until" are:

2.211 (s) xiān V, zài V (bā).
Nǐ xiān shūjǐào, zài chūqu (bā).

2.212 (s) děng V, zài V (bā).
Nǐ děng wǒ huǐlái zài zǒu (bā).

2.213 (s) xiān V, děng V zài V (bā).
Qǐng xiān hē yídǎnr chá, děng Zhāng Tt. huǐlái, wǒmen zài chīfàn.

2.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.31 I plan to go to New York again tomorrow.

2.32 Why don't you discuss it first before you decide?

2.33 Please take this book first; wait until tomorrow before I lend you the other one.

2.34 I saw a good looking girl the other day. I am going to see her again in a few days.

2.35 Wait until I have finished preparing my lessons before we go out.
IV. Fǎyīn Liànxiá

1. Nǐ nèige xīn guò de chūzī zěnmeyàng?
   Tīng hǎo.  Qúnjīn qīn chéngshí.

2. Nǐ shénme shìhou qǐng kě?
   Wǒ jiùshì qǐng kě yě bùqīng nǐ.

3. Nǐ yítiān hǎi jiǎbǐ niúpǎi?
   Tōu shìhòu hě yībǐ, yǒu shìhòu yībǐ dōu bùhě.

4. Wèi shénme jiào tā qu bàn ne?
   Nàijìànn shì fēi tā bùkě.

5. Nǐ cóng shénme shìhou qǐ jiu bùchǒu yān le?
   Cóng shìyuè ěrhào.

6. Wǒmen zài shénme dǐfāng jiànr ne?
   Shénme dǐfāng hǎo, jiù zài shénme dǐfāng jiànr.

7. Tā zuò fàn zuòde zhēn hǎo.
   Qǐguàijíé.  Tā zěnmé zuò, zěnmé hǎochí.

8. Nǐ shùǒ zěnmé bàn hǎo?
   Měiguānxì.  Bāolún zěnmé bàn dōu xǐng.

   Shēng shì kēshi fēi qián.  Zāi jiā chīfàn yě bǐfēi shì.

10. Tā shùǒ mǐngtiān xià yǔ.
    Bāolún xià yǔ bǔxiá, fānzhèng wǒ yě déi qù.

V. Wěntí

1. Sī Xs. wèi shénme xīyào gù yīge chūzī?

2. Tā gū chúzī zěnmé gù?

3. Sī Xs. qu zhǎo Zhào Xs., zāi shénme dǐfāng jiànr

4. Zhào Xs. kànjiàn Sī Xs. gēn ta shùǒ shénme?  Sī Xs. shùǒ shénme?

5. Tāmen liǎngge rén shì zài shénme dǐfāng tānde huà?

6. Zhào Xs. yào gei Sī Xs. jiēshāode chúzī xíng shénme?  Zhào Xs. shùǒ nèige rén zěnmé huǒ?

7. Zhào Xs. xiǎng jiào nèige chúzī shénme shìhou qu jiān Sī Xs.?  shuǒ shénme shìhou qu hǎo?

8. Sī Xs. 1fāi Zhàojiā de shìhou, Zhào Xs. gēn ta shùǒ shénme?

9. Chūzī dào Sī Xs. jiā què, Sī Xs. dōu wēn ta shénme huà?

10. Nèige chúzī hú zú shénme cài?
11. Sī Xs. cháng qǐng kè ma? Tā qǐng kè de shǐhou cháng qǐng hěn duōde rèn ma?

12. Sī Xs. xiǎng ràng ta công shènme shǐhou qǐ, qu zuò shì?

13. Chūfángli yòngde dōngxi Sī Xs. dōu yǒu ma? Ta dǎsuan zěnme bān?


15. Sī Xs. shènme shǐhou chī zǎofàn? Shènme shǐhou chī wūfàn, shènme shǐhou chī wǎnfàn?

16. Tā zǎofàn chī shènme? Wūfàn chī shènme? Wǎnfàn chī shènme?

17. Nǐ ěrzi juéde Sī Xs. zěnmeyàng?

18. Nǐ gùguo yǒngren meiyou? Nǐ xiǎng nǐ gù yǒngren de shǐhou děi wèn ta shènme?

19. Nǐ měitiān shènme shǐhou chī zǎofàn? Shènme shǐhou chī wūfàn, shènme shǐhou chī wǎnfàn? Dōu chī shènme?

20. Zuò chīde dōngxi, yóude hěn hǎochī, kěshì fēishi; yě yǒude bútài hǎochī, kěshì shèngshí. Nǐ yuǎnyì néiyàng?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shènme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xǔyào yīge chúzǐ, nǐ xiǎng nǐde pèngyou gěi nǐ jièshào, nǐ zěnme gěn nǐ pèngyou shuō?

2. Yàoshi nǐ gùle yīge yǒngren, nǐ dōu děi wèn tā shènme?

3. Nǐ dōu děi gàosòng tā shènme?

4. Nǐde chúzǐ wèn nǐ wǎnfàn yào chī shènme? Nǐ shuō shènme?

5. Nǐ xiǎng jiāo nǐde yǒngren gěi nǐ mǎi yídiǎnr dōngxi, nǐ zěnme gěn ta shuō?

VII. Gùshí
(on record)

VIII. Fǎnyì

.. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 Please hire a car for me.
1.2 He works very diligently.
1.3 If you are honest with others, others will be honest with you.
1.4 Don't you think this is very simple?
1.5 The words of the book are both clear and simple.
1.6 Even if he is diligent enough I still don't think he is suited for the job.
1.7 From that time on, I no longer drank liquor.
1.8 Since when did you stop beating your wife?
1.9 I will buy it, whenever I have the money.
1.10 I will give it to whomever you wish.
1.11 I will go wherever people are friendly.
1.12 It tastes good anyway she cooks it.
1.13 There isn't any relation between these two matters.
1.14 Let's eat in a restaurant, it will save a lot of trouble.
1.15 I don't like parties, they take too much time.
1.16 I don't think he can do it well, he is just wasting time.
1.17 No matter whether it is raining or not I have to go and buy some oranges.
1.18 No matter how much wages you pay him, he won't take the job.
1.19 He is very easy to get along with. No matter what you discuss with him, he will tell you to do as you see fit.
1.20 Since he says to do it this way, we'd better do it this way.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(219) a. I have to hire a servant.
(222) a. He works very diligently.
(223) a. That man is quite honest with people.
(224) a. My last name is Zhao and my given name is Zidan.
   b. Who gave him this name?
(226) a. What he said was both simple and clear.
(227) a. Why didn't you go to his party yesterday?
(228) a. Even if you had the money, there is no where to buy it.
(230) a. From now on, I'm determined not to drink (liquor) anymore.
(235) a. Please toast a piece of bread for me.
(237) a. This matter is closely related to the other,
   b. A: Excuse me.
   B: It's all right.
   c. A: Do you think it is better to go or not to go.
   B: It doesn't matter whether you go or not.
(238) a. You don't need to go to town. Buy it locally and save trouble.
   b. I have to save some money.
(239) a. Don't go to any trouble. I'll eat whatever you have.
   b. It took a long time to make this dish.
(240) a. I bought this watch for him.
(243) a. He's at home any time of the day.
(244) a. He told us to do as we see fit about that matter.
(245) a. He's not very easy to get along with.
DISHIYIKE - DA DIANHUÀ

I. DAIHUÀ

SÌ XS. BÀ TA XĪN ZUō FÁNGZI shōUSHIDÉLE, CHUZI YÈ GŪHÁOLE, XIĀNG QĪNG ZHÀO XS., ZHÀO TT. DÀO TÀ ZHĒR LÀI CHĪFĀN. SUŌYĪ TĀ GÉI ZHÀO XS. DÀ DIANHUÀ, YĀO GĒN TĀMEN DÌNG YĪGE SHĪHOU. SÌ XS. DĪYĪCĪ DÀ DIANHUÀ, DIANHUÀ JÚLĪDE RĒN SHUō:

DIANHUÀ Jū: YōU RĒN SHUōZHE HUÀ NE, QĪNG DĒNG YĪDĒNG.

(SÌ XS. YŌU JĪLĀO DIANHUÀ.)

SÌ: WĀI! NĪN NĀR A?

DIANHUÀLĪ: XĪNYĀ GĪNGSĪ.

SÌ: LĀOJĪA, QĪNG WĒN, NĪN DIANHUÀ DUŌSHAOHĀO?

DIANHUÀLĪ: WǚLĪNGYĪJIū.

SÌ: DĪLŪQĪ, CŪOLE.

(SÌ XS. BĀ DIANHUÀ GUÀSHANG, YŌU ZHĪXIALAI JĪLĀO DIANHUÀ.)

SÌ: WĀI! NĪN NĀR A?

(DIANHUÀLĪ SHĪ ZHĀOJĪADE YÈNGRĒN, HĒN HĒQĪ.)

YÈNGRĒN: WŌMĒN ZHĒR SHĪ ZHĀOJĪA. NĪN SHĪ NĀR A?

SÌ: WŌ SHĪ SĪNĪZĪ. LĀOJĪA QĪNG ZHĀO XS. JĪ LĪ DIANHUÀ.

YÈNGRĒN: QĪNG NĪN DĒNG YĪHUĪR, BĪC GUĀ, WŌ GĒI NĪN KĀNKĀN QU.

ZHĀO XS.: (ZAI DIANHUÀLĪ SHUō:) WĀI! NĪN SHĪ SÌ XS. MA? WŌ SHĪ ZĪĀN NE.

SÌ: ZHĀO XS., NĪN HĀO BA? WŌ MĒI SHĒNME TĒBIÉDE SHĪ. WŌ YĪJĪNG BĀ WǓZĪ SHŌUSHIDÉLE, XIĀNG QĪNG NĪN GĒN ZHĀO TT. LĀI CHĪ FĀN, NĪN SHĒNME SHIHOU YŌU GŌNGFU A?

ZHĀO: DĪLŪQĪ, DIANHUÀLĪDE SHĒNGYĪN TĀI LUĀN, WŌ MÉITĪNGQĪNGCHU. QĪNG NĪN DĀ DIĀN R SHĒNGYĪN SHUō.

SÌ: WŌ XIĀNG QĪNG NĪN GĒN ZHĀO TT. DĀO WŌ ZHĒR LĀI CHĪFĀN. NĪN MĒITIĀN YŌU GŌNGFU?

ZHĀO: HĒBĪ KĒQĪ?

SÌ: BūSHI KĒQĪ. WŌ XIĀNG QĪNG NĪMĒN DĀO WŌ ZHĒR LĀI KĀNKĀN.

ZHĀO: WŌ HĒN YUĀNYI QU, KĒSHĪ NĒJĪN ZHĒI LIĀNGTIĀN YŌUDIĀN R BŪSHUFU, ZĀI CHUĀNGSHANG TĀNGZHĒ NE, MĒIQĪLAI.

SÌ: ZĒNMĒLE?

93

Sī: Děi liú diǎnr shén, zhèizhòng tiānzì zuì róngyì zhǎoliáng. Méishì yào mà?

Zhào: Dàifu shuō wǎnshang kěyí chī yǐdiǎnr àsǐpǐlǐng.

Sī: Nǐn kàn nǐmén shénme shǐhou cái néng lái ne? Bǐfāngshūō, xiàlibài chéng buchěng?

Zhào: Nà wǒ kě bùgǎnshuō. Wǒmen guò liǎngtiān zài dìng, hǎo buhǎo?

Sī: Hǎo ba, nèmě wǒ mínzìtiān dào nín nèr qu kǎnkān Zhào Tt.

Zhào: Bùgǎndǎng. Yào shí nǐn yǒu gōngfu, qǐng guòlái tán tán.


(Tāmén jiù bā diànhuà guàshāngle.)

II. Shēngzī Yǒngfǎ

246. dé  
V: be ready
RVE: ready, completed

246.1 zuòdéle  
RV: the job is completed

246.2 xǐbùdé  
RV: writing cannot be finished on time

246.3 débūliáo  
RV: cannot be ready on time

246.4 liǎobude  
IE: extremely, very; terrific

246.5 bùdéliǎo  
IE: extremely, very; terrific

a. Xiě zhèixì yīshāng, jītiān dé?
b. Zhèige rèn láihài būdíliǎo (liǎobude).
c. Néige rèn zhēn būdíliǎo (liǎobude).

247. wài  
EX: hello (used in telephone conversation only)

248. gōngsī  
N: company, corporation

248.1 Xīnyà Gōngsī  
N: New Asia Company

249. qǐngwèn  
IE: may I inquire

a. Qǐngwèn, Xīnyà Gōngsī zài nǎr?

250. zhāi  
V: take off (hat, flower, etc.) take down (picture, telephone receiver, etc.; opposite guā)

250.1 zhāixiālai  
RV: take off or down

250.2 zhāi huār  
VO: pick flowers

a. Qǐng nǐ bǎ màozi zhāixiālai, hǎo buhǎo?

251. hēqí  
SV: be friendly, affable

a. Zuò máimai, yǐdǐng děi hēqí.

94
252. guà V: hang (something)
252.1 guàshang RV: hang up
252.2 guàqilai RV: hang up

a. Zhèishàng hùài, guàzài nǐr?
b. Nǐ yào qǐng Lǐ Xs. jǐ diànhuà ma? Bìe guà, wǒ gei nǐn kànkan ta zài jǐn bùzái.

253. shēngyín or shēngr N: sound, noise

b. Qǐng dà diǎnr shēngr shùn.

254. luàn SV: be confused, in disorder, mixed up, helter-skelter, in trouble
A: confusedly, recklessly

254.1 luàn shuò speak recklessly, not know what one is saying
254.2 luànqībāizào IB: in confusion

a. Tā shuòde huà hěn luàn.
b. Tā nà shì suībiān luàn shuò.
c. Wǒde wūzi luànqībāizào.

255. hēbì A: why is it necessary to?
255.1 hēbì fēi...bùkě why insist on...? why must?

a. Fǔjīn mái yǐshàngde hěn duǒ, hēbì yǐdǐng dǎo chēng lǐtou qu māi ne?
b. Dào Niǔyuē qu, zuò hūochē yě hěn fāngbiān, hēbì fēi zuò fēijī bùkě?

256. nèirén N: my wife (polite remark)
256.1 wǒ nèirén my wife (polite remark)

257. tǎng V: lie down
257.1 tǎngxia RV: lie down, fall down
257.2 tǎngzai chuāngshang lie on the bed

a. Tā tǎngzhe ne.
b. Tā hē jiǔ hěduōle, zǒuzhe zǒuzhe, tǎngxiale.

258. xiǎode V: know

a. Zhèijìan shìqǐng, nǐ xiǎode ma?

259. zhāoliǎng VO: catch cold

a. Wǒ zuòtìan wǎnhǎng méiguān chuānghú, zhāole diǎnr liǎng.

260. shǎngfēng VO: catch cold

a. Wǒ shǎngfēng, shǎngde hěn lǐhài.
b. Wǒ yóuyìdiān r shǎngfēng.

261. těng SV: ache
261.1 tóuténg SV: have a headache

a. Wǒde tóu hěn těng. or Wǒ hěn tóuténg. or Wǒ tóuténgde hěn lǐhài.
262. kèsou  V/N: cough
   a. Tā shāngfēng le, zuòtiān yělì kèsoule bānyè.

263. -qǐlái  RVBI: start to, begin to; (also indicates success in attaining object of the action)
   263.1 kǔqǐlái  RV: begin to cry
   263.2 dàqǐlái  RV: begin to fight
   263.3 dàdeqǐlái  RV: will start to fight
   263.4 dàbǔqǐlái  RV: will not start to fight
   263.5 chāngqǐ gēr laile  RV: begin to sing
   263.6 xiǎng qǐ yǔ laile  RV: begin to rain
   263.7 xiǎngbǔqǐlái  RV: do not remember

264. dāifū  N: medical doctor, physician
   264.1 qǐng dāifū  VO: call a doctor
   264.2 kān dāifū  VO: see the doctor
   264.3 jiàn dāifū  VO: see the doctor
   264.4 zhǎo dāifū kānbìng  PH: see the doctor for an ailment

265. zhēn  N: needle, pin
   265.1 dāzhēn  VO: inoculate
   a. Dāifū gěi wǒ dāle yizhēn.

266. wèndù  N: temperature
   266.1 wèndūbǐng  N: thermometer
   266.2 shì wèndù  VO: take temperature
   a. Nǐ shǐshì tāde wèndu gāo bugào?

267. fāshāo  VO: have a fever
   a. Tā fāshāo fāde hēn gāo.

268. liūshēn  V/VO: take care/be careful
   a. Lù būhāo zōu, qǐng liū dīnr shēn.
   b. Liūshēn, qīché láile.

269. āsǐpǐlǐng  N: aspirin (M: -piānr)
   269.1 chī āsǐpǐlǐng  VO: take aspirin

270. bǐfāng  N/V: example/describe with gesture
   270.1 bǐfāngshū  V: for instance
   270.2 nà...zuò bǐfāng  take...for an example
   270.3 nà shǒu bǐfāng  PH: to describe with the hands
   a. Bǐfāngshū, yào shì míntiān xià yǔ, wǒmen hái qu bùqu? 
   b. Nà zhēijīn shì zuò ge bǐfāng ba.

271. gǎn  V: dare, venture
   271.1 wǒ gǎn shūō  IE: I venture to say that, I'm sure
   271.2 būgǎn shūō  IE: one doesn't dare say, uncertain
   a. Wǒ yělǐ yìge rén būgǎn dào měigè hēi wūzǐli qu.
   b. Wǒ būgǎn shūō tā míntiān lái bùlai.
III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. lǎi and qù as RV Endings:

Both lǎi and qù can be used as endings in resultative verbs. For example:

nálaile mèinálaí nádelái nábulái
chūqule mèichūqu chūdeqú chūbuqú

Some of the resultative verbs of which lǎi and qù are directional endings are in turn commonly used as directional endings to form other resultative verbs. The most common ones are:

shàng xìa jìn chū huì guò
{lai} E.g.: náshanglài bānxiaqu pāojinlài sòngchuqu fěihuilài zōuguōqu
{qu}

qīlài (never qù) náqǐlài (never náqiù)

1.1 When there is an object, the directional ending which in itself is an RV may be split and the object inserted between its two parts. This is the most common form with the directional ending qīlài:

Tā yǐxiāngqǐ ta mǔqin lǎi jiù kǔ.
Qǐng nǐ bānguō zhēige zhuōzì lǎi.

1.2 Exercise – Translate into Chinese:

1.21 I have moved that table upstairs.
1.22 He has taken back the book he lent me.
1.23 The space is too narrow. I cannot drive through.
1.24 If I sell my car at this price, I'm sure I cannot buy it back for the same amount.
1.25 This mountain is not too high. I think I shall walk up.

2. The Various Uses of Qīlài as an RV Ending:

Qīlái as an RV ending has three common meanings:

2.1 It carries the meaning of "upward" like in:

náqīlái zhànlílái bānqīlái guǎqīlái zùqīlái

2.2 It may have the meaning of "into a close or constricted area" equivalent to the English word "-up":

suǒqīlái (lock up)
guǎnqīlái (close up)
shōushíqīlái (pack up)

2.3 It also may have the meaning of "start to and keep on going"
Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.41 Before we finished talking, he started to sing.

2.42 When I arrived, they had started drinking already.

2.43 After having been in business for two years, he came home and took up studying again.

2.44 We'd better not talk about him. As soon as he is mentioned, I get mad.

2.45 As soon as I pick up the pen, I forget every single character I learned.

3. The Various Uses of Jiù:

Jiù is a fixed adverb and generally carries two meanings:

3.1 It means "only" and is generally used in the following patterns:

\[ \text{jiù V NU-M: Tā jìù gēile wǒ yǐ kuài qián.} \]
(He only gave me a dollar.)

\[ \text{bù méi} \} V \text{ jìù(shi) V: Tā shénme dou buzhídào, jìù(shi) zhídào chī fàn.} \]
(He doesn't know how to do anything but eat)

\[ V, \text{ jìù(shi) } \{ \text{bù méi} \} V: \text{ Wǒ shénme dou dàile, jìù(shi) měidài qián.} \]
(I brought along everything except money.)

Note that jiù in this sense generally receives a stress.

3.2 When the jiù clause is preceded by a time expression or another clause, jiù indicates the short elapse between the two. Jiù in this sense may be translated as "then" although in English the word is seldom used. In this sense, jiù is seldom stressed:

Fan hǎole, wǒmen jiu chī ba.
(When dinner is ready we'll eat.)

(Dào) nèige shíhou, wǒ dàgài jiu zhídào le.
(I will probably know by then.)

Tā děng yìhuír jiu huìlái le.
(He'll be back after a while.)

Wǒ chīle fàn jiu huǐ jiù.
(I'll go home right after the meal.)

3.21 Because jiù indicates a short lapse between the jiù clause and the time expression or another clause preceeding it, only words which further stress the fact, like lìkè, can be added before jiù.
Tā láile, lìkè jiù zǒule.
(He came but he immediately left.)

Expressions which contradict this fact, like hěn jiǔ, cannot be added before it as in the following wrong statement:

Tā láile, tānle hěn jiǔ, jiù zǒule.
(He came and chatted for a long time, and (then) left.)

3.22 Sentence particles le and ba are often used, but never ne except in a question.

3.23 The fact that yí, meaning "as soon as", may be added before the verb in the first clause further indicates the short elapse:

Tā yǐdào, wǒmen jiù zǒu.
(We'll leave as soon as he arrives.)

3.3 The time expression or clause preceding the jiǔ clause may express a condition to what follows:

Yào shì míngtian, wǒ jiù bù qùle.
(If it is tomorrow, (then) I will not go.)

Yào shì tā zài zhǔ yī gè zì, wǒ jiù dà ta.
(If he speaks one more word, I will punch him in the nose.)

Yīn wei tā láile, suǒ yī wǒmen jiù qǐng tā chī fàn.
(Because he came, we asked him to supper.)

3.4 **Exercise** - Translate into Chinese:

3.41 I have only five dollars.
3.42 He will pay you tomorrow.
3.43 He only lent me a little more than five hundred dollars.
3.44 I will read the second book, as soon as I finish the first one.
3.45 If he should give me money, I would buy it.

3.5 **Exercise** - Make sentences:

3.51 ... dé shíhou, ... jiù...
3.52 ... yìqián, ... jiù...
3.53 ... gāngcái, ... jiù...
3.54 ... gù chúzi, ... jiù...
3.55 ... mǎibuzhào, ... jiù...

IV. Fǎyín liànxi

1. "Zhēijìan yǐshang shēnme shíhou dé?" "Xiǎolǐbáiyí jiù dé le."
2. "Wèi shēnme bā huàr zhāixiàlái?" "Wǒ yào guà lǐngwài yízhāng."
3. "Shūō huà tǐng hēqì dé lǐwèi tālái shì shéi ?" "Wǒ yě bù rènshì."
5. "Zěnme le? Tōuteng ma?" "Bǔshì. Wǒ yào tǎngxià xiǎo-xiǎo."
6. "Wǒ zhèi liangtian lǎo kěsōu." "Děi liú diǎnr shén." 
7. "Lùnxìngjī de shìqìng, wǒ bùyuǎnyì guǎn." "Shèi yuǎnyì guǎn re?" 
8. "Nǐ wèi shénme bùràng dàifu gei ni dàzhēn?" "Dàzhēn tài téng." 
10. "Zhēibǐn shūlíde zǐ, nǐ dōu rěnshī ma?" "Bùgǎn shùǒ dōu rěnshī, kǎshí ye chàbūduō." 

V. Wèntǐ 
1. Sī Xs. Wěi shénme gěi Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. dǎ diànhuā? 
2. Tā diyìcì dǎ diànhuā de shǐhòu, diànhuàjúlìde rén shuǒ shénme? 
3. Sī Xs. dièr cì jiào diànhuā, tā dàdào shénme dìfāng qu? Tā tīngjiān diànhuálìde shēngyìng bǔdú, tā shuǒ shénme? 
4. Sī Xs. disāncì jiào diànhuā, shì shèi jǐ cè diànhuā? Nèige rén jǐ cè diànhuā de shǐhòu shuǒ shénme? 
5. Sī Xs. yào qǐng Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. dào tā nèr qu chīfàn, zài diànhuālì tā shì zènme shuǒde? 
6. Sī Xs. zài diànhuálì shuǒ de huà, Zhào Xs. tīngqīngchúle méiyǒu? Wěi shénme? Zhào Xs. shuǒ shénme? 
7. Sī Xs. qǐng Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt., tāmen wèi shénme bùnèng qu? 
8. Zhào Tt. zěnme le? Zhào Xs. zhīdào shì zènme hūf shì ma? Tā xiǎng shì zènme hūf shì? 
9. Tāmen qǐng dàifu kǎnle méiyǒu? Dàifu shuǒ shénme le? 
10. Zhào Tt. fǎshǎo le méiyǒu? Kēsōu būkěsōu? Tōuteng bǔtōuteng? 
11. Dàifu gěi Zhào Tt. shì wènndūbiāo le méiyǒu? Kǎi yáoofāngr le méiyǒu? 
12. Zhào Tt. chǐ yào le méiyǒu? Tā chǐde shì shénme yào? 
13. Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt., nèitiān nèng dào Sī Xs. jiā qù ne? 
14. Sī Xs. yào qu kàn Zhào Tt. ma? Zhào Xs. shuǒ shénme? 
15. Yàoshi yǒu rén gēn nǐ shuǒ huà, nǐ mèitiāngqīngchu, nǐ shuǒ shénme? 
16. Nǐ jǐcè diànhuā de shǐhòu, yàoshi diànhuálìde rén shuǒ "cuòle", nǐ zènme bān? 
17. Yàoshi nǐde pénghòu bǐngle, nǐ zènme bān? 
18. Shénme yàngr de tiānqì zúl rǒngyì zhǎoliāng? 
19. Yàoshi shāngfēngle, yǐngdāng chǐ shénme yào? Yǐnɡdāng zúo shénme? 
20. Dàifu kànbiāo de shǐhòu, dōu zúo shénme shì?
VI. Nǐ shuō shénme?

1. Yāoshi nǐ dǎ diànhuà dàcuōle, nǐ shuō shénme?
2. yāoshi nǐ jiē diànhuà, diànhuàlǐ zhào nǐ jiālǐde rén jiē diànhuà, nǐ shuō shénme?
3. Yāoshi nǐ jiē diànhuà de shìhou, diànhuàde shēngyin búdā qīngchu, nǐ méitīngjiàn diànhuàlǐ shuōde shì shénme, nǐ gēn tā shuō shénme?
4. Nǐde péngyou yōubèng, dàifu láile, nǐ yào bā nǐ péngyoudé bǐng gēn dàifu shuō yǐshuō, nǐ zěnmé shuō?
5. Yǒu rén qǐng nǐ chǐfàn, nǐ bùnéng dìng shénme shíhou néng qu, nǐ zěnmé shuō?

VII. Bèishì

A: Nǐn shì shénme shíhou dàode?
B: Gāng dào.
A: Wǒ bùzhīdào nǐ jīdiǎn zhōng dào. Měidào chēzhàn jiē nǐn, zhēn dùlǐqī.
B: Wǒ pà nǐn kěqì, suǒyì měigǎn gáosòng nǐn.
A: Nǐn zài zhèr zhù jítiān?
B: Dǎgāi, liǎngsāntiān.
A: Nàměi míngtiān xiàwǔ wǒmen zài yǐkuàir chī wǎnfàn ba.
B: Bǐē kěqì.
A: Wǒmen hén jìu méijiànle. Tān yìtiān. Míngtiān xiàwǔ liùdiǎn, wǒ lái jiē nǐn, hǎo būhāo?
B: Nǐn tài kěqíle. Hǎo, wǒ děng nǐn ba.

VIII. Fányì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 When will dinner be ready?
1.2 I just hung up that picture; who took it down?
1.3 He called me up and asked for a date on Saturday. As soon as I told him that I might be busy that day, he hung up.
1.4 He said that he wants me to put Mr. Lǐ on the phone, I told him to hold the wire. He didn't quite understand. He hung up.
1.5 Will you please say it softly?
1.6 It is very noisy out on the street.
1.7 Why go to all that trouble?
1.8 Last night I saw a man, who was drunk, I guess. He was lying in a trolley car.
1.9 He said he had a splitting headache. I think he had a bad cold.
1.10 I wanted to take his temperature but I couldn't find the thermometer.
1.11 I told the doctor that I had a bad cough. He gave me a "shot".
1.12 The weather is very cold. We have to be careful.
1.13 For instance, the first year you pay ten dollars, the next year you pay five.
1.14 Let's take this sentence as an example.
1.15 Do you dare to say that you are not afraid of your wife?

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(246) a. How many days will it take to wash these clothes?
   b. This person is terribly stern.
   c. That man is terrific.

(249) a. I beg your pardon. Where is Xīnyā Co.?

(250) a. Won't you please take off your hat?

(251) a. One has to be friendly to do business.

(252) a. Where shall we hang this picture?
   b. Do you want to talk to Mr. Li? Hold the wire. I'll see whether he is in or not.

(253) a. I'm sure there is something wrong with the car. Listen! How peculiar it sounds!
   b. Please talk a little louder.

(254) a. What he is saying is all mixed up.
   b. He doesn't know what he is saying.
   c. My room is a mess.

(255) a. There are quite a few clothing stores around. Why must we go into town to buy them?
   b. It's very convenient to go to New York by train. Why do you insist on going by air?

(257) a. He is lying down.
   b. He drank too much and fell down after walking a few steps.

(258) a. Do you know anything about this matter?

(259) a. I didn't close the window last night and caught a little cold.

(260) a. I have a bad cold.
   b. I have a little cold.

(261) a. I have a splitting headache.

(262) a. He had a cold and coughed half the night last night.

(265) a. The doctor gave me an injection.

(266) a. Will you take his temperature and see whether it is high or not.
(267) a. He has a very high temperature.

(268) a. The road is not good. Please be careful.
   b. Watch out, a car is coming.

(270) a. For instance, shall we go tomorrow if it rains?
   b. Let's take this as an example.

(271) a. I dare not go to that dark room by myself at night.
   b. I am not sure whether he is coming or not.
DISHIERKE - DIU DONGXI

I. DULHU

Zhao Xs. jieli diufe dongxi le. Jingcha jiu pai ren lai kankan. Zhao Xs. gen jingguan jingcha shuo:

Zhao: Qing nin dao zhejian wuli lai kankan ba. Qiangle shi yige dong. Dongxi dou shi cong zher nongchuode.

Jingguan: Zhe shi ye li shenme shihou de shiqing?


Jingguan: Dou diufe shenme le?


Jingguan: Dongxi dou fangzai nair le?

Zhao: Fangzai guzili le.

Jingguan: Zheige guzeli suozehe meiyou?


Jingcha: Yifeng zhi duoshao qian?

Zhao: Dagei yifeng zhi liangqianduokuai. Wo nei zhang danzishang dou xiezhe ne.


Zhao: Xie xie nin.

(Wanshang, Si Xs. tingshuode. Tai dao Zhaojia lai kankan.)

Si: Wo tingshuo nin zhier zuotian wanshang chule diun shi, shi zhenme hui shi?


Si: Dou diufe shenme le?


104
SI: Hài. Zhēn měixiǎngdào. Nǐn fāngzài nǐr le?


SI: Nǐn měizhāo jīngchájù ma?


SI: Nǐn bāoxiān le mēiyōu?


II. Shēngzi Yòngfǎ

272. jīngchá N: policeman
272.1 jīngchájù N: police department

273. jīngguān N: police officer
273.1 guān N: officer

274. pāi V: select, appoint or send (someone to do something)

a. Wǒmen jiāde shūguānzi huàile. Qǐng nǐ pāi yīge rén lái shùshīshǐ shūshǐ ba.

275. dōng N: hole
275.1 shǎndōng N: cave

276. nòng V: arrange, take care of, see to, tend to, handle

276.1 nǒnghuàile RV: arrange (something)
276.2 nǒnghuòle RV: it's been fixed
276.3 nǒngzòu RV: take away
276.4 nǒngcuòle RV: made a mistake, didn't do it right

a. Nèijian shǐqīng, tā měinǒngqǐngchú.

277. shǒushi N: jewelry (M: -jiàn)

278. yīfu N: clothes (M: -tào for suit, -jiàn for piece)

279. kāi V: make out, write out (a note, slip, etc.)
279.1 kāi yìge tiáor VO: write a note
279.2 kāixiáilai RV: list
280. dānzi  N: list (M: -zhāng, -gē)
280.1 cài dānzi  N: menu
280.2 chuángdānzi  N: bed sheet (M: -chuāng, -gē)
280.3 kǎi dānzi  VO: make out a slip
   a. Nǐ bǎ ni pǐbāolide dōngxi dǎi yízhāng dānzi, yìyángr yìyángr de
dōu kǎixialai.

281. zhí  V: be worth (so much)
281.1 zhí qián/zhíqián  VO/SV: be worth (so much) money/be valuable
281.2 zhíde  AV: worth while
   a. Tā nèijiān pǐdàyǐ, hěn zhíqián.
   b. Zhēigé biǎo zhǐ dùōshao qián?
   c. Zhèitāo yīshāng, sānshìwǔkuài qián, zhí buzhi?
   d. Nèiběn shū zhēn zhíde kàn.

282. chūshì  VO: have something go wrong, have an
crash
   a. Tīngshuō nèige fēijī chūshìle.
   b. Tā kǎi qíchē chūshì diànr shì, pèngle yīge rén, kěshì pèngde bùtài
lǐhài.

283. zāogǎo  SV: what a mess! too bad
   a. Zhěn zāogǎo! Tā zhèi liàngtiān zǒng diū dōngxi.

284. dāoméi  SV: be unlucky
   a. Cōng quánian qǐ, wǒmen jiā chāng chūshì, zhēn dāoméi!

285. zéi  N: thief

286. tōu  V: steal
286.1 tōuzhe  A: stealthily, secretly
286.2 tōutōurde  A: stealthily, secretly
   a. Tāmen jiā, yǒu ràng zéi tōule.
   b. Zéi dōu tōu dōngxi. Nàr yǒu bùtōu dōngxi de zéi!
   c. Tā tōuzhe gěn wǒ shūō, pā biérén tīngjiān.
   d. Tā zuòtiān wǎnshāng, huǐjiǎ tāi wǎnle. Suǒyì tā bǎ xiē tuōle,
tōutōurde jīnquē.

287. xīfú  N: Western-style clothes (M: -tào)

288. pǐdàyǐ  N: fur coat (M: -jiànl)
288.1 dài  N: overcoat (M: -jiànl)

289. chènshān  N: shirt (M: -jiànl)

290. kūzi  N: pants, trousers (M: -tiáo)

291. méixiǎngdào  RV: didn't expect
292. xìngkuī
   A: fortunately
   a. Xìngkuī jǐntian wǒ méidào Tiānyuē qu. Yàoshi qule, zhème dàde xuě, wǒ zhěme hufāi?
   b. Wǒ xìngkuī dǎi qiān le; yāoburan, qǐngkè, měi qiān, nà duōme zǎogāo?

293. bǎoxiǎn
   VO: buy insurance, guarantee
   V/SV: guarantee/be safe

293.1 bāochuòxiǎn
   VO: buy fire insurance
   a. Nǐde fángzi bǎo huǒxiǎn le meiyou?
   b. Wǒ gān bǎoxiǎn, tā jǐntian yīfēng hūlái.
   c. Qián lāo fāngzai jīāli, kǒngpà bābāoxiǎn ba.

294. yùnqì
   N: luck, fortune

III. Jūzi Gǒuzào

1. The Bā Construction:

   Bā is a CV and the basic pattern of sentences using bā is:

   bā O V

The O after bā in most cases is the object of the following V. This object is brought to the front of the verb by the bā. A simple sentence may have three patterns:

   The regular S V O construction: Tā guǎnshāng méi le.
   The inverted object construction: Méi, tā guǎnshāngle.
   The bā construction: Tā bā méi guǎnshāngle.

1.1 The object brought to the front of the verb is generally a specific object and not a general one. The méi mentioned in the third illustration above refers to "nèige méi" (the door), "nèixiē méi" (the doors), "suǒyǒu de méi" (all the doors), etc. and not to doors in general.

1.2 An object preceded by a NU-M requires special consideration as to whether it may be brought to the front of the verb or not. Such an object without a specifier is usually a general object and does not fit the bā pattern. Thus, the regular SVO pattern serves best:

   Tā bānzōule sānge zhúžì. (meaning "any three tables")

The bā pattern: Tā bā sānge zhúži bānzōule, is considered inadequate unless a specifier or an inclusive adverb is added:

   Tā bā nèisānge zhúži bānzōule, (or)
   Tā bā sānge zhúži dōu bānzōule, (or)
   Tā bā nèisānge zhúži dōu bānzōule.

1.3 When the main verb is gāosòng, pēi or a compound verb with pēi as post-verb, there are usually two objects, (direct and indirect):
Qīng nǐ gàosōng wo nèijian shìqing.
Tā jiào wo gěi ta nèiben shū.
Wǒ dāsuàn jiègei ta wùkuài qián.

In such a case, the second (direct) object may be brought to the front of the verb by bā:

Qīng nǐ bā nèijian shìqing gàosōng wǒ.
Tā jiào wǒ bā nèiben shū jiègei tā.
Wǒ dāsuàn bā zhēiwǒkuài qián jiègei tā.

Note that the second object in the third illustration is specified when brought to the front.

1.4 After a bā construction, the main verb must be followed by a complement of some sort. It may be:

1.41 le:
Wǒ bā ta dāle.

1.42 RV:
Qīng nǐ bā zhēige zhuōzi bānkāi.

1.43 (zai) PW:
Wǒ bā tāde shū fāngzāi zhèr le.

1.44 Reduplication of the verb:
Nǐ bā nèiben shū kānankan.

1.45 NU–M:
Wǒ bā nèiben shū kānle yícī.

1.5 The negative adverb in a bā sentence is attached to the bā or to the AV preceding it if there is one, and is rarely in front of the main verb or the adverb immediately preceding it:

Bī bā tāng dou chīle.
Wǒ būyuǎnyí bā qián dou yòngle.
Wǒ yuǎnyí bā qián būdou yòngle. (not recommended)

1.6 The potential form of an RV cannot be used as the main verb in a bā sentence.

2. The Various Uses of cái:

cái is a fixed adverb and usually has one of two meanings:

2.1 It means "only" when it is followed by a NU–M expression:

2.11 cái V NU–M: Tā cái sīle yīge yuè.

2.12 cái NU–M: Xiànzài cái sāndiǎn zhōng.

2.2 It means "then and only then", "not until" and refers to the action or time element before the cái clause:

Wǒ míngtiān cái zǒu ne. (I'm not going until tomorrow.)
Tā chīwǎnlè fān cái zòude. (He didn't leave until after he had his meal.)

Note ne or de is often used at the end of the sentence, to indicate future action or to stress the time element or some action other than that of the main verb.

2.21 cái cannot be used in command or request, therefore a sentence using cái in its sense cannot end with a suggestive bā.

108
2.22 Between the cǎi clause and the time or some other action clause preceding it, a third clause may be inserted to indicate elapse of a third action between the two:

Tā chīwán fàn, you zuòle bāntiān, cǎi zǒuāde.
(After he finished eating, he stayed for a long time before he left.)

2.23 The clause before the cǎi clause often serves as the condition to the latter:

Yào shì míngtiān, wǒ cǎi néng qù ne.
(I can only go if it is tomorrow—meaning, only then I can go.)

Yǐdōng děi tā lái, wǒ cǎi gěi qián ne.
(He must come before I pay.)

Yǐnwei tā láile, wǒ cǎi gěide qián.
(I paid only because he came—meaning, only then I paid.)

IV. Fǎyīn Liǎnxi
1. "Jīngchájū pài rén qu kànle meiyōu?" "Pàile yíge jíngguān, liāngge jīngchá."
2. "Shéi bā zhēige suǒ nónghuàile?" "Bùzhīdào. Nǐ húi shōushí bùhúle?"
4. "Nǐ rǎn zhēige biǎo zhī duōshào qián?" "Wǒ bùgǎn shuō. Nǐ shuō zhī wūshikuài qián bùzhī?"
5. "Hūōjī, nà cǎidānzi lai." "Lèkè jiù lái."  
7. "Nēige dīfāng chūle shènme shì le?" "Qǐchē pēng rén le."
8. "Nǐ wèi shènme tōuérde gen ta shuō?" "Pà bìcèn tīngjiān."
10. "Nǐde qǐchē bāoxiānle meiyōu?" "Xīngkuī bāoxiānle, yàobùràn zhěikuài bǔlā deí shǐjīxuāi."  

V. Wèntí
1. Zhào Xs, jǐlǐ chūle shènme shì le? Shènme dīfāng pài rén lǎile? Pài shènme rén lǎile?
2. Dōngxi shì cóng shènme dīfāng nòng chūquède?
3. Zhào Xs, zhīdāo būzhīdào dōngxi shì yělǐ shènme shífòu diūde? Tā shì jīdiān zhōng tāngxiáde? Shènme shènme shífòu shuízháolede?
4. Zhào Xs. yǐli tīngjian shènme shēngyin meiyou? Dōngxi diūle, tā shì shènme shīhou zhīdaode?

5. Tā dou diūle shènme dōngxi le? Diūlede dōngxi ta fàngzai shènme difang le?

6. Zhào Xs. de guī suǒle méisuǒ? Tā bā yàoshi fàngzai shènme difang le?

7. Tā zǎoshang qǐlai zěnme zhīdao diūle dōngxi le? Tā kànjian yàoshi zài shènme difang ne?

8. Tāde dōngxi yīgòng zhī duōshao qián?

9. Nǐ xiǎng Zhào Xs. kǎide dānzishang dou xīezhe shènme?

10. Jīngguān jǐngchá zǔode shǐhou shuō shènme? Nǐ xiǎng tāde dōngxi zhǎodezhāo ma?

11. Sì Xs. wèi shènme dào Zhàojia qu? Tā wèn Zhào Xs. shènme? Zhào Xs. shí zěnme gàosong Sì Xs. de?

12. Zhào Xs. de qián yě fàngzai guīli le ma?

13. Zhào Xs. zhīdao dōngxi diūle yīhū, tā zěnme bàn?

14. Zhào Xs. juède tāde dōngxi zhǎodezhāo ma?

15. Tāde dōngxi bāoxiānle meiyou? Bāole duōshao qián? Bāole gōu bǔgǒu?

16. Sì Xs. shuō Zhào Xs. de dōngxi zhǎodezhāo ma?

17. Nǐde qǐchē chuānguo shì meiyou? Yàoshi chūle shì nǐ zěnme bàn?


20. Tā shuō tā yào dào jǐngchájū qu jiào jǐngchá. Shì tā zǐjǐ qù, nǎishi tā yào pài rén qu?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shènme?

1. Yàoshi nǐde pèngyǒu jiālǐ chuāle diūnr shì, nǐ gèn tā shuō shènme?

2. Yàoshi nǐde pèngyǒu diūle dōngxi le, nǐ yào wèn tā shènme?

3. Nǐde pèngyǒu diūle dōngxi le. Nǐ xiǎng gàosong ta, tā yǐnggāi zěnme bān, nǐ zěnme gèn tā shuō?

4. Nǐde pèngyǒu diūle dōngxi le. Tā hěn zhāoǒjǐ, nǐ gèn tā shuō shènme?

5. Nǐde pèngyǒu diūle dōngxi le. Jǐngchá, jīngguān dōu lǎile, nǐ yào bā diū dōngxi de shīqīng gàosong tāmen, nǐ zěnme shuō?

VII. Gūshì

(on record)
VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 The water company sent a man here to fix the water pipes.
1.2 The store sent the jewelry we bought.
1.3 He is just a policeman, not an officer, I made a mistake.
1.4 I have a bad memory. I am afraid that I cannot remember all the things she wanted me to buy; therefore I wrote them down on a list.
1.5 How much do you think this pair of pants is worth?
1.6 I don't think this fur coat is worth anything.
1.7 I paid more than twenty-five dollars for this suit. Don't you think it's worth it?
1.8 Is it worth all this trouble?
1.9 Is it worth while to read?
1.10 He was in an air-lane accident the other day.
1.11 It's a pity (that) I forgot to make out the list.
1.12 I have been very unlucky lately.
1.13 A burglar came in yesterday, but he didn't take anything valuable. You can't call that unlucky.
1.14 If you ask, "Who has stolen my pen?", no one will answer. You'd better say, "Who has seen my pen?"
1.15 His overcoat is warmer than anything else.
1.16 You spend more to wash your shirt than to buy it.
1.17 Fortunately I didn't go. If I had gone, my car would have been in the same accident.
1.18 Fortunately he told me beforehand. If he hadn't, how embarrassing that would have been.
1.19 Do you have insurance on your house?
1.20 I can guarantee that he stole it.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(274) a. The plumbing in our house has broken down. Please send some one to repair it.
(276) a. He is not clear about that matter.
(280) a. Please itemize all the things in your brief case.
(281) a. That fur coat of hers is very valuable.
b. How much is this watch worth?
c. This suit costs thirty-five dollars. Is it worth it?
d. That book is certainly worth reading.

(282) a. I have heard something happened to that plane.
b. He had an accident while driving. He bumped into a person, but it wasn't serious.

(283) a. What luck! He is always losing things these few days.
b. Shucks! I forgot to bring that book. Today I have to use it.

(284) a. Since last year, lots of accidents happened in our home. What luck!

(286) a. Their home was burglarized again.
b. All thieves steal (things). Where is there a thief who does not steal (things)?
c. He secretly told me. He didn't want the others to hear.
d. He came home very late last night. So he took off his shoes and sneaked into the house.

(291) a. We all knew he wasn't coming. Who would have thought he came.

(292) a. Fortunately, I didn't go to New York today. If I had gone, how could I have come back in such a big snowstorm?
b. Fortunately, I brought money with me. If I hadn't, what a mess it would be to invite some one out and not to have money.

(293) a. Do you have fire insurance on your house?
b. I can guarantee that he will not be here today.
c. I am afraid it wouldn't be safe to always keep money in the house.
DISHISÃOKE - JIÀNGYÀN

I. DUÍHUÀ

 Yöü rén qìng SÌ Xu. dào Shànhǎi fùjìn yíge xiǎo chéng qu jiàngyàn. qù yìqiàn, tā dào Zhàojià, gen Zhào Xu. dàtìng nèige xiǎo chéngde qìngxìng. SÌ Xu. dàole Zhàojià, jiànzhuò Zhào Xu., shuō:

SÌ: Ai. Zǐān. Hǎo ba?
Zhào: Nǐn láile. Qìngzuò qìngzuò. Zhěi jìtian zěnmeyàng?
SÌ: Hěn hǎo. Diūle de dōngxi zěnmeyàng?
SÌ: Zhào Tt. hǎole ba?
Zhào: Tā dào hǎole. Xièxiè nǐn. Nǐn méichūmèn ma?
SÌ: Xiàilíbailì yòu rén qìng wǒ dào shàoxià qu jiàngyàn. Nǐn dào nèr qìngguo ma?
SÌ: Cóng zhèr qù, dǐ zài lūshàng zǒu duō jiǔ?
Zhào: Zuò huǒchē, liāngge zhǒngtǒu; zuò qíchē, dǐ sǎngěbān zhǒngtǒu, yǎoshì kǎide kuǎi, lūshàng bùtíng, sǎngě zhǒngtǒu, jiǔ xíngle.
SÌ: Nǐn zhīdào nèige chéng litóude rénkǒu yǒu duōshao ma?
Zhào: Wǒ zhīdàode bùdà qìngchù. Dàgài yǒu qǐbǎiwàn rén.
SÌ: Wǒ tīngshuí nèige dìfangde chūchēn hěn duō.
SÌ: Chéng litóu yǒu xuéxiào ba?
Zhào: Yǒu liāngge zhǒngxué, bāgé xiǎoxué.
SÌ: Nèixiē xuéxiào dōu shì sǐlǐde, hǎishì gōnglǐde? Yǒu jiàohuí bānde meiyòu?
SÌ: Nàme wǒmen yǐkùàir qu, hǎo bǔhǎo?
SÌ: Méi guānxí, nàme dēng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì zāishùā ba.

113
Zhào: Nǐn shì yòng Yīngwen jiǎng, shì yòng Zhōngwén jiǎng?


Zhào: (dà xiǎo) Zhèi kě zhēn yǒu yǔlì.

Sī: Wǒ děi zòule.

Zhào: zài zuò yíhuīr. Mǎng shēnmé?

Sī: Wǒ děi huíqù yùbei nèige jiāngyǔn qu. Wǒ mínghuān zài lái.

Zhào: Hǎo. Nàmé wǒ bùliù nǐn le. Míngtiān nǐn shēnmé shíhou lái?

Sī: Xiàwǔ sādiān bànn, chéng buchēng?

Zhào: Wǒ míntiān méi shì. Nǐn shēnmé shíhou lái dou chéng

Sī: Hǎo, míntiānjiàn ba.

Zhào: Nǐn mánzòu.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

295. jiǎng V: explain
295.1 jiāngyǔn V/N: give a speech, lecture/a speech
295.2 yǎnjiǎng V/N: give a speech, lecture/a speech
295.3 jiānghuà VO: speak
295.4 jiāngshū VO: explain the lesson, lecture (in class)
295.5 jiāng jiāqiān VO: bargain

a. Qīng nǐn bā zhēgè zī gěi wǒ jiāngjiāng.
   b. Nèiwei xiānshēng jiāngshū jiāngde zhēn qīngchū.

296. qíngxíng N: condition, situation
297. Shàoxiànw N: a fictitious town

114
298. rénkǒu  N: population
   a. Nèige dìfang yǒu duōshao rénkǒu?

299. chūchǎn  V/N: produce/product, produce (natural)
299.1 chǎ  V: produce (natural and manufactured goods)
   a. Zhèige dìfang chūchǎn shénme?

300. fèngfù  SV: be abundant, rich
   a. Nèige dìfangde chūchǎn hěn fèngfù.

301. chūle...yǐwài  in addition to...besides
   a. Chūle nǐmen yǐwài, jiù méi biérén le.
   b. Tā chūle, yīngwěn yǐwài, yè hūí Pàiwèn.
   c. Chūle shǒushí, tā hái diūle xìe yǐfu.

302. mǐ  N: hulled rice (grain) (M: -dōu, peck; -shēng, pint; -jīn, catty)

303. jīn/yíntóngtiěxī  N: gold, silver, brass, iron and lead
   (known as the five metals)
   303.1 jīn-  BF: gold
   303.2 jīnde  N: of gold
   303.3 jīnzi  N: gold (M: -liǎng, ounce)
   303.4 jīnbīāo  N: gold watch
   303.5 (yǒng) jīnzi zuòde  made of gold
   303.6 yǐn-  BF: silver
   303.7 yǐnde  N: of silver
   303.8 yǐnzi  N: silver
   303.9 yǐnshǎor  N: silver spoon
   303.10 tóng  N: copper, brass
   303.11 tóngde  N: of copper, of brass
   303.12 hōngtóng  N: copper
   303.13 huánghóngtóng  N: brass
   303.14 (yǒng)tóng zuòde  made of copper (brass)
   303.15 tiě  N: iron
   303.16 tiěde  N: of iron
   303.17 xī  N: tin

304. méi  N: coal (M: -jīn, catty; -dūn, ton)

305. miánhuá  N: cotton (M: -jīn, catty; -bāo, bale)

306. xiǎoxué  N: elementary school

307. zhōngxué  N: high school, secondary school

308. sīlǐ(de)  BF: privately established
   (school, factory, etc.)

309. gōnglǐ(de)  BF: publicly established
   (school, factory, etc.)
   a. Zhèige xuéxiào shì sīlǐde, shì gōnglǐde?

310. jiàohú  N: church (organization)
310.1 jiàohú xuéxiào  church or mission school
310.2 jiàohú yǐyuàn  church or mission hospital
310.3 jiàohú bānde  operated by the church

115
III. Júzi Gōuzào

1. Zài, Jiù and Cái Compared:

The various uses of zài, jiù and cái as fixed adverbs have been discussed in Lessons 10, 11 and 12 respectively. Now we will compare their different meanings in a single pattern, i.e., when preceded by a limiting circumstance, whether a word or a clause, e.g.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limiting Circumstance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wǒmen {míngtian} (zài) zǒu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wǒmen chīwán fàn (záì) zǒu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wǒmen chīwán fàn (jiù) zǒu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.1 In this pattern, these three fixed adverbs have quite different meanings:

Wǒmen chīwán fàn zài zǒu ba.
(Let's finish eating before we go.)

Wǒmen chīwán fàn cái zǒude.
(We didn't go until we finished eating.)

Wǒmen chīwán fàn jiù zǒu.
(We will go after we finished eating.)
1.2 In the case of zài and cái, the limiting circumstance is an "imperative condition" to the action after zài or cái in a contemplated action, and expressions like yídèng děi (must) and xiān (first) can be added:

Wǒ yídèng děi chīle fǎn cái zǒu ne.
(I must finish eating before I go.)

Wǒ děi xiān chīwán fǎn zài zǒu.
(I must finish eating first before I go.)

In a completed action, the limiting circumstance serves as the stressed time or action only after which the action in the subsequent clause happened:

Wǒ shì chīwán fǎn cái zǒu de.
(I didn't go until after I finished eating.)

1.3 In the case of jiù, the limiting circumstance before the jiù clause states a time or action immediately after which the action in the jiù clause is to follow. Jiù may be preceded by lǐkě, which further intensifies the immediacy of the action to follow, while zài and cái, because of their nature mentioned in 1.2, cannot be preceded by lǐkě:

Wǒmen chīwán fǎn lǐkě jiù zǒu.
(We will go immediately after we finish eating.)

Another illustration of the immediacy of the action in the jiù clause to follow the limiting circumstance is that yǐ- (as soon as) may precede the verb in the first clause:

Wǒmen yǐchīwán fǎn jìu zǒu.
(We will go as soon as we finish eating.)

1.4 The illustrations below will further clarify the difference in meaning between these three adverbs:

Wǒ yídèng děi chīle fǎn cái zǒu ne.  
(See 1.2)

Wǒ yídèng děi chīle fǎn zài zǒu.  
(See 1.2)

Wǒ yídèng děi chīle fǎn jiù zǒu.  
(I must go immediately after eating.)

The yídèng děi in the first two illustrations stresses the imperative condition before the action after cái or zài: the yídèng děi in the third stresses the immediacy of the action after jiù to follow that before jiù.

1.5 These three adverbs differ further as to which sentence particles may follow them:

1.51 The zài sentence may end with a suggestive ba  
(see first illustration in 1.1)

1.52 The cái sentence may end with a de (see second illustration in 1.1), indicating that the action has already been completed, and also with a ne, indicating that the action is still in the contemplating stage:
Wǒmen chīwán fàn jiu zǒu ba.  
(Let's go (right) after eating.)

Wǒmen chīwán fàn jiu zǒu le.  
(We left (right) after eating.)

2. Zǎi and cǎi Compared:

Zǎi can be used only in a contemplated action in the form of a plan, suggestion, request or command, and can not be used in a completed action:

Plan: Wǒ dāsuan míngtian zài qù.
Suggestion: Nǐ zuíhǎo míngtian zài qù.
Request: Wǒmen míngtian zài qù, hǎo buhǎo?
Command: Nǐ míngtian zài qù.

But not: Tā zuòtian zài qù.

Cǎi can be used in both contemplated and completed actions:

Tāmen míngtian cǎi qù ne.  
Tāmen zuòtian cǎi qùde.

While cǎi may be used in a contemplated action, it can only be used in the form of a statement or a plan:

Statement: Tāmen míngtian cǎi qù ne.  
Plan: Tāmen xiǎng míngtian cǎi qù ne.

It cannot be used in a suggestion, request or command.

3. Jiù and cǎi Compared:

These two words are sometimes opposite in meaning. When they are preceded by a time expression, jiù means "sooner than expected" and cǎi means "later than expected".

Sooner: Tā liùdiǎn zhōng jiù lai le.  
(He came when it was only six o'clock.)

Later: Tā liùdiǎn zhōng cǎi láide.  
(He didn't come until six o'clock.)

4. Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

4.1 Don't go now; you'd better wait until he comes, and then go.

4.2 If he is willing to pay, I will be very glad to buy one for him.

4.3 It came at 3:30 - an hour too early.

4.4 We won't eat until he comes back from the school.

4.5 How about our doing it tomorrow?

4.6 I didn't answer her letter until she had written me three times.

4.7 I will pay you back as soon as I get another loan.

4.8 We will start a new book only when we finish this one.
4.9 If he can take me home, I will wait till twelve.
4.10 I cannot understand the kind of Chinese spoken by other people.
     I can only understand his Chinese.
4.11 I plan to write a book when I come back from China.
4.12 I am too tired now. I'll have to take a rest before I do any
     more.
4.13 As soon as the spring comes, the grass turns green.
4.14 It was only because he didn't have any money, that I paid for
     him.
4.15 Don't read that book today. I don't want you to read it until
     tomorrow.

IV. Pinyin liànxié
1. "Zuòtian wǎnshang jiāngyùndé qíngxìng zěnmeyàng?" "Jiāngde hěn
     qíngchù."
2. "Zhèjiù huà zěnmé jiāng?" "Wǒ yì bǔzhīdào."
3. "Néige dìfáng de rén kǒu dōushào? Yǒu shénme chūchān?" "Nǐ zhīhǎo
     wèn tā ba."
4. "Tā nèr chūle miǎnhuá yǐwèi, hái mài shénme?" "Chūle miǎnhuá,
     bùmài biéde."
5. "Zhèige shì yǐnzi zuòde, shì tī zúòde?" "Dàgè shì tóng zuòde."
6. "Zhèige xiǎoxué shì gōnglìde shì sīlìde?" "Shì jiàohúi bānde,
     suān sīlīde."
     Tiānzhǔ jiāo de jiǎotáng."
8. "Lǐbǎi liú hūi zěnmeyàng?" "Dōu gèn tāmen dǐngghǎo." 
9. "Tā shuòde xiǎohuā kěxiào ma?" "Bùkěxiào, kěshi bùhǎoyí bùxiào."
10. "Zhèige zì nǐ zěnmé hǎi shūōbudú?" "Wǒ zhídào bǔdú, kěshi
     gǎobùlǐ." 

V. Wèntí
1. Sì Xs. wèi shénme yao dàtǐng néige xiǎo chéngde qíngxìng? Tā gèn
     shéi dàtǐng?
2. Tā jiānzhào Zhào Xs., Zhào Zǐ ēn gèn ta shuō shénme? Wèn ta shēnme
     wèntí?
3. Zhào Xs. dào néige xiǎo chéng qūguò ma? Tā juède néige chéng
     zěnmeyàng? Tā hǎi xiǎng qù ma?
4. Dào néige dìfáng qù, děi zài lǔshāng zǒu duō jiǔ?
5. Nêige chóng lītoude rénkǒu yǒu duōshao? Zhào Xs. zhīdaode qīngchu buqīngchu?


8. Nêige dìfangde xuēxiāo shì zhōngxué shì xiǎoxué? Jīge zhōngxué, jīge xiǎoxué?

9. Nêige chóng lītou yǒu jiàotáng ma? Shi shénme jiàohulde jiàotáng?

10. Sī Xs. yāo qǐng Zhào Xs. gēn ta yīkuāir qù ma? Wēi shénme Sī Xs. yuǎnyī qǐng Zhào Xs. gen ta yīkuāir qù?

11. Zhào Xs. yuǎnyī dao nêige dìfang qù ma? Tā wèi shénme bùnēng qù?

12. Sī Xs. de jiāngyǎn shì yòng Yīnwēn jiāng, shì yòng Zhōngwēn jiāng? Sī Xs. zījī juéde tāde Zhōngwēn zènmeyuǎn?

13. Zhào Xs. juéde Sī Xs. de Zhōngwēn zènmeyuǎn? Zhào Xs. juéde ta yīngdāng yòng Zhōngwēn jiāng hāishi yòng Yīnwēn jiāng?

14. Sī Xs. dāsuan zènme yībèi tāde jiāngyǎn? Zhào Xs. nēng bāng ta shénme mǎng?

15. Wēi shénme Sī Xs. yāo nàmè xiǎoxin?

16. Qīng nǐ bā Sī Xs. shuōde nêige xiǎohuā shuō yīshū?

17. Sī Xs. yāo zōude shǐhou, tā shuō shénme? Zhào Xs. shuō shénme?

18. Sī Xs. yāo huìqū zuǒ shénme qu? Tā yào diērtiān shénme shǐhou lái?


20. Qīng nǐ bā nǐ qūguode yīge xiǎo chéngde qǐngxīng shuō yīshū.

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?


2. Yàoshí yǒu rén gēn nǐ dādìng, nǐ zhǔde nêige chénggōng yǒu shénme xuēxiāo, yǒu shénme jiàotáng, nǐ zènme shuō?

3. Yàoshí nǐde pèngyǒu qǐng nǐ gēn tā dào yīge dìfang qù, nǐ bùnēng qù. Nǐ zènme gēn tā shuō?

4. Yàoshí nǐ qǐng nǐde pèngyǒu gēn tā dào yīge dìfang qu, tā bùnēng qu, kēshì tā hěn bùhào yíshuō. Nǐ gēn tā shuō shénme?

VII. Běishǔ

A: Wèi, lǎojiè, gěi wǒ jiē sānjù, èr-wǔ-líng-sè.
B: Huáwén Xuéxiào. Nín shì nǎr?
A: Nín shì Huáwén Xuéxiào a! Lǎojiè, qǐng Lǐ Xs. jiē diànhuà.
B: Nǐ wèi Lǐ Xs. a?
A: Lǐ Yǎoqīng, Lǐ Xs.
B: Wǒ jiù shì a. Nǐn shì nǐwèi?
A: Wǒ xìng Sī a.
B: Ō, Sī Xs., hěn jiǔ méijiǎn.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 Who was the speaker yesterday? (Who spoke yesterday?)
1.2 He's a very good speaker. (He spoke well.)
1.3 His lecture was very clear.
1.4 How is the situation in China now?
1.5 The population of this place has increased a lot in comparison with last year.
1.6 That place is rich in many kinds of products.
1.7 Besides Chinese he knows German too.
1.8 After he graduated from a public elementary school he went to a private high school.
1.9 Is your high school a public, private, or church school?
1.10 This is made of cotton.
1.11 I understand that the school is operated by a church, but whether it is a Protestant or Catholic church, I don't know.
1.12 I have an engagement at six o'clock.
1.13 I can speak a little but not well.
1.14 If I make any mistake, please correct it for me.
1.15 I asked him to alter my dress but he made it worse.

121
2. Translate back into Chinese:

(295) a. Will you please explain this word for me.
    b. The teacher explained the lessons very clearly.

(298) a. What is the population of that place?

(299) a. What is produced (or grown) here?

(300) a. The place is rich in many kinds of products.

(301) a. There is no one but you.
    b. Besides English, he can speak French too.
    c. Besides her jewelry, she lost some clothes.

(309) a. Is this a private or public school?

(314) a. I want to set a time to have a chat with him.

(315) a. I can go, but I don't very much want to go.
    b. He gave me only five dollars.

(316) a. He never says this sentence correctly. I have corrected
    him many times already, but he doesn't seem to be able to
    get it right.
    b. This dress is too small. There is no way to alter it.

(317) a. He himself thought the joke he told was funny, but nobody
    laughed.
DISHISIKE – ĐÀO SHAOXIÀN QU

I. DULHUÁ

Sī Xs. yào dao Shàoixiàn qu. Qù yǐqiàn, tài wàng huǒchēzhàn dà diànhuá, dàting yītiān yòu jīcī chē, shénme shībào kǎi, chēpǐào duǒshào qián.

Sī: Wài, nǐn shì huǒchēzhàn ma? Wǒ gèn nǐn dàting, dào Shàoixiàn qude chē, yītiān yòu jīcī?

Diànhuáli: Píngcháng shì yītiān liǎngcī. Xīngqìliù gèn xīngqìtiān, yītiān sāncl.

Sī: Qīng wēn, dōu shì shénme shībào kǎi?


Sī: Tèbié-kuàichē zōu jīge zhōngtōu?

Diànhuáli: Zōu liānggebān zhōngtōu, liàngdiǎnbān dào.

Sī: Chēpǐào duǒshào qián?

Diànhuáli: Tōudòng sānkūài-liū, èrdēng liāngkūài-sì, sāndēng yīkūài-èr.

Sī: Nǐn shuōde shì tèbié-kuàijēde jiàqián ma?

Diànhuáli: Dūlè.

Sī: Láihuǐpǐào piányí yídiǎnr ma?

Diànhuáli: Bù. Láihuǐpǐào suàn liàngge dānchéngpǐào.

Sī: Duōxiè, duōxiè.

(Xīngqìliù, shìyīdiǎn zhōng, Sī Xs. bà xīnglì shōushíhào. Chúzi bāngzhè ta názhe xiāngzì, cóng jiālǐ chūlái, gù sānlún.)

Chúzi: Sānlún, huǒchēzhàn qu bùqù?

Dēngsānlúnrde: Nǐn kànzhé gěi, hǎo būhǎo?

Chúzi: Nǐ shuō yào duǒshào qián ba.

Dēngsānlúnrde: Liǎngmaowǔ ba.

Chúzi: Yǐmáowǔ, qu bùqù?

Dēngsānlúnrde: Nǐn gěi liǎngmáo qián ba.

Chúzi: Yǐmáowǔ. Dūlí bùyào. Ài qu bùqù.

Dēngsānlúnrde: Lái. Nǐn zuòshang.

123
(Chūzi bǎ xiāngzi fāngzai sānliūnchǐshàng, Sī Xs. shàngle chè jiù zǒule. Dàole chēzhàn, jiāoháng guòlái le.)

Jiāoháng: Nǐn dao nǎr qù a? Mǎi piào le ma?


Sī: Zài nǎr mǎi piào a?


(Sī Xs. zài piāofúngér chuānghu qǐántou.)

Sī: Shàoxià. Tòudēng, tèbié-kùāichē, láihuípiào yìzhāng.

Màipǐàode: Sānkuài-līù.

Sī: Zhèi shì wǒkuài.

Màipǐàode: Zhāo nǐn yīkuài-sì.

Sī: (Duō jiāoháng) Dào zhǎntái qu, cónɡ nǎr zǒu?


(Huǒchē lái le.)


Sī: Hǎo. Nǐ jǐjīogōi wǒ ba. Duōsháo qián?

Jiāoháng: Nǐn kànzhē gěi.

Sī: An guīju, shì duōsháo qián yǐjiàn?


Sī: Gěi nǐ sānmiáo qián ba.

Jiāoháng: Xièxiè. Xièxiè.

(Zài chēzhàn — )


Sī: Jìeguāng, jìeguāng, ràng wǒ gūqu.

(Sī Xs. kǎnjian ņǒu yīge lǐāngge-rén zuòde yǐzhíshāng jiù ņǒu yīge rén. ņǒu yīge zuòwéi kōngzhē ne. Jiù gēn neige zuòzhē dē rén shūo.)

Sī: Lǎojiù, zhèr ņǒu rén meiyǒu?

Yǐzhíshāng zuòzhē de neige rén: Méiyou.

(Sī Xs. bǎ xiāngzi fāngxia. Zuòxia yǐhǒu, chāpǐàode guòlái le.)
(Sî Xs. bǎ piào náchulai, gěn chápiâode shuō:)
Sî: Shì liǎngdiǎnbàn dào Shàoxiàn ma?
Chápiâode: Duìle.
Sî: Dàoole de shǐhou, qǐng gàosong wo. Lǎojià.
Chápiâode: Hǎo ba.

II. Shèngzi Yòngfǎ

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>hanzi</th>
<th>pinyin</th>
<th>N/TW:</th>
<th>TW:</th>
<th>NU-M:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>318</td>
<td>xīngqī</td>
<td>xīngqì</td>
<td>week/Sunday</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>one week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.1</td>
<td>xīngqìrì</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sunday (interchangeable with xīngqìrì)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.2</td>
<td>xīngqìtìān</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.3</td>
<td>xīngqìyī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.4</td>
<td>yīge xīngqī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>319</td>
<td>(tèbié)-kuālichè</td>
<td></td>
<td>just, exactly</td>
<td>eight o’clock sharp, exactly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>319.1</td>
<td>māncīhē</td>
<td></td>
<td>eight o’clock</td>
<td>ten dollars even</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>zhēng</td>
<td>zhēng bǎdiàn (bǎdiǎnzhēng)</td>
<td>grade, class</td>
<td>first class (train)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.1</td>
<td>zhēng</td>
<td>zhēng shìkuài qián</td>
<td>second class</td>
<td>second class</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.2</td>
<td>zhēng</td>
<td></td>
<td>third class</td>
<td>third class</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>wǒ zhēng qùle sǎntiàn.</td>
<td>wǒ zhēng qùle sǎntiàn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321</td>
<td>dēng</td>
<td></td>
<td>grade, class</td>
<td>grade, class</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.1</td>
<td>dōudēng(chē)</td>
<td></td>
<td>first class</td>
<td>first class (train)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.2</td>
<td>èrdēng</td>
<td></td>
<td>second class</td>
<td>second class</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.3</td>
<td>sàndēng</td>
<td></td>
<td>third class</td>
<td>third class</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322</td>
<td>lǐnhuípîào</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: round trip ticket</td>
<td>N: round trip ticket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323</td>
<td>dānchéngpîào</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: one way ticket</td>
<td>N: one way ticket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>324</td>
<td>duōxiè</td>
<td></td>
<td>IE: many thanks</td>
<td>IE: many thanks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325</td>
<td>xīngzi</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: suitcase, trunk, chest</td>
<td>N: suitcase, trunk, chest( leather)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325.1</td>
<td>pǐxiāng</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: pedicab (M: -liàng)</td>
<td>N: pedicab</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326</td>
<td>sānlún</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO: to hire a pedicab</td>
<td>VO: to hire a pedicab</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326.1</td>
<td>sānlúnchē</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO: to ride a pedicab</td>
<td>VO: to ride a pedicab</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326.2</td>
<td>gū sānlún</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO: pedicab-man (lit. one who pedals a pedicab)</td>
<td>VO: pedicab-man (lit. one who pedals a pedicab)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326.3</td>
<td>zuò sānlún</td>
<td></td>
<td>IE: go or not as you please</td>
<td>IE: go or not as you please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326.4</td>
<td>dēng sānlúnrde</td>
<td></td>
<td>IE: eat it or not as you please</td>
<td>IE: eat it or not as you please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327</td>
<td>ěi qù búqù</td>
<td></td>
<td>IE: leave or stay as you please</td>
<td>IE: leave or stay as you please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327.1</td>
<td>ěi chǐ bāchī</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: porter (baggage)</td>
<td>N: porter (baggage)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327.2</td>
<td>ěi zōu būzōu</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: red cap</td>
<td>N: red cap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328</td>
<td>jiàoháng</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328.1</td>
<td>hóng màozi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
329. jiāo(gei)  V: turn over, hand over to
tiān jiāo
tiān  turn over to him


330. páizi  N: sign, tag (baggage), brand, make
330.1 guā páizi  VO: to check baggage

a. Nǐde qíchē shì shéngmén páizi?

331. píàofāngr  N: ticket office

332. tái  N: stage, platform
332.1 zhàn tái  N: station, platform

a. Dào Nánjīng de chē, zài dì jī zhàn tái?

333. gēn  V: follow
333.1 gēnzhe  V/A: follow
333.2 gēnshāng  RV: catch up

a. Qīng nǐmen dàjīā dōu gēnzhe wǒ niàn.
b. Tā zǒu de tài kuài, wǒ jiānzhí de gēnshāng ta.

334. xǔ  V: permit, allow, let

a. Tā xǔ wǒ qù, wǒ jiù qù, bùxǔ wǒ qù, wǒ jiù búqù.

335. guīju  N: customs, rules and regulations
335.1 yōuguīju  SV: be well disciplined, well mannered
335.2 ān guīju  VO: "according to custom"

336. duōshǎo V yǐjiānr  a little bit (more or less)
336.1 duōshǎo V jǐ  a little bit (more or less)

a. Wǒ duōshǎo dōng jiù yǐngwén.
b. Nǐ duōshǎo gěi ta diǎnr qián, jiù xíngle.

337. chá píào  VO: to punch tickets, to examine tickets
337.1 chá píào dè  N: conductor

338. kōng  SV: be empty, vacant
338.1 kōng zuòr  vacant seat
338.2 kōng fāng  vacant house
338.3 kōng wūzǐ  vacant room
338.4 kōng hēzì  empty box
338.5 kōnglé  it's become empty

a. Wǒ jiā le lítou, yījiān kōng wūzǐ dōu méiyǒu.
b. Tā mēige xiāngzi kōngzhe ne.

339. yùdèshī  V: there is plenty (of it)

a. Tā yùdèshī qián.
b. Yùdèshī hū shuō Zhōngguó huà de Měiguó rén.

340. zuòwèi (zuòr)  N: (M: -gè) seat
340.1 yǒu zuòr  there are seats
340.2 méi zuòr  there are no seats
340.3 dīng zuòr  to reserve a seat
341. jìèguāng  please excuse me, pardon me
   a. Jìèguāng, dào huǒchēzhàn cuò zěnme zǒu?
   b. Jìèguāng, jìèguāng, ràng wǒ guòqu.

III. Jūzì Gòuzào

1. Measures:

A measure must immediately follow a number with two exceptions:
(1) if there is no number appearing before the measure, the number yī is understood. It often appears in these forms:

  Following a specifier: zhěige (zhēiyīge), měitiān (měiyītiān), etc.
  Following a verb: Wǒ yǒu (yì) ge pénghao. Wǒ yào māi (yì)ben shū. Etc.

(2) A few stative verbs may be inserted between the number and the measure, the most frequently used ones being dà, xiǎo and zhēng:

  Yǐdàben (shū) sānxiāokuài (yǐzi) sǐzhèngzhǎng (zhǐ)

1.1 The general measure ge, is applicable to most nouns even when a more appropriate measure is available. Since things of different shape, nature, number, size, weight or volume require specific measures, they may have specific meanings:

  yīběn shū (a book)
  yītāo shū (a set of books)
  yīshuāng wàzi (a pair of socks)
  yīdá wàzi (a dozen pairs of socks)

Note that meaning is differentiated entirely by the measures. When a measure is used with one noun only or with a limited group of nouns, the noun itself is frequently omitted, since no confusion is likely to arise:

  Měisānběn wǒ dōu māile (definitely refers to books)
  Zuòtiān láile sānwěi (definitely refers to people)

1.2 The following table contains the most important specific measures already introduced and is printed here for a general review:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TERM</th>
<th>MEANING AND USE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BĀ</td>
<td>to grasp - M. of things that are grasped</td>
<td>yībā yīzi (a chair)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BĀO</td>
<td>to wrap - M. of things that are wrapped up</td>
<td>yībāo yān (a pack of cigarettes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BĒN</td>
<td>volume - M. of books; cf. tāo</td>
<td>yībēn shū (a book)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bū</td>
<td>section, class - M. of books</td>
<td>yībū shū (a literary work)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERM</td>
<td>MEANING AND USE</td>
<td>EXAMPLES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHǐ</td>
<td>foot (measure)</td>
<td>yǐchǐ bù (a foot of cloth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dá</td>
<td>dozen</td>
<td>yǐdá jǐdǎn (a dozen eggs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUō</td>
<td>cluster – M. of flowers</td>
<td>yǐduō huā (a flower)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIān</td>
<td>o’clock; hour</td>
<td>yǐdiān zhōng (one c’clock; one hour)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FĒN</td>
<td>minute; cent</td>
<td>yǐfēn zhōng (one minute)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FĒNG</td>
<td>seal up</td>
<td>yǐfēng xīn (a letter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gè</td>
<td>general measure</td>
<td>yǐge xiǎoháir (a child) etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GĒN</td>
<td>root, origin – M. for long slender things</td>
<td>yǐgēn yān (a cigarette)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hào</td>
<td>M. for room, house, telephone numbers, days of the month, hats, socks, shoes, clothing, etc.</td>
<td>yǐhào (No. 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hé</td>
<td>small box</td>
<td>yǐhè(r) táng (a box of candy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HUÍ</td>
<td>time, occasion</td>
<td>yǐhuí (once)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZHĀNG</td>
<td>M. for certain flat, sheet-like items</td>
<td>yǐzhāng zhǐ (a sheet of paper)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZHĪ</td>
<td>one of a pair; single – M. for birds, boats, certain animals, etc.</td>
<td>yǐzhī jī (a chicken)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZHONG</td>
<td>kind, sort</td>
<td>zhèizhǒng rén (this kind of people)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JIĀN</td>
<td>M. for rooms</td>
<td>wǔjiān wūzǐ (five rooms)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JIĀN</td>
<td>article</td>
<td>yǐjiān shì (a matter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERM</td>
<td>MEANING AND USE</td>
<td>EXAMPLES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jǜ</td>
<td>sentence</td>
<td>yǐjiàn xíngli (a luggage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐjiàn dòngxi (a thing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kè</td>
<td>M. for trees, plants</td>
<td>yǐkè huà (a sentence)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quarter hour</td>
<td>yǐkè shù (a tree)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kè</td>
<td>lesson</td>
<td>yǐkè zhōng (15 minutes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐkè (one lesson)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dǐyíkè (Lesson 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KUÀI</td>
<td>piece, lump — M. for anything dealt with in &quot;pieces&quot;</td>
<td>yǐkuài dì (a piece of land)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐkuài qián (a dollar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐkuài bù (a piece of cloth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lǐ</td>
<td>M. for Chinese lǐ (about 1/3 mile)</td>
<td>yǐlǐ (one lǐ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zǒu  yǐlǐ lù (walked one lǐ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIÀNG</td>
<td>M. for vehicles except airplanes</td>
<td>yǐliàng chē (a cart)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐliàng qīché (a motor car)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MÁO</td>
<td>dime — M. for ten cents</td>
<td>yǐmáo qián (ten cents)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MÈN</td>
<td>M. for school subjects, learning</td>
<td>yǐmén gōngkè (a school subject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐmén xuéwen (a learning)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIÁN</td>
<td>year</td>
<td>yǐnián (a year)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PÁN(ZI)</td>
<td>plate, dish</td>
<td>yǐpán cài (a plate of food)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHUÀNG</td>
<td>pair</td>
<td>yǐshuàng wàizi (a pair of socks or stockings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐshuàng xiē (a pair of shoes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐshuàng kuài zi (a pair of chopsticks)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUÌ</td>
<td>year of age</td>
<td>yǐshù (one year old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUŌ(r)</td>
<td>M. for house, building</td>
<td>yǐsuō(r) făngzì (a house)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐsuō(r) lōu (building)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TÀNG</td>
<td>time, occasion — M. for trips and those of buses, trains, etc.</td>
<td>yǐtàng qīché (a trip of buses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nǐ qǔguō jìtàng? (How many times have you been there?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TÀO</td>
<td>covering, set</td>
<td>yǐtáo shū (a set of books)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐtáo yǐshāng (a suit of clothes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CÌ</td>
<td>time, occasion</td>
<td>sāncì (three times)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIĀN</td>
<td>day</td>
<td>yǐtiān (a day)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TІÁO</td>
<td>strip, branch — M. for long, slender things; cf. gèn</td>
<td>yǐtiáo lù (a road)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐtiáo jiē (a street)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐtiáo hé (a river)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yǐtiáo yǔ (a fish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERM</td>
<td>MEANING AND USE</td>
<td>EXAMPLES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Wān | bowl           | yīwān fàn (a bowl of rice)  
yīwān shuǐ (a bowl of water) |
| Wèi | seat, position -  
polite M. for persons | yīwèi xiānshēng (a gentleman)  
yīwèi kèrén (a guest)  
yīwèi tài tāitai (a lady)  
yīwèi xiǎojie (a Miss) |
| Yáng | kind, sort    | liāngyāng(r) diānxīn (two kinds of refreshments)  
zhèiyāng(r) tiānqì (this kind of weather) |
| Yě  | night          | sān tiān sān yè (three days and nights) |
| Yīnglǐ | mile (lit. Eng. 1) | yī yīnglǐ (one mile) |

2. Reduplicated Measures:

A reduplicated measure (MM) has the meaning of "each M" (měiyī M). It often serves as a N or a TW before the V in a sentence, and with an inclusive adverb like dōu, quán, lāo or zòng:

Nèixiezhǎng zhūōzi, zhāngzhāng dōu shì wǒde.  
(Every one of those tables is mine.)

Tā tiāntiān zǒngshì hě hěn duō jiǔ  
(He drinks a lot everyday.)

Wǒ máide nèixie píngguǒ, gègè(r) quán shì huáide.  
(Every one of the apples I bought is rotten.)

Wǒmen niánnián lǎoshi dào wàiguó qù yīcì.  
(We go abroad once each year.)

3. Number-measures may be reduplicated too (NU-M NU-M). De is usually added at the end and the entire expression functions as an adverb. Each NU-M in the pair may be followed by a noun. The most frequently used NU is yī and the whole pattern means "one by one". When ěr, sān, etc. are used, then, of course, they mean "two by two", "three by three", etc.:

NU-M (N)  
Bié yīge(rén)yīge(rén) de qù.  
(Don't go there one by one.)

Wǒ shì yīge yuè yīge yuè de gěi fángqian.  
(I pay my room rent by the month.)

The N after the NU-M is often left out when the meaning is clear without it (as in the first illustration). If however, the meaning is not clear without the N, then it cannot be left out (as in the second one).
3.1 All the NU-M may be reduplicated in this manner, the frequency
of use of which depends on how common they are as number-
measures. Therefore, the common measures given in the list in
1.2 are all frequently used in this reduplicated NU-M(N)
pattern.

4. Exercise - Translate into English:

4.1 Measures of yān:
   a. Wǒ yīgèn yān dou buchōu.
   b. Tā tàièlè wūbào yān
   c. Sānhé yān ta dōu chōuănwānle.
   d. Zhēizhōng yān, wǒ buxīhuan.

4.2 Measures of huà:
   a. Wǒ jiǔ shuōle yīju huà.
   b. Wǒ gēn ta tānguo liāngcì huà.
   c. Shéi néng shuō wǔliúguó huà?
   d. Tā lǎo ài shuō nèizǐngōng huà.

4.3 Measures of chē:
   a. Sānliàng chē dōu huàile.
   b. Yídān yǒu suōwùtāng chē.
   c. Wǒ zuòle yīliănle chē.
   d. Nǐ zuò sāndiăn zhōng nèici chē ba.

4.4 Measures of wāzi:
   a. Wǒ mǎile liāngshuāng wāzi.
   b. Wǒ yízhī wāzi dōu méiyǒule.
   c. Wùdǐ wāzi cǎi shǐèrkuài qián.
   d. Tā gěile wo sānrǒ wāzi.

4.5 Measures of xīn:
   a. Tā láiguò yīcī xīn.
   b. Wǒ xiēle yīyiēde xīn.
   c. Nǐ jiēzhào jífēng xīn?
   d. Wǒ bùyuānyi kān zhēizhōng xīn.

4.6 Measures of yīshang:
   a. Wǒ děi mǎi yítāo yīshang.
   b. Zhèjiān yīshang hèn piányi.
   c. Wǒ jiū chuāngguō yīcī Zhōngguó yīshang.
   d. Qǐng nǐ bā zhèibào yīshang názuò.

4.7 Measures of jī:
   a. Wǒ mǎile liāngzhǐ jī.
   b. Zhēizhōng jī shì Déguo jī.
   c. Nǐ yīpánzi jī wōmēn dōu chīle.
   d. Tā mǎile yīniánle jī.

4.8 Measures of shū:
   a. Wǒ mǎile yībù shū.
   b. Tā kǎnle sānbèn shū.
c. Wǒ děi niǎn liǎngnián shǔ.  
d. Wǒ lián yidiǎnr shǔ dōu méiniǎnguò.

4.9 Measures of chǎizi:

a. Tā yǒu liǎngbǎ chǎizi.  
b. Zhè shì yītiào chǎizi.  
c. Zhè shì néiguō chǎizi?  
d. Wǒ yòngguo yīnián zhèizhòng chǎizi.

4.10 Measures of zhōng:

a. Xiàngzài shì sāndiān zhòng 1è.  
b. Wǒ mài le yīdà dà zhōng.  
c. Sānfēn zhōngde gōngfu jiù wǎn 1è.  
d. Wǒ jiu zài nǐge pǔzi mǎiguò yīcì zhōng.

5. Exercise II - Give an appropriate specific measure (not ge) to every noun and translate into English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jiāju</th>
<th>zhǐ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gōnggōng-qìchē</td>
<td>yǎnjìng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tān</td>
<td>xié</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiānsheng</td>
<td>kūzi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuàizi</td>
<td>xìngli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shūzì</td>
<td>shù</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niú</td>
<td>huār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huà</td>
<td>chuān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngkè</td>
<td>jiǎo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cài</td>
<td>huār</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Exercise III - Choose 10 measures from the table in 1.2 and make sentences using reduplicated M and NU-M(N) patterns:

IV. Fēiyǐn liànxí

1. "Nǐ bā nèige xiāngzǐ jiāoāi shèi le?" "jiāoāi jiāoāi le."  
2. "Dào Niǔyuē de tèbié-kūlàichè shènme shìhou kāi?" "Shìfèrdiǎnzhèng."  
3. "Dào Shànghǎi de èrdīng lǎihuǐpiào duōshào qián?" "Èrshìqǐkùài bān."  
4. "Nín zhèisānjian xìngli dōu guà pǎizi ma?" "Bù, zhèijìan wǒ zǐjǐ dài."  
5. "Jiāoāi, jiēguāng, piāofǎngr zài nàr?" "Nínde xiāngzǐ bǔyōng ren nà ma?"  
6. "Zhèr zhèn bùxǔ chōu yǎn ma?" "Duōle, zhè shì zhèrde guīju."  
7. "Nín duōshào zài chī yědiǎnr." "Bǔchīle, wǒ chībāole."  
8. "Lítou hái you kōngzuò ma?" "Chápiāole shuǐ yǒu."  
V. Wèntí

1. SF Xs. gei nàr dà diànhuà? Wèi shènme dà?
2. Huǒchē dao Shàoxiàn, yītian you jìcǐ? Dōu shì shènme shèihou kǎi?
   Xīngqìliàng gen xīngqìtiān de tèbié-kùàiché, shènme shèihou kǎi?
3. Tèbié-kùàiché zǒu jìge zhōngtōu? Shènme shèihou dào?
4. Chēpíào tòuděng duǒshao qián? Ērděng gen sānděng ne?
5. Láihuǐpíào bǐ liǎngge dānchēng piányi ma?
6. Sī Xs. shì nèitiān dào Shàoxiàn qùde? Jīdiǎn zhōng?
7. Chúzi bāngzhe ta zuò shènme shì?
8. Tā sānlúnr shì duǒshao qián gùde?
9. Sī Xs. jiào jiāohǎng le mèiyou? Jiāohǎng bāng tā zuò shènme?
   Jiāohǎng wén ta shènme?
10. Sī Xs. mǎide shì láihuǐpíào hái shì dānchēngpíào?
11. Sī Xs. zhīdào shì nèige zhàntái būzhīdào? Tā rènshì bùrènshi
    zhàntái zài nǎr?
12. Jiāohǎng xǔ shàng chē bǔxí?
    gěile ta duǒshao qian?
14. Chápíàoè shuō shènme?
15. Sī Xs. zhǎozhào zuòwèi méiyou? Zěnme zhǎozhàoè?
16. Sī Xs. gén chápíàoè shuō shènme?
17. Cóng zhèr dao Niǔyuè yītian yǒu jǐcǐ chē? Dōu shì shènme shèihou
    kǎi?
18. Zài Měiguó píngcháng huǒchē gén gōnggōng-qíchē, láihuǐpíào bǐ
    liǎngge dānchēngpíào piányi ma?
19. Jiāohǎng píngcháng dōu guǎn shènme shì?
20. Měiguóè huǒchē yě yǒu tòuděng Ērděng sānděng ma?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shènme?

1. Yàooshi nǐ yào wèn dào Niǔyuè qùde huǒchē, yītian jǐcǐ? Dōu
   shènme shèihou kǎi? Nǐ zěnme wèn?
2. Yàooshi nǐ gǔ sānlùnr dào huǒchēzhàn qu, nǐ zěnme shuō?
3. Yàooshi nǐ xiǎng dàdìng zài shènme dìfàng mǎi huǒchēpiào, nǐ shuō
   shènme?
4. 在火车站，你有没有想起一问某个人，哪几件工作你不能做，你有没有怎样的事情?

5. 在火车站，你有没有找到一般的动物的车厢上，跟某人讨论一般的事情?

VII. 合适
(on record)

VIII. 反映

1. 译成中文:

1.1 上周我搭了一辆特快列车去纽约。它没有在任何一个车站停车，只花了两个小时。

1.2 在英国，我通常坐二等舱。

1.3 我问了站务员，是否可以让他把你的手提箱放在马车里，但他告诉我那是他的工作。我很生气。

1.4 我只是想告诉你，你是否去或不在对我说。

1.5 我可以把你的手提箱转交给他吗，然后再送到你那里?

1.6 你是否要检查你的手提箱，还是随身携带?

1.7 你会买另外一张往返票给我吗? 机票办公室在月台外面。

1.8 他们太快了，我跟不上。

1.9 如果你开得太快，他能跟得上吗?

1.10 禁止吸烟。 (禁止吸烟。)

1.11 那个孩子有良好的举止。

1.12 检查员告诉我，这个车厢是空的，有很多座位。

1.13 你有空的房间吗?

1.14 我很乐意让你看一看。

1.15 原谅我，让我看看。

2. 译回中文:

(320) a. 我在那里待了整整三天。

(329) a. 你把钱交给谁了?
b. 我不打算再做任何关于这件事的事。

(330) a. 你的车是什么样的?
(332) a. What track is the Nanking train on?

(333) a. Will all of you please read after me.
    b. He walks too fast. I simply cannot catch up with him.

(334) a. If he'll allow me to go, I'll go; if not, I won't go.

(336) a. I understand a little bit of English—more or less.
    b. Give him a little money (more or less) and it will be all right.

(338) a. There isn't a single vacant room in my home.
    b. That box of his is empty.

(339) a. He has plenty of money.
    b. There are plenty of Americans who can speak Chinese.

(341) a. Pardon me, how do you go to get to the station?
    b. Excuse me, let me through.
**DISHIMÜKE – ZUÒ LĪBÀI**

I. Duìhuà

Sī Xì, zài Zhōngguó yìge xiǎo chénglǐ, zhǔle yìtiān. Tā zài nèr rěnshēde bùshāode Zhōngguó xiǎngxià rēn. Yòu yìtiān, tā gén yìge xiǎngxià rēn shuō:

**Sī:** Míngtiān shì xīngqītī. Jiàotánglǐ zuò lībài. Nǐ yè qù kānkàn hǎo bùhǎo?

**Xiāngxià rén:** Zuò lībài shì zěnme hūf shí?

**Sī:** Zhēngfēi hěn bùróngyì jiāng. Yīliǎngjù huà yě jiāngbùqīngchu. Nǐ míngtiān xiān qu kānkàn, kānwánle, wǒ zài gěi nǐ jiāng ba.

(Xīngqītīn zǎoshàng, jiàotánglǐ sānli huì, nèige xiǎngxià rén cóng jiàotánglǐ chūlái, jiù qu zhāo Sī Xīsī.)

**Sī:** Zěnmeyàng? Nǐ kānkàn zuò lībài le ba?


**Sī:** Nèige rén jǐu shì měishì. Nǐmén chǎngdå shì zànměishì. shì zānměi Shāngdǐ de yǐsì.

**Xiāngxià rén:** Wǒmén gāng chǎngguān, tài jīu jiāo wǒmén bā tóu dǐxià. Tā zhānzài nèr hǎoxiǎng bēishū shìdē shuòlè hǎoxiě huà. Tā nà shì zuò shènhme ne?

**Sī:** Nà būshì bēishū, nà shì qǐdāo.


**Sī:** Nèiwei měishì niānde shì shèngjiāng. Tā jiāngdè shì Yēsū Jīdūde dàoli, nà jiāo jiāngdào. Nǐ tīngdōngle yidiānr meiyòu?

**Xiāngxià rén:** Mèidōng dūóshāo. Suǒrán wǒ bùtài dōng, kěshì wǒ juéde nà lìtuó hěn zhēnqīng. Rèn yè dōu hěn hēqì. Tāmén hǎi gěile wǒ yīzhǎng hūr. Nǐn kānkàn.


Xiangxia ren: Zheigu shi hen youyi.

II. Shengzi Yongfa

342. zuo liibai VO: attend a religious service, go to church
a. Wo meilibaide duo dao nige jiulautang qu zuo liibai.

343. hui N: meeting
343.1 kai hui VO: open a meeting, hold a meeting

344. san V: disperse, break up, adjourn
344.1 san hui VO: adjourn a meeting

z. Zuoqian wanstarngde hui, shi shenme shihou sande?

345. man SV: to be full
345.1 zumanle RV: all seats are taken, (the room) is full
345.2 zhugangmanle RV: packed full

a. Wuizi ren duo manle.

346. mushi N: preacher, pastor, minister

347. zanmeishi N: hymnal, hymn
347.1 zanmei V: praise
347.2 shi N: poem, poetry (M: -shou)
347.3 chang zanmeishi VO: sing a hymn

348. Shangdi N: God (M: -wei)

a. Tamen chang zanmeishi, shi zanmei shangdi de yisi.

349. ditou VO: bow the head, lower the head.
349.1 dixia RV: bow down.


350. beshi VO: recite (a lesson); to memorize, to learn by heart

137
a. 学 wàiguó huà, běishǔ hěn yǒuyòng.

351. qídǎo  
V: pray

a. Qīng nǐ yòng Zhōngguó huà gěi wǒmen qídǎo.

352. xīn  
352.1 xīn jiào  
VO: accept a religion, adhere to a religion, be a Christian
352.2 xīn Jīdūjiào  
VO: be a Christian
352.3 xīn Yēsūjiào  
VO: be a Christian
352.4 xīn Tiānzhǔjiào  
VO: be a Catholic

a. Tāde huà wǒ bùxīn.

353. dǎkāi  
RV: open up

a. Qīng nǐmen bā shū dǎkāi.

354. xǐng  
354.1 jiào xǐng  
RV: awaken

a. Tā yǐjīng xǐngle.
b. Tā hái xíngzhe ne.
c. Tā ràng wǒ jìntiān zǎoshang jiào tā, wǒ jiào le tā bāntiān méi jiào xǐng.

355. chuān  
355.1 chuān jiào  
VO: propagate religion, to preach the gospel

a. Qīng nǐ bā zhēihēr tǎng chuān yīchuān.
b. Tā zài Zhōngguó chuān jiào.

356. chuānlái chuānqu  
356.1 zǒulái zǒuqū  
356.2 pǎolái pǎoqū  
356.3 shuōlái shuōqū  
356.4 kānlái kànqū  
356.5 shānglái xiàqū  
pass around
walk back and forth
run back and forth
discuss (the matter) back and forth
consider from one angle and another
go up and down

357. juān  
357.1 juān qián  
357.2 juāngéi  
357.3 gěi...juān qián  
357.4 gěn...juān qián  
V: give, donate, contribute
VO: donate money, raise money by donation
V: donate to
raise money for...
ask for contribution, solicit fund

b. Wǒmen xǐǎng gěi nèixié qiángrèn juān yīdiǎnr qián.
c. Tā yǒudeshì qián, gěn tā juān yīdiǎnr ba.

358. shèngjīng  
N: Holy Bible, the Scriptures, the Bible

359. dàolì  
359.1 yǒudàolì  
SV: be logical, reasonable
359.2 jiāngdǎo  
VO: to preach

a. Tā shuōde huà hěn yǒudàolì.

360. ānjǐng  
SV: be quiet

a. Qīng ānjǐng diǎnr!
361. fēn
361.1 fēn dōngxi  V: divide, separate, share
361.2 fēngēi wǒ wǔkuài qián  divide things
361.3 fēnkāi give me my five dollar share
R V: separate
a. Wǒ bā nèikuài tāng, fēngēi ta yīban

362. qiòng  N: poor people
362.1 qiòngrén  SV: be poor
a. Tā qiánliàngnián hěn qiòng.

363. kǔ V: bitter to the taste; be hard, difficult (of life)
363.1 chǐkǔ VO: suffer bitterly
a. Dàgài méi rén xǐhuān chǐ kǔ dōngxi.
b. Tā zhēliángnián, kǔjíle.
c. Nèige rén hěn něngchǐkǔ.

364. cónglái...(jiu) MA: heretofore, in the past
364.1 cónglái...méi... never before, never did
364.2 cónglái...bù... never before, never do
a. Wǒ cónglái méitǐngjiānguò tā chāng ger.

365. sǐ V: die
365.1 sǐrén N: dead person
365.2 dàsīlē RV: killed (by beating or a gun)
365.3 ěsīlē RV: die of hunger, starve (to death)
365.4 bīngsīlē RV: die of illness
b. Wǒmen kuài zhào yīge dǐfǎng chǐfān qu bā, wǒ jiānchíde yào ěsīlē.

366. huó SV: be alive, living
366.1 huózhē living
366.2 huóbùlǐáo RV: be unable to live
366.3 huóguolài RV: come to
a. Tā huózhēde shíhou, zú xǐhuān dào zhèr lái.
b. Zuòtian tāmén bā tā dāsīlē, hóulái tā yǒu huóguolái.

III. Jūzi Gōuzào

1. Descriptive Complement and Resultative Verb Compared:

We are accustomed to think of pāodekuài as an RV, kuài serving as the result of pāo and the whole combination referring to the capability of the actor in carrying out the action. In this case, it is customary to write all the syllables together, forming one RV expression:

Tā pāodekuài. (He can run fast.)

But kuài in this pattern may describe the manner or degree of the action pāo rather than its result. In this case, kuài is considered as a descriptive complement of pāo and is written separately:
The following sentence illustrates the different functions of *kuài* as an RVE and as descriptive complement:

Ren shuo ta tai dang, pao bukuai. Ni kan, ta pao de hen kuai.

(people say he's too fat and can't run fast. Look, he runs very fast.)

1.1 The two different functions of *kuài* can be seen more clearly in a negative statement. In a negative potential RV with *kuài* as the RVE, the form is the familiar *pao bukuai*; but when *kuài* serves as a descriptive complement, *de* must be added after the V, *pao de bukuai*:

Resultative Verb: Tā pāo bukuài. (He cannot run fast.)
Descriptive Complement: Tā pāo de bukuài. (He doesn't run fast.)

1.2 It is to our benefit to review the pattern of "describing the manner of an action", introduced in speak Chinese, which is the same as calling what comes after the V as a descriptive complement:

Tā xué Zhōng guo huà, xué de hěn kuài.
Tā de Zhōng guo huà, xué de hěn kuài.
Zhè ge shì qíng, nǐ zuò de bucuō.
Làotāitai zōuǐ, zōuǐ de hěn màn.

1.3 The Structure of the Descriptive Complement:

The descriptive complement describes the manner or extent of the main action (V) or the state (SV) preceding it:

Chīde wǒ zhàn buqī lài le.
(I ate so much that I could not stand up.)

Gāoxǐng de tā yǐ yǐ meishù jīào.
(He was excited to such an extent that he didn't sleep the whole night long.)

The descriptive complement may be just an SV (as illustrated in 1. and 1.1) or a clause—S-SV, S-RV, or S-V-O:

SV: Tā pāo de hěn kuài.
S-SV: Tā shuǐ de wǒmen lèi jīe.
S-RV: Lèi de wǒ zhàn buqī lài le.
S-V-O: Qǐde wǒ méi chī wǎnfān.

The important element in all these structures is the SV, V or RV; the S or O, or both, may be dropped when the meaning is clear without them.

1.4 Exercise – Translate into Chinese:

1.41 This tree cannot grow any taller.

1.42 He can write very well, but he doesn't want to.

1.43 These clothes are too small and can't be altered satisfactorily.

1.44 I don't think he can explain it clearly.
1.45 I think he explained it very clearly.

1.46 He sings beautifully.

1.47 Can we finish this book within a month? I think you can but he can't.

1.48 This table is sturdily made.

1.49 If you drive too slowly, it is just as bad as driving too fast.

1.50 I won't accept his invitation for supper, because I cannot get enough to eat in his house.

2. The Usage of Chúle:

Chúle or "chúle...yīwāi" means "except", "all but". Because of its exclusive meaning, an inclusive adverb, like dōu, quán, lāo and zōng, is generally used to refer to the rest of the things after an item has been singled out by chúle:

Chúle nèige (yīwāi), wǒ dōu xīhuan.
(I like all but that one.)

From the above illustration we can see that dōu is equivalent to "all" in the English translation, indicating the inclusiveness; and chúle is equivalent to "but", singling out nèige (that one).

2.1 Chúle in the double clause "chúle...(yīwāi), ...lìngwāi..." means "besides", "in addition to". The adverb hái is generally used in this structure to stress the idea of "still", "further" besides the item referred to by chúle:

Chúle zhèige biāo (yīwāi), wǒ lìngwāi hái you yīge.
(Besides this watch, I still have another one.)

2.2 Exercise – Translate into Chinese:

2.21 Besides the silver watch I bought for her, she still wants a gold one.

2.22 I like all of my courses except history.

2.23 In addition to these five hundred dollars, he still wants to borrow five hundred more.

2.24 Nobody knows how to do it except him.

2.25 In addition to these three Protestant churches, we have two Catholic churches.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxié

1. "Jǐntiān zuò lǐbài, shì shéi jiāngdào?" "Shì Chén Mushì, nǐ rènshī ma?"

2. "Zuòtiān kāi hú nǐmèn zuò shénme le?" "Wǒmen shāngliàng juān qián de shìqīng."
3. "Nǐ yē xīn Tiānzhǔjiàor ma?" "Wǒ shènme jiào dou bùxìn."
5. "Nǐ jǐntian zàoshang shènme shìhou xīngde?" "Tā wùdiān zhōng jiū bā wo jiàoxīngle."
6. "Nǐ tiāntiān shènme shìhou qǐdǎo?" "Chángháng shì zài shūjǐào yīqián."
7. "Zài jiàotānglǐ nǐ wèi shènme zǔdài hòutou?" "Qiàntou dou zǔdǎněnle."
8. "Nǐ yīngdāng bā juān de qián, fēnggei ta yìbàn." "Wǒ yào fēnggei ta, kōushi ta bùyào."
10. "Zuǒtiān nèige fēijī chūshī, sìle jīge rén?" "Wūge rén. Yīge dou méihuò."

V. Wèntí

1. Sǐ Xs. zài nèige xiǎo chéngli zhùle meizhù? Tā zài nèr rènshíle shènme rén le?
2. Yǒu yìtiān tā gen yīge xiǎngxià rén shuō shènme? Nèige xiǎngxià rén dōng budōng ta shuōde huá? Tā gěi nèige xiǎngxià rén jiàngle meiyī? Wéi shènme?
3. Xīngqītiān zàoshang nèige xiǎngxià rén dào jiàotāng qùle meiyī? Sānlié huí yīhòu, tā dào shènme dīfang qule?
4. Nèige xiǎngxià rén jǐnlè jiàotāng, zǔdài shènme dīfang le? Wéi shènme méizǔdài qìántou?
5. Tāishangde rén shì shènme rén? Tāmen chǎngde shì shènme?
6. Tāishangde nèige rén xiǎng bǐlishū shìde shuōle hǎoxiě huá, nà shì zǔo shènme ne?
8. Nèige xiǎngxià rén shuō jiàotānglǐ zěnmeyàng? Jiàotānglǐde rén zěnmeyàng?
9. Nèi xiǎngxià rén zhīdào bu zhīdào nèizhāng huār shì shènme yǐsì?
10. Nǐ xiǎng nèizhāng huārshāng dou huàzhē shènme? Yǒu jīge rén?
12. Nèige xiǎo ěrzi yǒu yìtiān qǐng ta fūqīn zǔo shènme?
13. Tā dào shènme dīfang qule? Hòulái ta wèi shènme huīlái?
14. Tā huīlái yīhòu, gen ta fūqīn shūdō shènme?
15. Tā fūqīn kānjīan ta huīlái, jiào yònggèn zǔo shènme? Tā dá ěrzi gen ta fūqīn shuō shènme? Tā fūqīn shuō shènme?
16. Shénme shì zuò lǐbāi? Zuò lǐbāi de shíhou dou zuò shénme shì?
17. Shénme shì zànmeǐshi? Shénme shì qǐdǎo? Shénme shì jiǎngdào?
18. Nǐ xīn shénme jiǎo? Shì jǐdūjiào hǎishi Tiānzǔjǐjiào?
19. Nǐ měicì zuò lǐbāi de shíhou dou juān qián ma? Juān duōshào?
20. Yībāikuài qián, sāngè rèn fēn, fēndekǎi fēnbükǎi? Yīge rèn dàgāi fēn duōshào?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?
1. Yàoshì yǒu rèn wèn nǐ, zuò lǐbāi shì zěnme huì shì, nǐ gěn ta shuō shénme?
2. Yàoshì yǒu rèn wèn nǐ, wèi shénme yào chǎng zànmeǐshi, nǐ shuō shénme?
3. Nǐ bǎ zuò lǐbāi zuòde shìqìng, shuōshuō.
4. Nǐ néng bǎ huàrshàng nèige gūshì shuōshuo ma?
5. Nǐ néng bǎ nèige bǐfangde yǐsì jiǎngjiǎng ma?

VII. Běishǔ
A: Hěnjīu méijiān, jǐnlái zěnme yàng?
B: Hài, yǒuyídīnr bushūfu.
A: zěnmele?
B: Shāngfēng, hǎojìtiān le.
A: Tòuteng ba.
B: Bù, kěshì kěsōude hěn lǐhài.
A: Dēi liú diǎnr shěn. Chǐ yào le méiyou?
B: Chǐle. Wǒ xiànzài dào yǐyuàn qu kānkàn.
A: Duòle. Nǐn kuài qù ba.
B: Hǎo, zàijiān ba.

VIII. Fānyī
1. Translate into Chinese:
   1.1 Some people go to church every week; some only go twice a year.
   1.2 Since there are too many people attending service in that church, they need a bigger church.
1.3 When did the meeting adjourn?
1.4 This sheet of paper is full; let's have another one.
1.5 Every seat in that church was taken this morning.
1.6 That minister likes to preach very much, especially to us country people.
1.7 Now let's sing some hymns, number fifty-two, first.
1.8 God is right in our hearts.
1.9 Let's bow our heads and pray.
1.10 Can you recite some lines from the Bible?
1.11 What is your religion?
1.12 If you don't believe it, go and try it yourself.
1.13 Please open the Bible.
1.14 Last night when the thief came, I had gone to bed but I was still awake.
1.15 When I really fall sound asleep, nobody can wake me up.
1.16 He has been preaching the gospel in China for more than twenty years.
1.17 She said it over and over again, but I couldn't understand what she meant.
1.18 I just ask you to give me my due share.
1.19 During that war, quite a few people were killed.
1.20 When he was alive, he contributed a lot of money to that church.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(342) a. I go to that church to attend the service there every Sunday.
(344) a. When did the meeting adjourn last night?
(345) a. The room is full of people,
   b. Every seat in the room is taken.
(348) a. The purpose of singing hymns is to praise God.
(349) a. This door is too low. You cannot pass through if you don't lower your head.
(350) a. Memorization is very useful in learning foreign languages.
(351) a. Please pray for us in Chinese.
(352) a. I don't believe what he says.
(353) a. Please open your books.

(354) a. He has already wakened.
   b. He is still awake.
   c. He asked me to wake him this morning. I tried for a long
      time, but did not succeed.

(355) a. Please pass this box of candy around.
   b. He is preaching the gospel in China.

(357) a. They are planning to ask him to contribute a thousand
       dollars to the school, but they don't know whether he will
       or not.
   b. We want to raise some money for those poor people.
   c. He has a lot of money. Let's ask him to contribute.

(359) a. What he said was very logical.

(360) a. Quiet down, please!

(361) a. I gave him half of that candy.

(362) a. He was very poor for the last couple of years.

(363) a. Probably there is nobody who likes to eat things that
       taste bitter.
   b. He's had a hard time these last few years.
   c. That man can endure a great deal of suffering.

(364) a. I have never heard him sing before.

(365) a. The airplane had an accident yesterday. More than twenty
       persons were killed.
   b. Let's find a place to eat, quickly. I'm starved!

(366) a. When he was alive, he liked very much to come here.
   b. They killed him yesterday, afterward he came to again.
DISHILIÛKE - CÄNGUÂN XUEXIÀO

I. DULHÚÀ

SI Xs., xiàng qu cänguân yige zhōngxué. Tā zhídào Zhào Zīăn Xs., rènshì nèige xiàozhǎng. Tā jiù qu zhào Zhào Xs., qǐng Zhào Xs. gěi ta xiě yìfēng jièshāoxīn. Tā jiànzhào Zhào Xs. shuō:

SI: Āi, Zīăn, hěn jiǔ méijiàn.

Zhào: Nǐn hǎo a? Shénme shíhou huílái?


Zhào: Dāngrán kèyì. Nǐn nèitiān qù? Yàooburán wǒ gēn nǐn yīkuǎir qu, hǎo bhūhǎo?


(Guōle liàngtian SI Xs. dàole Xīngguō-Zhōngxuéde mēnfángr, bā tāde piānzi gen jièshāoxīn náchulai, gēn mēnfángrìde rèn shuō:)


Mēnfángr: Qǐng nǐn děng yíhuír, wǒ gěi kānkàn qu.

(Mēnfángr náizhe piānzi gen xīn, jīnquè, yíhuír jiù chūlai, shuō:)

Mēnfángr: Qǐng nǐn jǐnlài ba.

(Dàole kētīngli.)

Mēnfángr: Nǐn xiān qǐngzuò ba. Xiàozhǎng yíhuír jiù lái.

(Yìwèi shìshīduōsulde nánrén, dàizhe yǎnjǐngr jìnle kētīng, jiù xiàozhe gēn SI Xs. láshǒu.)

Xiàozhǎng: Nǐn shì Sīmǐzī Xs. ba, wǒ shì Chén zōngghǎn.


Xiàozhǎng: Nǐn dào Zhōngguō duō jiǔāle?

SI: Chābuduō bànniándì le.

Xiàozhǎng: Nǐn gēn Zīăn shì zài Měiguó rènshìde ma?
SÌ:  Kè bushì ma! Wǒmen rènshi shìjìnián le. Lǎo péngyou.

Xiǎozhǎng: TĀ hǎo ba.

SÌ:  Hěn hǎo, tā jiào wo tì ta wèn nǐn hǎo.

Xiǎozhǎng: Xièxiè. Zěnmeyàng? Nǐ shì yào kǎnkan shàngkède qíngxìng, shì bushì?

SÌ:  Dūle. Yīnwei wǒ tǐngshūò nǐn duì bàn xuéxiào, yǒu yǒu yànjiù, yǒu yǒu jīngyàn....

Xiǎozhǎng: Guòjiāng.

SÌ:  Suǒyì lái cānguāncānguān, gèn nǐn xuéxué.


SÌ:  Xiànzǎi yǒu duōshào xuéshèng?


SÌ:  Dōu zhùxíào ma?


SÌ:  Yǒu duōshào wèiti ē jiāoyuàn?

Xiǎozhǎng: Yǒu shìliùwěi.

SÌ:  Nǐn zherde gōngkè dōu yǒu shěnme?


SÌ:  Yǐnián fēn jīge xuéqì?


SÌ:  Méitiān zǎoshàng jídian zhōng shàngkè?


SÌ:  Xiànzǎi shàngkè ne ma?

Xiǎozhǎng: Shàngkè ne. Wǒmen qu kānkan qu ba.

SÌ:  Hǎojǐle.
II. Shēngzǐ Yòngfǎ

367. cānguān  V: pay a visit to (a public place)
inspect informally, go sightseeing

a. Tā chūqu cānguān xuéxiào qule.

368. zhǎng  N: head (of an organization)
368.1 shèngzhǎng  N: governor of a province
368.2 xiānzhǎng  N: magistrate of a county
368.3 xiāozhǎng  N: principal of a school, president of a
college
368.4 chuánzhǎng  N: captain (of a boat)
368.5 jūzhǎng  N: the one in charge of the office, as
-yōuzhengjú jūzhǎng - postmaster

369. jièshāoxìn  N: letter of introduction

370. qǐ  V: ask, beg
370.1 qǐ rén  VO: ask for help
370.2 qǐ...diǎnr shì  ask a favor

a. Wǒ qǐ nǐn diǎnr shì.
b. Néiben shū wǒ qǐ ta tì wǒ mái lé.

371. ménfāngr  N: gatekeeper's room, gatekeeper
372. piānzì  N: card, calling card (M: -zhǎng)

373. yǎnjīng(r)  eye glasses (M: -fà, set)
373.1 dài yǎnjīng(r)  VO: wear glasses

374. lā  VO: pull
374.1 lāshǒu  VO: shake hands
374.2 lāguolai  RV: pull over
374.3 lāshànglai  RV: pull up
374.4 lāxiàqu  RV: pull down

a. Tā jiànzhào wǒ, jiù liè kuòlai gěn wǒ lāshǒu.

375. jīngyànn  N: experience
375.1 yǒujīngyànn  VO/SV: be experienced

a. Tā dui zhèiyàngde shìqìng jīngyànn hěn duō.

376. lǐshǐ  N: history

a. Zhōngguó yǒu wǒqìwēnínde lǐshǐ.

377. bān  M/N: class (the group of students or the
period of class)

377.1 shàngbān  VO: go to class; go to work
377.2 xiàbān  VO: class is dismissed; office hours are
over
377.3 zhèibān  this class
377.4 liàngbān  two classes

a. Tā zài bānsì shàngcháng shūjīào.
b. Zhēge xuéxiào yǒu jībān xuéshēng?
378. chūzhōng N: junior high (abbr. of 378.1)
378.1 chūjīzhōngxué N: junior high school
378.2 chūzhōngyī (niánjì) N: first year of junior high

379. gāozhōng N: senior high (abbr. of 379.1)
379.1 gāojīzhōngxué N: senior high school
379.2 gāozhōngsān (niánjì) N: third year of senior high

380. kèshì N: class room

381. -táng BF/M: hall/class period
381.1 (dà) lìtáng N: auditorium
381.2 kètáng N: class room
381.3 jiǎngtáng N: class room

a. Wǒ jīntiān shàngwū yǒu sāntáng kě.

382. fēijìchǎng N: air field
382.1 -chǎng BF: field

383. yùndòng N: exercise
383.1 yùndòngchǎng N: athletic field

384. -guǎn N: hall, building
384.1 tǐyuàn N: gymnasium
384.2 tǔshùguǎn N: library

385. -bèi M: times, -fold

386. -fēnzhǐ- M: pattern for fractions
386.1 sānfēnzhǐ N: one third
386.2 jīfēnzhǐ N: what fraction?

387. zhùxiào VO: live in the school

388. sūshè N: dormitory

389. jiàoyuàn N: teacher (M: -wèi)

390. gōngkèbǐnǎo N: schedule of day's classes

391. dìlǐ N: geography

392. xuéqī N/M: semester, term
392.1 zhēnxuéqī this term
392.2 shāngxuéqī last term
392.3 xià xuéqī next term
392.4 sān'ge xuéqī three terms

393. jià N: vacation
393.1 chūnjìà N: spring vacation
393.2 shǔjià N: summer vacation
393.3 hánjià N: winter vacation
393.4 bǐngjià N: sick leave
393.5 qǐng jià VO: ask leave
393.6 fāng jià VO: close school for a vacation, to have a vacation

393.7 fāng sāntiān jià have three days vacation

a. Nǐmen fāng jītiān jià?
b. Shūjià kuài dāole.
III. Jìzi Gōuzào

1. Multiples and Fractions:

In English we use such expressions as:

twice as much  half again as large as
three times as much as  one-fifth larger than
fourfold  fifty percent wider
half as long as  one and a half times the size of

In Chinese these all fall into the pattern of comparison with measured degree. A secondary pattern, much less used than the comparison pattern, is sometimes met. It is known as the equality pattern.

1.1 Comparison Pattern with Measured Degree Based on Bǐ:

Tāde fāngzi bǐ wǒde (fāngzi) dà yībāi.
Zhēige hōngde bǐ nèige lǎnde guī yībān.
Zhēitiǎo lǜ bǐ nèitiǎo lǜ chāng sānliànshíyī.

NOTE: běi indicates the number of times or fold;
bān is the fraction half but follows the pattern of běi
(and is sometimes used in the sense of běi, making
the expression guī yībān ambiguous).
X-fēnzhī-Y is the formula for a fraction when preceded by
an appropriate denominator and followed by a
numerator.

1.2 Equality Pattern Based on Yǒu or Shí:

Zhēige wūzi shì nèige(wūzi) de sānbāi.
Zhēige wūzi yǒu nèige(wūzi de) sānbāi (neme dà).

1.3 Exercise I - Make sentences in Chinese, using the following SV
in the two patterns introduced above:

yuǎn cháng kuài duō hǎo dà guī
ejīn duān mǎn shǎo huài xiǎo pián yí

1.4 Exercise II - Translate into Chinese:

1.41 I have only half as much as he has.
1.42 Mine is fifty percent larger than his.
1.43 This building is three times as tall as that one.
1.44 There are more men than women in this town. The women are
only nine-tenths as many as the men.
1.45 He drives twice as fast as I do.
1.46 His house is one and a half times the size of mine.
1.47 He spent about three times as much as I did.
1.48 This one is one-fifth shorter than the other.
1.49 He only spends one-fourth of the time I do in studying.
1.50 This tree is about two-thirds as tall as that one.
2. Prestated Topic of a Sentence:

The basic pattern in both Chinese and English is S-V-O. In Chinese there is often added to these a prested topic. In English, we may say, "as to such-and-such a matter, I am wholeheartedly in favor of it." "As to" here introduces a prested topic. In Chinese, however, no introductory "as to" is required. Moreover, this prested topic may be (1) identical with the subject, (2) identical with the object or (3) the possessor of the subject. A prested topic may be set off from the rest of the sentence by a comma to indicate that it in no way affects the structure of the statement that follows:

(1) Wǒ zhěige pénghòu, tā bùhuì shuō Yīngwén.

(2) Hē jīu de nèige rén, wǒ bùxǐhuan tā.

(3) Wǒ, (zuòtiān) qǐchē chū – shí le.

In (3) both wǒ and qǐchē may be considered as the subject by interpreting it as wǒ de qǐchē. Since an MA, like zuòtiān, may be inserted between wǒ and qǐchē, wǒ, although still the possessor of qǐchē, may also be considered as a prested topic.

2.1 Exercise – Translate into Chinese:

2.11 With so little money, it will all be gone after the groceries and house rent are paid for.
2.12 Of these pictures, I like this one the most.
2.13 The one who gave me a car is very wealthy.
2.14 As to the well-to-dos, they don't want to donate; as to the poor, they cannot afford to donate anything.
2.15 I don't understand a word of what he said.
2.16 As to the teachers in the school, none of them dislikes you.
2.17 As to that man! He wants everything.
2.18 Speaking about the school he visited, everyone wants to study there.
2.19 As to all my friends, I didn't give them anything.
2.20 Although he sold the house for $5000, he spent it all within a month.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxiá

2. "Zhāng Xs. wén nǐn hào." "Nǐn jiānzhào ta yě tī wǒ wén tī hào."
3. "Nèi wèi jiàoyuàn shì jiào chūzhōng shì jiào gāozhōng?" "Chūzhōng, kěshì wǒ bùzhīdào ta jiào nèibān."
4. "Zhěige xuéxiào yǒu tīyuèguǎn meiyòu?" "Méiyòu tīyuèguǎn, kěshì yǒu yùndòngchāng."
5. "Nǐ zhèixuéqǐ zhǔxiào ma?" "Búzhù. Sùshè tāi luàn."
6. "Wǒ kānkàn gōngkèbiāo, jídian zhōng shàng bān?" "Dàgài shì bādiǎn bān."
7. "Xiàozhǎng zài dālǐtáng zú shènme ne?" "Gēn jiàoyuán tān huà ne."
8. "Zhèixuéqǐ nǐ jiào díli ma?" "Měijiāo díli, jiāole yìmén lǐshǐ."
9. "Nǐmen xuéxiào shènme shìhòu fāng shǔjì?" "Dàgài shì lìyùè, wǒ shǔbùqīngchù."
10. "Wǒ xiǎng míngtian qǐng yìtian jià, kěyǐ bùkèyǐ?" "Yàooshi nǐ yào yàojīn de shì jiù kěyǐ." 

V. Wēntí

1. Sī Xs. wèi shènme qu zhǎo Zhào Xs.?
2. Sī Xs. xiǎng qǐng Zhào Xs. bāng ta yìdiǎnr mǎng, tā shì zěnme gen Zhào Xs. shūduō?
3. Sī Xs. zěnme zhīdào Zhào Xs. rènshì Chén Xiàozhǎng?
4. Wèi shènme Sī Xs. bùràng Zhào Xs. gen ta yìkuāir qù?
5. Sī Xs. dǎole xuéxiào de ménfángr gen ménfángr lìde ren zěnme shūduō?
6. Chén Xiàozhǎng shènme yàngr? Tā jǐnle kētīng zúo shènme shì?
7. Sī Xs. Gen Chén xiàozhǎng shuō wèi shènme ta yào cānguǎn nèige xuéxiào?
8. Nèige xuéxiāòde lǐshǐ yǒu duōshaonián le? Tāmen you duōshaobān xuéshēng? Chūzhōng jībān, gǎozhōng jībān?
9. Nèige xuéxiào dōu yǒu shènme fāngzi? Yǒu sùshè meiyǒu?
10. Tāmen you duōshào xuéshēng? Bǐ liàngnián qǐqián duō duōshào?
11. Yǒu duōshào xuéshēng zhǔxiào? Zhǔxiāòde xuéshēng shì suǒyǒude xuéshēngde jīfēnzhějì?
12. Yǒu duōshào xuéshēng zài xuéxiāolǐ chī wǔfàn?
13. Tāmen yǒu duōshāowèi jiàoyuán? Tāmen duō yǒu shènme gōngkè?
15. Tāmen měitiān shènme shíhou shàng kě? Shènme shíhou xià kě? Gōngkèbǐlǎoshang shì zěnme xīduo?
16. Měiguóde zhōngxué fēn chūzhōng gǎozhōng bùfēn? Chūzhōng jǐnlián?
17. Měiguóde zhōngxué zú yàojīn de gōngkè dōu shì shènme?


VI. Nǐ shuō shénme?
1. Yàoshi nǐ qù kàn nǐde péngyou, dào le mènfāngr, nǐ gēn mènfāngr lǐde rén shuō shénme?

2. Yàoshi nǐ dào yíge xuěxiào qu cānguān, zài cānguān yìqíán, nǐ gēn xiàozhǎng shuō shénme?

3. Nǐ kànjiàn nǐde péngyou, xiǎng dātǐng yíge biéde péngyoude qíngxìng, nǐ shuō shénme?

4. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng gàosong nǐ xuěxiàode qíngxìng, nǐ shuō shénme?

5. Yàoshi yǒurén wèn ni, yìtiān shàng jīge zhōngtōude kě, nǐ zěnme shuō?

VII. Gùshi
(on record)

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 May I ask a favor of you?

1.2 May I ask you to write a letter of introduction?

1.3 This teacher is experienced in teaching history in junior high.

1.4 This is an old high school, but this library is new.

1.5 When are you coming back from work?

1.6 The class will end at ten past ten o'clock.

1.7 Those students are all in the first year of senior high.

1.8 The dormitory is big enough for every teacher and student to live at the school.

1.9 How many courses does that teacher teach?

1.10 After he finished his speech, the principal of the school shook hands with everybody.

1.11 What does the principal look like? Does he wear glasses?

1.12 He has been a freshman for three terms.
1.13 When will the spring vacation begin at your school?
1.14 We are going to have three days vacation.
1.15 Tomorrow is a holiday.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(367) a. He went out to visit a school.

(370) a. May I ask a favor of you?
   b. I have asked him to buy that book for me.

(374) a. As soon as he saw me, he came over and shook hands with me.

(375) a. His experience in this kind of things is quite extensive.

(376) a. China has a history of five thousand years.

(377) a. He often sleeps in class.
   b. How many classes are there in this school?

(381) a. I have three classes (or periods) this morning.

(393) a. How many days vacation do you have?
   b. Summer vacation will soon be here.
DISHIQIKE - CANGUAN SHANGKE

I. Duihuale

SI Xs. qu canguan xuexiao. Chen Xiaozhang daizhe ta dao yige keshi kanankan shangke de qingxing.

Xiaozhang:

SI:
Na jiu hao doulie.
(Tamen dao le keshili, zuo zai houtou.)

Jiaoyuan:

Zhang:
(zhanqilai) "I don't...(a)...know whether...(a)...I...(a)...will go or not."

Jiaoyuan:
(Nianle jici yihou.)

Jiaoyuan:
Li Youcai, ni jiezhe nian dierj.
(Li youcai zhanqilai, zhanle liangfen zheng, manmanrde shuou.)

Li:
Xiaosheng, zhuo tian wangshang wo youyidianrin touteng. Nimen liuxiade gongke, wo meiyubei, zhedie dianganzi nian shenme? Wo buzhidao zemen nian.

Jiaoyuan:
Disange zi shi "whether".

Li:
"No matter wesen....."

Jiaoyuan:
Budul. Ni tingzhe, wo gei ni ga. Ni genzhao wo shuo: "Whether".

Li:
"wheser."

Jiaoyuan:
"No matter whether."
"Whether."

Duele, wàng xià niàn.

No matter...(a)...whether...(a)...he will...(a)...go or not, I...(zhèige zhèige), will stay here.

Nǐ dōng zhāi jù huà zěnme jiāng ma? Nǐ nèng huídá ma? Nǐ nèng bā zhāi jù huà, fānchēng Zhōngwén ma?

Wǒ xiàng wǒ nèng fān. Nà yìsi shì bushì "Wùlùn nǐ qù buqū, wǒ fānzhēng būqū."


(Lǐ Yōucái zhànzài nèr, bàn tiān méishuō huà.)


(Sī Xs. gen Xiàozhāng jīu chūlái. Zài lǐngwài yīge kēshìjì, yìwèi liáo xiānshēng jiāng Tángshí. Yǒu sìshíjì yuē xùshēng tíng, hēbǎnshàng xīezhē "jù tòu wàng míng yuè, dì tòu shì gù xiàng" shìgé dà zì. Xiàozhāng gen Sī Xs. zhànzài hòutou.)

Lǎo xiānshēng: Zhèi liǎngju shì shì Lǐ Bái zuòde. Nǐmen yǒu rěn huí jiāng ma?

(Xūshēng dōu bùshuō huà.)


(Yǒu yīge xùshēng jǔshǒu.)


Lão xiǎnshēng: Búcūn.
(Sí Xs. gen Chén Xiǎozhāng m'ànmànrde zòuchulàile.)

Si: Zhèìweì lǎo xiǎnshēng jiāngde hěn yǒùyǐ.
Xiǎozhāng: Zhèìweì xiǎnshēng dùì jiāng Tángshī fēicháng yǒu yán jiù. Qǐng nǐn dào wǒmen tǔshūguǎn qu kànkan ba.
Si: Hǎojíle.

II. Shēngzì Yòngfǎ

394. yuè...yuè... A: the more...the more...
394.1 yuè chǐ yuè pàng the more you eat, the fatter you are
394.2 yuè xiě yuè kuài the more you write, the faster you get

a. Yuè xué yuè duō, yuè duō yuè róngyì wàng.

395. yuèlái yuè... A: getting more and more...
395.1 yuè lái yuè nán getting more and more difficult
395.2 yuè lái yuè zàògǎo getting worse and worse

a. Nèige rèn yuè lái yuè qíguài.

396. bānfx A: method of doing, way to do something
396.1 méiyǒu bānfx VO: there is no way out
396.2 xiǎng bānfx VO: to think of a way

a. Zhèìjiān shì, nǐ děi tì wǒ xiǎng yīge bānfǎ.

397. liūshēngjī N: phonograph
397.1 kāi liūshēngjī VO: play the phonograph

398. piānzi N: record, film
398.1 tīng piānzi VO: listen to record
398.2 liūshēngjī piānzi N: phonograph record

399. yè M: page
399.1 diyīye the first page

400. fāyìn VO/N: pronounce/pronunciation
a. Tā zhèìge zì fāyìn fàde bùduì.

401. zìrán SV/A: be natural/of course, naturally
401.1 nà shì zìrán IE: Naturally!

a. Tāde huà shuōde hěn zìrán.
b. Nǐ bùgēi ta qǐán, zìrán ta bùgēi ni zuò.

402. dàì(zhe) V: lead
a. Qǐng nǐn dàizhe wǒmen qǐdǎo.
b. Xiǎnshēng dàizhe wǒ niánle sāncl.
c. Qǐng nǐn dài wo qu kànkan.

403. jiēzhe A: continuing, going on, or tying in where one left off when interrupted.

157
403.1 jíezhè nián  continue reading
403.2 jíezhè shuō  continue speaking
403.3 jíezhè xǐě  continue writing

a. Tāde gūshì, zuòtiān méishùowàn; jǐntiān hái yào jíezhè shuō.

404. fānbié  N: difference
404.1 yǒu fānbié  there is a difference
404.2 fānbié hěn dà  the difference is considerable
404.3 fānbié zài zhèr  the difference is right here

a. Zhèi liǎngge zì yǒu hěn dà de fānbié.

405. chūlái  RVE: make out, distinguish
405.1 kāncūlái  RV: make out (seeing)
405.2 wěncūlái  RV: make out (smelling)
405.3 chǎngchúlái  RV: make out (tasting)
405.4 chǐchúlái  RV: make out (tasting)
405.5 tīngchúlái  RV: make out (hearing)

406. huídá  V: answer

a. Tā jiào wò huídá, kěshì wǒ huídábūchúlái.

407. fān(yì)  V/N: translate/translation; translator
407.1 fānyì shū  VO: translate books.

408. chéng  V: become
408.1 fāncchéng  RVE: (change) into
408.2 fāncchéng Zhōngwén  RV-O: translate into Chinese
408.3 zuōchénghěng  RV: accomplish

a. Jǐniàn bújiàn, tā chénggě le rén le.
b. Qǐng nǐ bā zhějiù huà fāncchéng Yīngwén.
c. Tāde yǐshàng zoócchénghěng ma?

409. liànxi  V/N: practice
409.1 zuò liànxi  VO: do exercise

a. Xué shū wáiguó huà, liànxiè jīhui yuè duō yuè hǎo.
b. Tā Zhōngguó huà méixuéhǎo, shí yīngwéi liànxi bùgòu.

410. wènxi  V: review

a. Wǒmen zhēgè xǐngqǐ wènxi, méiyǒu xīn gǒngkē.

411. kǎo  V: examine, take an examination
411.1 kǎo shū  VO: examine, take an examination
411.2 kǎoshǐ  V: examine, take an examination
411.3 kǎoshí  N: examination

a. Wǒmen shénmé shíhou kǎoshǐ?
b. Tā zhéccí kǎoshǐ, kǎode búcūô.

412. wèntí  N: question, problem
412.1 huídá wèntí  VO: answer a question
412.2 méi wèntí  IE: there is no problem

413. Tángshī  N: T'ang(dynasty) poetry (M. shōu)
414. hēibǎn  N: blackboard (M: -kuài)
415. Lǐ Bāi  N: Li Po (one of the most celebrated poets of the T'ang Dynasty)
416. jǔ  V: raise
416.1 jǔshǒu  VO: raise one's hand
416.2 jǔqílài  RV: raise up
   a. Shéi hūi, qǐng jǔshǒu.
   b. Zhēige dōngxi wǒ yīzhī shǒu jǔbuqílái.
417. tǎitóu  VO: lift up one's head, raise up one's head
   a. Nǐ bā tóu tǎiqílái. (Táiqí tóu lai.)
   b. Wǒ tǎitóu yǐkān, wàitóu xià xuě le.
418. yuèliàng  N: moon
419. xiāngqílái  RV: recall, think of
   419.1 xiāngqí lǎojiā laile  recall my old home
   419.2 xiāngqí tā shuōde laile  recall what he said
   419.3 xiāngqí yìqiān de shǐqíng laile  recall old times
   a. Tā yǐshuō yào xué Yīngwén, wǒ jiù xiāngqí nǐ laile.

III. Jūzǐ Gōuzào

1. NU-M as a predicate:
Sometimes a NU-M alone may serve as predicate without a verb:
   Tā sānsù le. (He is three years old.)
   Wǔkuài qiān yìběn. (Five dollars per book.)

One explanation is that the verb is understood (since a verb may be supplied).
   Tā (yǒu) sānsù (nème dà) le.
   Wǔkuài qiān (mǎi) yìběn.

Another explanation is that a NU-M used in this way functions as a verb. The fact is that a NU-M is often used as a full predicate.

1.1 The subject or topic of the NU-M predicate is not necessarily a noun. It may be an S-V-O:

   Tā dǎo Zhōngguó sānnián le.
   Wǒ lǐkài Rìběn yīge yùè le.
   Tā jié - hūn cái yīge lǐbāi.

1.2 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.21 This book costs five dollars.
1.22 How old are all your children?
1.23 How much (money) for each of us?
1.24 He has been graduated from college for five years already.
1.25 I have had this pen for more than ten years and I am still using it.
1.26 I have been here for more than six months.
1.27 He arrived here an hour ago.
1.28 He finished singing only ten minutes ago.
1.29 It has been only two years since he left school.
1.30 This tree has been here for ten and a half years.

2. Action-time Relationship:

When a time-spent expression is used in a sentence, it is sometimes not clear whether it refers to the period of time during which the action has been continuous or to the period of time that has elapsed since the action. The context generally can clarify the ambiguity.

2.1 Action-time relations often appear in one of these patterns:

2.11 Tā chī le yī ge zhōngtòu le.
(He has been eating for an hour.—continuous action)
(He finished eating an hour ago.—elapsed time)

2.12 Huā huán séngtàn le.
(The flower became red three days ago.—elapsed time)

2.13 Wǒ xué Zhōngwén xué le wǔ ge yuè le.
(I have been studying Chinese for five months.—continuous action) (rarely elapsed time)

2.14 Néizhāng huà, tā huà le yī tiān le.
(He has been painting that picture for a whole day.—continuous action)
(He finished painting that picture a day ago.—elapsed time)

2.15 Tā niánle sāngé lǐbāide Fǎwén.
(He studied French for three weeks.—continuous action)

2.16 Tā jié hūn yī nián le.
(He was married a year ago.—elapsed time)
2.2 Exercise—Translate into Chinese:

2.21 He has left China for more than three years.
2.22 He has been talking about leaving China for more than three years.
2.23 He has recovered a week ago.
2.24 He has been well for a week.
2.25 I have been teaching for one year already.
2.26 It has been one year already since I taught him.
2.27 He has been writing that book for half a year.
2.28 He wrote that book a year ago.
2.29 He graduated from college a year ago.
2.30 The wedding lasted four hours.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxi

1. "Nèiběn shū nǐ wěi shènmé měikànwǎn?"  "Yuè kàn yuè méiyìsī."
2. "Zhěi liangtiān nèijian shìqīng zènmeiyàng?"  "Yuè lāi yuè bǔhǎobān."
3. "Nèige zì nǐde fāyīn bùdā gāngchù."  "Dúle. Qīng nǐ dàiızhe wo shuō jìcì."
4. "Nèiběn shū nǐ kànle duōshao yè le?"  "Gāng kànle ǒrshìduōyě, mǐngtiān zài jiēzhe kān."
5. "Zhěi liāngju huà yòu shènmé fēnbìe?"  "Měi shènmé dà fēnbíe."  
6. "Nǐ nèng bā zhèjiū huà fānchēng Rìwèn ma?"  "Wǒ yěxǔ néng fān, kěshì bùyìdīng dū."
7. "Nǐde fāyīn bǔdí, dàgài shì měi gōngfù liànxi ba."  "Bǔshí měi gōngfù liànxi, měi liànxi jìu shíle."
8. "Mǐngtiān kǎoshì, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshāng děi wènxí ba."  "Nǐ shì zìrán, Bǎiwènxí bǔxíng."
"Xiānzāi wàngle shì shíshíluò?"  "Bǔshí wàngle, shì xiāngbùqídáile."
10. "Hēibānshàngde zì shéi kànbugāngchù, jūshǒu."  "Xiānshēng, dìwúyī zǐ shì shènmé?"

V. Wèntí

1. Chéng Xiàozhāng dàiızhe Sǐ Xs. cānguān shànggède qīngxīng, tāmēn xiān kàn nèibān? Nèibān yòu duōshao xuèshèng? Wěi shènmé nèibān yòu nème duō xuèshèng?
2. Chéng Xiàozhāng juéde yībān yǐngdǎng bǔyìngdǎng yòu nème duō xuèshèng? Tāměn xuèshèng xiālé bān zènme liànxi?
3. Jiǎo Yíngwēn de jiāoyuán jiāo xuèshèng zuò shènmé? Jiăoyuán shuō nèige xuèshèng de fāyīn zènmeiyàng?
4. Nèiwei jiăoyuán jiăo Lǐ Yǒucāi niăn, Lǐ Yǒucāi shuō shènmé?
5. Lǐ yǒucāi dōng bùdōng nèijū Yíngwēn shì shènmé yīsī? Tā néng bā nèijū fānchēng Zhōngwēn ma? Nèijū huà shì shènmé yīsī?

161
6. Lǐ Yǔcái bǎ nèijū huà fānwwánle, jiàoyuán yǒu jiào ta zuò shénme? Tā hui buhui?


8. Chén Xiàozhāng gèn Sī Xs. chūlai yǐhū, yǒu qù cānguān shěnme kè?

9. Zài nièige kěshìli yǒu duòshào xuěshēng? Hēibǎnshăng xiǎizhe shěnme?

10. Lǎo xiānshēng shuō nèi liǎngju shí shì shèi zuòde? Xuěshēng yǒurén hùl jiāng má?


12. Lǎo xiānshēng shuō xiànnǎi rèn shuǒde huà gen shīlidé huà yǒu meiyōu fēnbǐé?

13. Xiànnǎi rèn shuō "jū" shì shěnme yǐsi? "jūtōu" shì shěnme yǐsi? "Dītōu" gèn xiànnǎi shuō dītōu de yǐsi yǐfang buyǐyang?

14. Lǎo xiānshēng shuō Zhāng Míngcháng jiāngdē dui budul?

15. Sī Xs. shuō nèiwei lǎo xiānshēng jiāngde zěnme yàng? Chén Xiàozhāng shuō nèiwei lǎo xiānshēng jiāng Tāngshī jiāngdē zěnme yàng?

16. Jiǎo Yīngwēn zǔnhǎo yǐbān yǒu duòshào xuěshēng?

17. Xuě Yīngwēn yǒng liǔshēngji tīng piānzi, yǒuyòng meiyōu?

18. Zhōngguó xuěshēng xuě Yīngwēn, shěnme dīfang zuò nán? Shěnme zhī fāyīn zuò nán?


20. Qīng nǐ bā nèi liǎngju shī fānchēng Yīngwēn.

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shěnme?

1. Zài kěshìli, yàoshi xiānshēng shuǒde huà nǐ mèitiēngqīngchu, nǐ xiǎng wèn, nǐ zěnme wèn?

2. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng qīng xiānshēng dàièzhe nǐ liānxì fāyīn, nǐ zěnme gèn xiānshēng shuō?

3. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu wènti xiǎng wèn xiānshēng, nǐ zěnme wèn?

4. Yàoshi yǒude zì nǐ bùhūl jiāng, nǐ zěnme qīng xiānshēng gěi nǐ jiāng?

5. Yàoshi yǒu yīge zì nǐ bùrènshì, nǐ zěnme wèn?

VII. Běishí

A: Zhèitáng nǐ yǒu kě meiyōu?

B: Yǒu. Jīntiān shǎngwǔ sìtáng. Nǐ ne?
B: Jīntiān hái yǒu jītáng?
A: Xiǎwù hái you yǐtáng. Nǐ shénme shǐhou xià kě?
B: Shìèndiǎnbàn xiàle kě jiù méi kě le.
A: Sāndiān zhōng dào wo nèr qu hē diǎnr chá, zěnmeyàng?
B: Hǎo. Jiù nènde bàn.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:
   1.1 The more you pay him money the more he will drink.
   1.2 Since he came here, my headache has been getting worse and worse.
   1.3 In case I lose it I'll have to think of another way.
   1.4 His translation is all right, but the way he talks is not very natural. He needs more practice, I guess.
   1.5 I will read it first; all of you follow me.
   1.6 I will go on with the story tomorrow.
   1.7 What is the difference between these two methods?
   1.8 There is considerable difference between these two kinds of tea. Can you distinguish it.
   1.9 Can you translate this sentence into Russian?
   1.10 You haven't had enough practice and review. That's what you need most. Don't you think so?
   1.11 We are going to review this week, and have an examination next week. Our vacation begins Friday.
   1.12 He did very poorly in this examination.
   1.13 Which of you have finished the first question? Please raise your hands.
   1.14 After the prayer, everybody raised his head.
   1.15 When I saw the moon, I recalled my old home.

2. Translate back into Chinese:
   (394) a. The more you study, the more you know; the more you know, the easier you forget.
   (395) a. That man is getting more and more peculiar.
   (396) a. You've got to find me a solution for this problem.
(400) a. He pronounced this word incorrectly.
(401) a. He speaks very naturally.
    b. If you don't pay him naturally he won't do it.
(402) a. Will you please lead us in prayer.
    b. I read it after the teacher three times.
(403) a. He didn't finish his story yesterday, and he will go on with it today.
(404) a. There is a whole lot of difference between these two words.
(406) a. He asked me to answer it, but I couldn't.
(408) a. I haven't seen him for a few years, and he has become an adult.
    b. Please translate this sentence into English.
    c. Are his clothes finished?
(409) a. In learning a foreign language, the more opportunity for practice the better.
    b. His Chinese is poor, because he hasn't had enough practice.
(410) a. This week we'll review. There will be no new lessons.
(411) a. When is our examination?
    b. He did very well in this examination.
(416) a. Whoever knows the answer please raise his hand.
    b. I cannot raise this thing with one hand.
(417) a. Please raise your head.
    b. When I raised my head and looked, it was snowing outside.
(419) a. As soon as he said he wanted to learn English, I thought of you.
DISHIBAKE – KÀNBÌNG

I. Dàihuà

SI: Si Xs. juède yōuyìdīnr būshūfu. Tā dào yīge yīyuàn qu zhāo dàifū gēi ta kànkan. Tā dào le yīyuàn měnkǒur, gēn yīge rén dàtīng.

Sī: Qīngwèn, zài shènme dìfāng guànhào?


Sī: Kànjiānle. Làojiā, lǎojiā.

(Sī Xs. dào le lǐtou, kànjiān chuānghu qiántou yǒu hěn duō rén. Tā jiù zhǎn zài hōutou dēngzhě. Dēngzhède shíhòu, tā gēn yīge bīngrén, Zhāng Xs., shuō:)

Sī: Nǐn guìxīng?

Zhāng: Xìng Zhāng. Nǐn guìxīng?

Sī: Xìng Sī. Nǐn shì lái kànbing de ma?

Zhāng: Kě bushī ma! Yā téng.

Sī: Nǐn dào zhěr láiguò ma?


Sī: Zài zhèige yīyuàn kànbing, shǒuxū máfan bùmàfàn?

Zhāng: Máfan dàoshi bùmàfan, guāle hào jiù qu jiān dàifū, būguò bīngrén tài duō, děi dēngzhě. Jiù shì dānluò gōngfù. (Sī Xs. kànjiān chuānghu qiántou měi rén le.)

Sī: Nǐn qu guānhāo ba. Gāi nǐn le.

(Zhāng Xs. guāle hào, shuō:)


(Sī Xs. dào le chuānghu qiántou.)

Guànhāochú: Nǐn láiguò meiyǒu?

Sī: Meiláiguò, zhè shì shí diyīcì.

Guànhāochú: Shì nièikē, shì wèikē?
ST: Nêikê.

Guànhàochù: Nín shì guà pùtōnghào, háishì guà tèbiéhào?

ST: Yòu shènme fènbie?

Guànhàochù: Pùtōnghào yìkuai qián, tèbiéhào wùkuai qián. Guà pùtōnghào de rèn duō, déi duō děng yīhuír.

ST: Dùō děng yīhuír bùyāojǐn, wǒ fǎnzhèng méi shì. Wǒ guà pùtōnghào ba.

Guànhàochù: Yìkuai qián. Nín bǎ zhèzhàng bǐng tītiān yítiān.

(ST Xs. bǎ bǐng tiānzhǎo, jiàògei guànhàochù, yòu gēi yìkuai qián. Guànhàochù gēi tā yīge pàizi.)


ST: Hǎo. Xièxiè.

(ST Xs. dàole èrbāi–wǔshíhào, bǎ guànhàode páizi gēi hūshì kànle kàn.)

Hūshì: Nín qīng zuòxià děng yīhuír ba.

(Dēngle bāngē zhāngtōu.)


(ST Xs. jiù dào dàifùde wūzǐlǐ qúle.)

Mǎ: Nín shì Sīmǐzhī Xs. ba? Qīngzuò ba. Zěnmele?


Mǎ: Hǎo. Wǒ gěi nǐn kànkan.

(Mǎ dāifu gēi Sī Xs. tīngle tīng, shīle shī wèndūbìǎo.)

Mǎ: Nǐn kě bukē?

ST: Kě. zhōng xiāng hē shuí.


ST: Wǒ xiāng wǒ xiān zhào yīzhǎng X–guāngde xiāngpiānr, qǐng nǐn kàn yīkàn, yāoshí hǎi kānbǔchūlái, wǒ xiānxīngqǐ zài lái zhùyuàn. Būzhǐdào xīng bǔxīng?

Mǎ: Hǎo ba, zhǎngshì wǒ xiān gěi nǐn kǎi yīge yàofāngr, nǐn dào yàofānglì mái yìdiǎnr zhēige yào, shì yānmiàn, shūlǐjiào yìqiān chī. (Bǎ yàofāngr jiǎogēi Sī Xs.) Nǐn qīng dào
sāncéng liù sānbǐ-bǐshí-sīhào, qu zhào yìzhāng xiàng. Xiàxǐngqǐ nín zài lái kānkăn ba.

ST: Hǎo ba, xièxiè nín, zàijiān.

II. Shěngzǐ Yōngfǔ

420. yǐyuàn N: hospital
421. zhǐzhe V: pointing
421.1 zhǐ V: point
422. chù BF: place, office, point feature
        M: (for dīfang) specifies localization
422.1 guàhãochù N: registration (desk, window, etc.)
422.2 chūchū N: everywhere
422.3 hàochu N: good point, benefit
422.4 huǎichú N: bad point
422.5 chóngchú N: strong point (of people)
422.6 duānchú N: shortcoming (of people)
422.7 nánchù N: difficulty
422.8 yǒngchú N: use, usage

a. Niànnshǐ yǒu hěn duōde hǎochu.

423. kē N: department
423.1 yákē N: dental department
423.2 yǎnkē N: optical department
423.3 ěrbīhǒukē N: ear, nose, throat department
423.4 nèikē N: medical department
423.5 wàikē N: surgical department

424. shěnzài SV: be real, honest
        A: really, actually
424.1 shěnzài shuō N: tell you the honest truth
424.2 shuō shěnzài N: tell you the honest truth

425. shǒuxu N: procedure, process

426. dānwu V: to delay, waste (cf. fèi)
426.1 dānwu gōngfu N: waste time, take time
426.2 dānwu shíhou N: waste time, take time
426.3 dānwu shǐqíng N: delay a business affair

a. Wōmen zài qīchēzhàn děng chē, dānwù le hěn duóde shíhou.

427. gěi AV: it is fitting that, should
427.1 gěi shéi? V: whose turn?
427.2 gěi zōule V: its time to go

a. Jīntiān gěi nǐ qùle, mǐngtiān gěi shéi?

428. pǔtōng SV: ordinary, common (cf. píngcháng)
        A: ordinarily
428.1 pǔtōng huà N: common speech

a. Zhèjiù huà, pǔtōng bùzhèmē shuō.

429. biǎo N: chart, blank, form (M: -zhāng)
430. tiān
430.1 tiān bǐng

V: fill in
VO: fill in a form

431. cèng
431.1 sāncèng lóu
431.2 dìwǔcèng

M: story (for lóu)
third floor, three stories
fifth floor

a. Zhèige lóu yǒu sāncèng.
b. Tā zhùzài sāncèng lóu.

432. hūshì

N: nurse (M: -wèi)

433. jǐnlái

A: recently

a. Nǐ jǐnlái kànjiàn ta meiyou?

434. kùn

SV: be sleepy

435. yuǎngù

N: reason

436. mèng
436.1 zuò mèng
436.2 mèngjiān

N: dream
VO: dream
RV: dreamed about, see...in a dream

a. Wǒ zuòtiān yěli zuòle yige mèng, mèngjiān tā sīle.

437. kě

BF: prefixed to verb with much the meaning
of the English -able, -ible

437.1 kěxiào
437.2 kěpà
437.3 kěnèng
437.4 kěquè dǐfāng
437.5 méi shénme kěshūde

SV: be laughable
SV: be productive of fear
SV/A/N: possible/possibly/possibility
places one can go to
nothing that can be said

a. Nàige rén zhēn kěpà.

438. xià
438.1 xiàhuàile
438.2 xiàshìle
438.3 xià yítiāo

V: startle, frighten
RV: scared to pieces
RV: scared to death
startled

a. Tā láile, xiàle wǒ yítiāo.

439. hàn
439.1 chūhàn

N: sweat
VO: sweat, perspire

a. Tā chūle yǐtóu hàn.

440. jiǎnhchá
440.1 jiǎnhchá bǐng
440.2 jiǎnhchá xǐnglì

V: examine
be examined (for a disease)
inspect baggage

a. Nǐ děi zhǎo dàifu, gěi nǐ jiǎnhchá jiǎnhchá.

441. kě

SV: be thirsty

442. zhǎo xiàng
442.1 xiàngpiānr
442.2 zhǎoxiàngjī

VO: take a picture, be photographed
N: photograph
N: camera

a. Wǒ gěi nín zhǎo yīzhāng xiàng ba?
b. Tā zhāode zhěizhāng xiàng bùcuò.
c. Nǐn xīhuàn zhǎo xiàng me?
III. Jūzi Gōuzào

1. Ambiguity of Languages:

In the Chinese language, there is no inflection of nouns for number or case, no inflection of verbs for person, number, tense, mood or voice. Hence the Chinese language is simple in form, but this very virtue of simplicity is accompanied by the evil of ambiguity.

1.1 English is simpler than French and is therefore more ambiguous than the latter. Civilization has trained us to assume friendly intent on the part of a friend when he asks, "May I have you for supper?" and not even to suspect him of cannibal intention. Nevertheless, there is ambiguity inherent in the question.

1.2 Four ambiguous expressions have been chosen from what we have learned for further clarification. Where there is a choice of expressions the student should use the clearest forms, although he should be able to understand the ambiguous ones from their context because people do use them.

1.21 zū fáng:

"Wǒ zúle yìsuǒr fáng" may mean,
(I rented a house)—as a tenant, or
(I rented out a house)—as a landlord.

This sentence usually means renting a house by a tenant. For a landlord planning to rent out a house, it is best to say:

Wǒ zūchu yìsuǒr fáng qu; or
Wǒ bā yìsuǒr fáng zūchuqule; or
Wǒ zūgei (so and so) yìsuǒr fáng.

1.22 zhào xiàng:

"Wǒ zhàole yìzhǎng xiàng? may mean
(I took a picture) or
(I had my picture taken.)
It is much clearer to add a few words and say:

Wǒ gěi ta zhàole yìzhǎng xiāng.
(I took a picture for him.)

Wǒ qǐng ta gěi wǒ zhàole yìzhǎng xiāng.
(I asked him to take a picture for me.)

1.23 Kàn bìng:

Kàn bìng is ambiguous. When the actor is the doctor, it means to diagnose a disease, to attend a patient or to practice medicine. When the actor is the patient, it means to see a doctor:

"Wǒ míngtiān yào qù kàn bìng" may mean
(Tomorrow I am going out to see a patient.) or
(Tomorrow I am going out to see a doctor.)

In order to avoid ambiguity, it is best to say "qǐng dàifu gěi wǒ kàn bìng" for seeing a doctor, thus limiting the actor of kàn bìng to be the doctor only.

1.24 juān qián:

This VO may mean to contribute money or to ask somebody else to contribute money:

"Wǒ juānle yībǎikuài qián" may mean
(I contributed $100) or
(I got a $100 contribution—for some organization.)

To express the idea of contributing, it is best to say juāngéi such and such organization for how much:

Wǒ juāngéi jiàohuhū yībǎikuài qián.

To express the idea of collecting contributions, it is best to use the following forms:

Wǒ gěi jiàohuhū juānle yībǎikuài qián.
Wǒ tī jiàohuhū juānle yībǎikuài qián.

1.3 Exercise I - Translate into English:

1.31 Zuòtiān wǒ zhàole yìzhǎng xiāng, yě bùzhīdào zhàode hǎo buhāo.
Tāmen shuō jǐntiān jiào wǒ qu kàn yǎngzi. Yàoshi wǒ bùxǐhuān, tāmen zài gěi wò zhāo.

1.32 Nǐde fāngzi zàihǎole meiyǒu? Yàoshi tāmen hái méigěi dīngqiān ne, wǒ yǒu yīge pēngyou xiāng qu kǎnkàn, bùzhīdào xīng bùxīng?


1.34 Zhèi jìtiān zǒng tōutèng. Yě bùzhīdào shì shènme bīng.
Sūyì wǒ xiāng zhúhào shì zǎo yǐdiǎnr kǎnkàn qu.

1.35 Zuòtiān zài gōngyuánlǐ, xiǎoháizi yào zhàoxiāng. Wǒ bùràng ta zhāo; tā jiu kūlé. Wǒde xīn zhàoxiāngjī, wǒ pà ta gěi wò nǒnghuàile.


1.4 Exercise II - Make sentences with zǔ fánɡ, zhào xiànɡ, kàn bǐng and juān qǐán, trying to avoid the possibility of ambiguity.

2. Some More Bā Construction:

The bā construction has been discussed in Lesson 12. Two more points are worthy of note.

2.1 It has been said (Lesson 12, Part III, 1.4) that in a bā construction, the main verb must be followed by a complement of some sort. In addition to the five types mentioned, the complement may be the descriptive type with de added after the main verb, (discussed in Lesson 15). The subject of a descriptive complement may be moved to a position in front of the main verb by means of a bā:

Descriptive complement: Shuōde wǒmen lèíjié.

The bā construction: Bā wǒmen shuōde lèíjié.

2.2 In Lesson 12 we learned that in a sentence using the bā construction an RVE may follow the main verb as a complement. When the RVE is an RV itself like shànglái, xiānqū, it is possible to insert a place between the double-syllable RVE:

Bā zhuōzǐ bānshānɡ lǒu qu.

2.3 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.31 I was so tired that I could not speak a word.
2.32 He stared at me and made me feel embarrassed.
2.33 Please take this book back home.
2.34 He rowed my boat to the other side of the river.
2.35 He talked so long that I almost fell asleep.

171
2.36 May I drive your car up to the top of the mountain?
2.37 Look! He is flying the plane into that cloud.
2.38 I read so much that my eyes hurt.
2.39 The weather is so hot that everybody is too lazy to work.
2.40 They moved the table into the room.

IV. Fàyīn Liànxí
1. "Nèige yīyuàn shènme kě zul hǎo?" "Wǒ xiǎngh wàikē zui hǎo. Yǎnkē yě búcù."  
2. "Zài zhèr kàn bìng yǒu shènme shǒuxú?" "Nǐ děi dao guàhàochù xiǎn tiān yízhāng biǎo."  
3. "Tā shǐzai huì shuō huà." "Zhè shì tāde chāngchu, yě shì tāde duānchū."  
4. "Wǒ jǐnlǐ cháng xīntiāo, bùzhīdào shì shènme yuánghu?" "Qīng dàifu gěi nǐ jiānxīa jīnchā ba."  
7. "Wǒ zuòtiān wǎnshāng zuòle yīge mèng. Nǐ zhīdào wǒ mèngjiàn shènme le ma?" "Nǐ yǐdīng mèngjiàn máile yīge zhāòxiàng?"  
8. "Nǐ zěnme zhīdào ta bìngqī?" "Lǎo bǐ gàosong wǒ de. Tā yīshūō, xiāle wǒ yītiāo."  
10. "Mǎi ēnmīnyáoz zěnme māi?" "Nǐ deǐ yào dàifu gěi nǐ kǎi yīge yáofāngr."  

V. Wèntí
1. Sī Xi. wèi shěnme yāo dào yīyuàn qu? Tā dàole yīyuàn měnkǒu zhīdào buzhīdào nǐ shì guàhàochù?  
2. Tā gěn rèn dàqǐng guàhàochù zài nǐ ér nèige rèn zěnme gàosong ta? Shuō shènme?  
3. Sī Xi. dēngzhe guàhàode shǐhòu, pèngjiān shéi le? Nèige rèn yǒu shènme bǐng? Nèige rèn dào nèige yīyuàn quguo jǐcǐ le?  
5. Guàhàochùlìde rèn wèn Sī Xi. shènme huà? Sī Xi. gěn ta shuō shènme?

172
6. Zài nêige yīyuànli, guà pūtōnghào gen guà tèbìéhào yǒu shènme fēnbié?

7. Guānhàoode shíhou you shènme shǒuxu?


9. Sī Xi, kànjiān hùshǐ, gēn hùshǐ shuò shènme? Tā dēngle duō jì?

10. Sī Xi, gēn dàifu shuò tā juédì zènme bùshūfū? Shuljidāo shuíde zènmeiyàng? Hái zènme bùshūfū?

11. Tā wèi shènme yào qǐng dàifu gěi ta jiānchá?

12. Dàifu tǐngdechūlai tīngbūchūlái tāde bǐng shì shènme bǐng? Gěi ta shì wèndūbǐào le meiyòu?

13. Tā kě bùkě? Fāshāo méifāshāo?

14. Dàifu shuò děi zènme jiānchá? Sī Xi, yào zènme jiānchá?

15. Dàifu gěi ta kāile yīge yàoqǐnghū, nêige yào shì shènme yào? Nêige yào zài shènme difang mǎi? Shènme shíhou chǐ?

16. Dàifu ràng Sī Xi, dao shènme difang qu zhàoxiàng? Ràng ta shènme shíhou zài lǎi?

17. Nǐ shí bùshì měiniān dōu dào yīyuàn qu jiānchá yīcì? Nǐ qu jiāncháde shíhou dào nèikě qu jiānchá?

18. Zài měiguìde yīyuànli kànbing shǒuxu máfàn bùmáfàn? Yǒu meiyòu pūtōnghào gen tèbìéhào de fēnbié?

19. Yīyuànli de hùshǐ dōu guǎn shènme shì? Tāmen hù kànbing bùhuì? Tāmen yě guǎn kǎi yàoqǐnghū ma?

20. Nǐ zuòguo meizuòguo kěpàde měng?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shènme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ zài yīge yīyuàn mènkōu xiǎng wèn zài nàr guānhào, nǐ zènme wèn?

2. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng zhídào, kànbing yǒu shènme shǒuxu, nǐ zènme wèn?

3. Dàole guānhàochédu chuánghu qiántou, nǐ yào guānhào, nǐ zènme wèn?

4. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng zhídào, wèi shènme guà tèbìéhào bǐ guà pūtōnghào guí, nǐ zènme shuò?

5. Yàoshi nǐ yōu yídàinan shǎngfēng, yào qǐng dàifu gěi ni kǎnkan, nǐ zènme gèn dàifu shuò?

VII. Gùshì

(on record)
1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 What is the benefit in doing that?
1.2 What are his bad points? Can you name any?
1.3 What is the procedure for getting a job in that hospital?
1.4 I wrote it as soon as you told me to; I didn't waste any time.
1.5 It's my turn to fill in the form, not yours.
1.6 Ordinarily he doesn't like to take pictures.
1.7 If you see her too often, I am sure you will dream of her.
1.8 That's impossible; that was just a dream.
1.9 When he heard this he was scared.
1.10 The weather is terribly hot; everybody is perspiring.
1.11 How did Dr. Ma examine you?
1.12 I haven't had my picture taken for years. I am going to ask him to take one.
1.13 May I have my picture taken with you?
1.14 The nurse said that I might need to have an X-ray taken, but the doctor said that it wasn't necessary.
1.15 The drugstore wouldn't let me have sleeping pills without a prescription.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(422) a. There is much benefit in studying.
    b. This word is really too difficult.
(424) a. He is a very honest fellow.
    b. We wasted a lot of time waiting at the bus station.
    c. It's your turn to go today. Whose turn is it tomorrow?
(428) a. We don't ordinarily say it this way.
(431) a. This building is three stories high.
    b. He lives on the third floor.
(433) a. Have you seen him recently?
(436) a. I had a dream last night and dreamt that he had died.
(437) a. That man is certainly to be feared.
(438) a. He came and startled me.
(439) a. He broke into a heavy sweat.

(440) a. You must go to a doctor and get a physical examination.

(442) a. Let me take a picture or you
   b. This picture he took is not bad.
   c. Do you like to take pictures? (or) Do you like to have your picture taken?

(445) a. Please write a prescription for me.
DISHIJIÜKE – CHŪQU WÀNR

I. Dùnhuà


Zhào Xs: Gōngyuán yǒu shěnme yǐsì? Hái būrú qu tīng xī hūoshì kǎn diānyīngr ne.


Zhào Xs: Dào něige gōngyuán qu ne?


Zhào Xs: Hái yǒu shěnme dīfang kěqù? Yāobùrán, wǒmén dài hǎizi dào bówùguān qu kǎnkǎn ba. Zài bówùguānli hǎizi kěyì dé hǎoxì zhīshì. Nǐ yǐweí zěnmeyàng?


Zhào Xs: Yǐndōngyǐndōng yě hǎo. Wǒ hěnjiū mèiyǐndōnggē.

Zhào Tt: Nǐ kǎnkān. Yǐge rèn zǒng zài wūzǐ bǐyǐndōng, nà zěnmē chéng ne?

Zhào Xs: Bùzhídào Sī Xs. hào le mèiyǒu?

Zhào Tt: Sī Xs. mèiyǒu shěnme dà bīng. Tā nà shì yǐnweí tiāntiān zài wūzǐ zōu. Yǐdiǎnr yǐndōng dōu mèiyǒu. Yǐoshī tā cháng
chūqu zǒuzou, wǒ gǎn bǎoxiān tǎde bìng yìdǐng hěn kuài jiu hǎole. Nǐ kuài qu dà diànhuà qu ba.

Zhào Xs: Hǎo. Wǒ wènwen tāmen yǒu gōngfu meiyou?


Zhào Xs: Nǐ lǐoshi zhèyáng shuō huài. Tāmen yàoshi yǒu yàojīngde shǐqíng ne?


(Zhào Xs. yǐju huà yě méizài shuō, jiu qu dà diànhuà qule.)

Zhào: Wài, nǐn shì Sī Xs. ma?

Sī: Duōle, nǐn shì Zǐān ma?

Zhào: Nǐn zěnmé zhīdào?

Sī: Wǒ tīngdechūlái. Zheī liàngtiān zěnmeyàng?

Zhào: Hěn hǎo. Nǐn shěntì hǎo diǎnr le ba?


Zhào: Jǐntiān tiānqi hěn hǎo. Wǒ nèirén gēn wǒ yào qǐng nǐn gēn wǒmen yǐkuāir dào gōngyuán qu yècān. Būzhīdào nǐn nèng qu bùnèng?


Zhào: Hǎo ba. Wǒ děng nǐnde diànhuà ba.


(Zhào Xs. gěi Zhāng Xs. dà diànhuà.)

Zhào: Wài, nǐn shì Zhāng Xs. ma?

Zhāng: Duōle. Nǐn něiwěi?

Zhào: Zǐān ne.

Zhāng: Ó, Zhào Xs. Hǎo ba. Nǐn yǒu shēnmé shì ma?


(Guòle yihuǐr —)

Zhāng: Wǎi, chéng, wǒmen néng qù. Zài nàr jiān ne?


II. Shēngzhí Yòngfǎ

448. gōngyuán  N: park
448.1 yuánzi  N: garden (M: -ge); theater (M: -jiā)
448.2 Zhōngyōng gōngyuán  N: Central Park
448.3 huāyuánzi(huāyuánr)  N: garden
448.4 cāiyuánzi  N: vegetable garden
448.5 xǐyuánzi  N: opera house, theater
448.6 diànyíngyuánzi  N: Movie theater
448.7 dōngwǔyuán  N: Zoo

449. yǒulǐ  VO/SV: logical, reasonable
a. Tī shuōde hěn yǒulǐ.

450. zhīhǎo  A: the best thing is to..., the only thing to do is...
   a. Tī bǔjǐào wǒ qù, wǒ zhīhǎo jìu bǔqíle.

451. bùrú  V: is not up to, is not as good as
451.1 A bùrú B = B bǐ A hǎo = A méiyǒu B hǎo.
451.2 A bùrú B dà = B bǐ A dà = A méiyǒu B dà.
   a. Kàn diànyǐngr bùrú tīng xl.

452. xī  N: play, opera
452.1 tīng xī  VO: go to a play
452.2 kàn xī  VO: go to a play
452.3 chǎng xī  VO: sing opera

453. diànyǐngr  N: motion picture
453.1 kàn diànyǐngr  VO: go the movies

454. tàiyang  N: sun, sunlight
454.1 chū tàiyang  VO: sun comes out

455. dōngwǔ  N: animals

456. hú  N: lake

457. huànjìng  N: environment

458. shítou  N: rock, stone

459. cǎodì  N: lawn

460. bówùguǎn  N: museum

178
461. dé
461.1 dé qián  V: get
VO: receive money (as a gift or prize)
461.2 dé dōngxi  VO: receive something (as a gift or prize)
461.3 dé bìng  VO: get sick
461.4 dé érzi  VO: have a baby
461.5 dézhao  RV: got
461.6 dé jīngyan  VO: gain experience
461.7 dé xuéwen  VO: acquire learning

462. zhīshì  N: knowledge
462.1 dé zhīshì  VO: gain knowledge
462.2 yǒu zhīshì  VO: well informed; educated
462.3 méi zhīshì  VO: uninitiated; uneducated

463. zhúyì  N: idea, way, plan
463.1 xiǎng zhúyì  VO: think of a way
463.2 chū zhúyì  VO: suggest a plan

a. Shéi chuōde zhēige zhúyì?

464. yěcān  V/N: picnic
465. huá chuán  VO: row boat
466. zǐxīngchē  V: bicycle
467. qi  V: ride, straddle
467.1 qi mǎ  VO: ride horseback
467.2 qi zǐxīngchē  VO: ride a bicycle
468. dǎ qiú  VO: play ball

469. bùdàn...{érqiě (ye)  not only...but
   bīngqiě (ye)

a. Tā bùdàn néng shūzhū, bīngqiě hěn néng zuòshī.
b. Nèige difang bùdàn huǎnjìng hǎo, érqǐě dōngxī yě piányì.

470. dūlì  CV: with respect to, in relation to, towards
a. Wǒ dūlì yuánzhǐ hóng shìqíng, méi shéngmí jīngyán.

471. shēntǐ  N: body, health
a. Tā shēntǐ hěn jǐgūshī.
b. Nǐ děi liùshēn nǐde shēntǐ.

472. jīngshén  N: spirit
472.1 yǒujīngshén  VO: be energetic, spirited
472.2 jīngshénbìng  N: mental disorder

a. Něiwei lǎo xiǎnshēng hěn yǒujīngshén.

III. Jùzi Gōuzào
1. Jiǔ and cǎi Further Compared:

The comparison of jiǔ and cǎi in Lesson 13 showed them sometimes to be opposite in meaning. They differ also in another respect.
Jiù or cái is often used in a sentence to contradict a previous statement, but the sentence with jìú stresses the contradiction by giving an example, as in the following dialogue:

A: Zài Méiguó méiyǒu rén huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.
(Nobody in the United States speaks Chinese.)

B: Zěnme méiyǒu? Wǒ jiù huì shuō.
(Who said so? I, for one, can speak it.)

And, the sentence with cái indicates the contradiction by stressing the subject that comes before cái:

A: Wǒ gěi nǐ máile yīge; wǒ xiǎng nǐ yěxu ài chī.
(I bought one for you, thinking you might like to eat it.)

B: Wǒ cái bùchǐ ne.
(Not I, I wouldn't eat it!)

1.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.11 "I think nobody can understand what he said." "Oh, I can."

1.12 "I think everybody wants to buy one, so you must want to buy one too." "Oh, no, not I."

1.13 "Everybody here is a college graduate." "No, I am not."

1.14 "I think our library must have this book." "No, not our library."

1.15 "I have not yet had Chinese food." "Oh yes, you have. The food you had last night was Chinese food."

2. The Translation of "More" into Chinese:

The different uses of the word "more" call for different translations into Chinese.

2.1 More in amount. Used alone or followed by a noun, as in "Eat a little more" and "I need more money," "more" can be translated as:

\[
\text{duō } zài \text{ V yidiǎnr.} \quad \text{Nǐ duō chī yidiǎnr.} \\
\text{Nǐ zài duō chī yidiǎnr.}
\]

Sometimes it can be translated as hái, or in any one of the three ways above with hái added:

\[
\text{Nǐ hái yào diǎnr mā?} \\
\text{Nǐ hái duō yào diǎnr mā?} \\
\text{Nǐ hái zài duō yào diǎnr mā?} \\
\text{Nǐ hái zài yào diǎnr mā?}
\]

2.2 More in number. When preceded by a number or other word indicating a number, "more" is translated as hái or zài:

Hái yǒu liǎngge xuéshēng yào lái.
(There are two more students coming.)

Qǐng zài gěi wǒ jíge.
(Please give me a few more.)
2.3 "No more" or "not...any more" is best translated as "búzài..." or "bǐ zài...". While "never...any more" has the Chinese equivalent of "zài yè bù...":

Bǐ zài dào Nǐ yù záo qù le.
(Don't go to New York any more.)

Wǒ bùzài hē jiǔ le.
(I will drink no more.)

Wǒ zài yè bùhē jiǔ le.
(I will never drink any more.)

Note that zài before bù in the third illustration indicates a much stronger stress on the negative than when it follows bù as in the second illustration.

2.4 In the comparative degree, as we recall, the various forms of "more...than" can be translated in the following ways:

more...than: This is more difficult than that.

bǐ...SV: Zhēige bǐ nēige nán.

a little more...than: This is a little more expensive (than that).
bǐ...SV yídīänder: Zhēige (bǐ nēige) gǔ yídīänder.

much more...than: This is much more expensive (than that).
bǐ...SV-dēduǒ: Zhēige (bǐ nēige) gǔdēduǒ.

even more...than: This is even more expensive (than that).
bǐ...hái SV: Zhēige (bǐ nēige) hái gǔ.
bǐ...gèng SV: Zhēige (bǐ nēige) gèng gǔ.

2.5 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.51 "Have you any more bread?" "I have no more."
2.52 It will not be ready for ten days more.
2.53 Don't do that any more.
2.54 I dislike her perhaps even more than you do.
2.55 One more word, and I will send you to the police station.
2.56 There are not many more of this kind of book.
2.57 I have known him for more than twenty years.
2.58 He's even more clever.
2.59 I gave him five dollars more than I should.
2.60 Doing a good job is much more important than finishing quickly.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxiá

1. "Tā wèi shènme lǎo tǐng tā tài tāidài huà?" "Yǐnweī tā zǒng juédé tā zǐjǐ méilǐ, suòyì jiu zhīhǎo tǐng tā tài tāidài."

2. "Nǐ shuō shì tǐng xiǎo hǎo, shì kǎn diàn yǐng hǎo?" "Wǒ juédé shènme dōu bù rú dà qū." 

3. "Nǐ ěr gōng yuán lí hú biānrshàng de huán jīng zěn mèi yàng?" "Chū tài yī yang de shǐ hou zú hǎo, ěn jīng jǐe."

4. "Nǐ hū qí zǐ xīngchē bū hú?" "Wǒ qí mǎ xǐng, qí zǐ xīngchē qí bù liǎo."
5. "Tā zēnme yǒu nème fēngfùde zhīshí?" "Yīnwei tāde jīngyàn hěn duō."  
6. "Zuótian qu yěcān de shíhou, nǐmen dà qiū le ma?" "Bùdàn dā qiū le, hài huálé yìhuí chūn."  
7. "Nǐ kàn ta zhēng zhúyì zēnmeyàng?" "Yě bùcū, kěshì wǒ bùyìdīng nēng ānzhe tā shuōde bān."  
8. "Nǐ shuō wǒmen zēnme bān hǎo?" "Wǒ dūli yu zhèijian shì yǐdiǎnr zhúyì yě mèiyǒu."  
9. "Tāde shēntǐ zhēn hǎo, nǐkàn tā yǒu duōme dàde jǐngshēn!" "Dùle, ta yǐdá qiú, jǐngshēn jiù lǎile."  
10. "Nèige bówùguānlǐ dōu yǒu shēnme dōngxi?" "Yǒu hǎoxī shītōu, kěshì wǒ bùzhídào dou shì shēnme shītōu."  

V. Wèntí  
2. Zhào Tt. shuō yào dào shēnme dīfāng qu? Zhào Xs. yuányi dao shēnme dīfāng qu?  
3. Zhào Tt. xǐhuān tīng xī, kàn diànyǐngr ma? Tiānqì hǎo de shíhou, tā yuányi dao shēnme dīfāng qu?  
4. Zhào Tt. yào dào nèige gōngyuán qu? Nèige hùbǐānrshàng de huànjīng zēnmeyàng? Zhào Xs. shuō dào bówùguān qu yǒu shēnme hǎochu?  
6. Zhào Tt. juéde Sī Xs. de bǐng zēnmeyàng?  
7. Zhào Xs. yào qu dā diànhuà wénwén tāmen yǒu gōngfù méiyǒu, tā tāitái shuō shēnme? Wèi shēnme Zhào Tt. juéde tāmen méiyǒu yàojínde shìqíng?  
8. Zhào Xs. gei Sī Xs. dā diànhuà, Sī Xs. shuō shēnme? Sī Xs. zēnme zhǐdāo shì Zhào Xs. de diànhuà?  
9. Sī Xs. de bǐng zēnmeyàng le?  
10. Dā diànhuà de shíhou, Sī Xs. shuō tā néng gén tāmen yǐkùāir qu yěcān ma?  
11. Zhào Xs. gei Sī Xs. dǎwǎnle diànhuà, yǒu gei shéi dā diànhuà? Shì shéi jiēde diànhuà?  
12. Zhào Xs. zài diànhuāli shì zēnme gén ta shuōde? Tā shì zēnme huǐdāde?  
13. Tāmen dàsuàn shēnme shíhou zài shēnme dīfāng jiàn?  
14. Tiānqì hǎo de shíhou, nǐ yuányi zúo shēnme?  
15. Gōngyuánlǐ dōu yǒu shēnme? Dào gōngyuán qu zúo shēnme zúi yǒuyúshì?  

182
17. Yǐcān shì shènme yǐshì? Nǐ shāngcī yǐcān shì zài shènme dìfāng? Gēn shèi yǐfùwài qūdé?
18. Nǐ chǎng yùndòng ma? Zuì xīhuān zuō shènme yùndòng? Yǐtiān yùndòng jīge zhōngtōu?
19. Xīngqīlǚ rén dōu méiyǒu yàojiǎndì shì ma? Nǐ juédé Zhào Tt. shuōde huà dōu yǒulǐ ma?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shènme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xiāngqǐ yìjǐtiān shìqǐng lái, xiǎng shuō, nǐ xiān shuō shènme?
2. Yàoshi nǐ xiāng qǐng nǐde péngyou yǐkuài qù tīng xī, nǐ zěnme gěn tā shuō?
3. Yàoshi nǐ péngyou qǐng nǐ qu kàn diànyǐng, nǐ bùxiǎng qù, nǐ zěnme gěn tā shuō?
4. Nǐ qǐng nǐde péngyou dào Gěngyuán qu shānsàn bù, tā shuō ta bùyuānyì qù, yàoshi nǐ yǐdīng jiào tā qu, nǐ zěnme gěn tā shuō?
5. Yàoshi nǐ xiāng gǎosòng nǐde péngyou zài Gěngyuánli dōu néng zuò shènme, nǐ zěnme shuō?

VII. Bēishū

A: Nǐn zher yǒu fāngzi chūzǔ ma?
A: Tāmen shènme shíhou bānzǒu?
B: Xiānlǐbāiyī bānzǒu. Kēshì wǒ hái děi shǒushíshūzhi.
A: Nǐn kěyì dàì wo kǎnkan ma? Shì jǐjian ne?
B: Yǐjīān wǒfāng, yǐjīān kětīng.
A: Yǒu chūfāng zǎofāngr méiyǒu?
B: Dōu yǒu. Yǐgòng suàn sānjīān.
A: Fāngzǔ duōshào qian yīfēng yuè?
B: Liūshi-liūkuāibān.
1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 Did you go to the opera last week?
1.2 He has not only a vegetable garden, but a flower garden also. However his flowers are not as good as his vegetables.
1.3 Going bicycling is not as good as going to the movies.
1.4 To go boating is better than anything.
1.5 There is a lake in the zoo.
1.6 There isn't even a lawn in that park.
1.7 There is no museum in the vicinity. The only thing we can do is ride a bicycle in the park.
1.8 What he said is very reasonable. He doesn't say anything which is not reasonable.
1.9 I went to a play yesterday. It was a good play. The name is something like...I forget it. I can never remember names.
1.10 The environment of the opera house is very quiet.
1.11 He is well informed in the field of history. He's a scholarly man.
1.12 He lost money in that business, but gained experience.
1.13 You must think of a way to get some exercise, so you will have a strong body.
1.14 I have no idea what I am going to do.
1.15 He said that I was crazy, I think maybe he is right.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(449) a. What he said is very reasonable.
(450) a. He won't let me go so the only thing I can do is not go.
(451) a. Going to the movies is not as good as going to a play.
(463) a. Whose big idea is this?
(469) a. He can act as well as talk.
   b. Not only is the environment good but the prices are low.
(470) a. I've had no experience in this kind of thing.
(471) a. He has a strong physique.
   b. You ought to take care of yourself.
(472) a. That old gentlemen is full of vigor.
DIÈRSHIKE — YĚCĀN YĪHOU

I. DULHUÀ

Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. qǐngle jiùwèi pèngyou, dàizhe háizimen dào gōngyùán qu yěcān quèle. Tāmen yě qǐng Sl Xs. qù, kěshì Sl Xs. néitiān yīnweī yōu yǐdiǎnr yáoqǐng, méiqūliǎo. Hòulaí Zhào Xs. jiānzhào Sl Xs., tāmen liǎngge rèn tān yěcān de qǐnxìng.

SI: Néitiān dào gōngyùán qu yěcān, wánrde hǎo ba. Wǒ méinèng qu, zhēn dulbuīl.


SI: Néiwei Lī Xs?

Zhào: Lī Qìtáng, Lī Xs., shí wǒ yìge tóngshí, shàngcì wǒ zàì jiālǐ qǐng kě, yē yǒu tā. Wǒ gēi nín jiēshāoguo, nǐn jíde būjìde?

SI: O! Wǒ xiāngqīnggái, jiǔshí nèitiān tíng bǐláiăngde yǒu yǐdiǎnr xiǎo hūzī, dàizhè yānjiāngde nèiwei, shī būshī?


SI: Dōu zuò shěnhme wánrle?


SI: Dílōzhāohé ma?


SI: Hòulaí yǒu dilōzhāohé meiyōu?

Zhào: Hòulaí wǒ yuè xiǎng yuè shēngqī, jīu bā chuān huánhuiqule.

SI: Lǎo Zhāng diào le meiyōu?


Zhào: Nêr yîu yîge yîuyîngchî. Kēshi wômen méiyou rén qu. Nîn xîhuan yîuyîng ma?

ST: Yîuyîng, wô dàoshi xiângdâng yîu xîngqu. Nîn ne?


Zhào: Xîngkuî wô bûshîl dàifu. Yêxî bûhîl yîuyîng, méi shenme dâ guânxi.

ST: Yê yûuli. Nîmen yêcân chîle shênme têbié hâode dôngi le?


ST: Zhêî yîding shî nîn tàitaide zhûyî ba?


Zhào: Têmèn zuô châmîiân, gen Zhôngguôrên pîngchâng zuôdè bûhû yîyàng. Shênme shîhou yîu gôngfu, dào wômen jià qu chî yîdiânqu châmchâng.

ST: Wô neîge chúzi néng zuô bunêng?

Zhào: Nêng. Tâ zuôdè yê bûcûô.

ST: Shuûde wô dou èle. Xiànzàî yê chábudûd shî chîfànde shîhou le. Dào wo jiî qu jiôu chúzi zuô yîdiânqu chî, hào buhào?

Zhào: Jiào chúzi zuô kôngpà lâibûjîîle. Wômen yîkuàîr dao fânguânr qu chî, hào buhào?

ST: Yê hào.
II. Shēngzhì Yōngfú

473. lǎn  
**SV:** be lazy

a. Zhè shì hì wǒ bù qǐlái, nǐ shuō ta lǎn buǐn?  

474. qíshí  
**A:** in fact, as a matter of fact

a. Zhè ěr shì, tā shuō hēn róngyì. Qíshí wǒ kàn jiānzhīde nánjíle.

475. tóngshì  
475.1 tóngxué  
**N/VO:** co-worker, colleague  
**N/VO:** schoolmate, fellow students

475.2 tóngbān  
**N/VO:** classmate

475.3 gēn...tóng...  
**VO:** work or study together with...

a. Tā gēn wǒ tóngshì.  
b. Tā shì wǒde tóngxué.

476. húzi  
476.1 liú húzi  
**N:** beard, mustache

476.2 guā húzi  
**VO:** grow a beard or mustache

477. rènao  
**SV:** be noisy and bustling, prosperous

a. Niǎyùè Sǐshièrjiè hēn rènao.

478. xǐngqu  
478.1 yǒu xǐngqu  
**N:** interest (cf. yǒuyǐsi)

478.2 dū...yǒu xǐngqu  
**SV/VO:** be interested in, show interest in

a. Tā dū kǎi qíché xǐngqu hēn gāo.

479. niánqīng  
479.1 niánqīng ren  
**N:** young person

479.2 niánqīngde  
**N:** young person

479.3 qīngnián(ren)  
**N:** young person

a. Nèige rén hēn niánqīng.

480. diào yú  
**VO:** fish (with hook and line)

a. Nǐ xīhuan diào yú ma?

481. dōng  
**V:** move, touch

481.1 bié dōng  
**RVE:** (indicates capacity for moving or being moved)

481.2 bùxī dōng  
**don't move, don't touch**

481.3 zǒubudōng  
**hands off, don't move**

481.4 dōngbùliào  
**RV:** too tired to walk any farther

482. hūrán  
**MA:** suddenly

a. Jīntiān ta hūrán gēn wǒ shuō, tā yào jiēhūn le.

483. tuǐ  
**V:** push

483.1 tuǐkāi  
**RV:** push open

483.2 tuǐshàngqu  
**RV:** push up

483.3 tuǐxiàlai  
**RV:** push down

483.4 wǎng shàng tuǐ  
**push upwards**

a. Nèige men méisuǒzhe, yìtuǐ jiù kāile.
484. jiéguǒ  A: as a result, finally  
N: result, solution  
  a. Tā shūō ta lǎi, shuōle bǎntiān, jiéguǒ méilái.

495. diào  V: drop, fall  
RVE: come off  
  485.1 diàoxiaqu  RV: drop, fall  
  485.2 diàoxiaalai  RV: drop, fall  
  485.3 xǐdediào  RV: can wash off  
  a. Tā yībūlíushén, cóng lǒushang diàoxiaalai.  
  b. Zhèijìan yīshāng zàngle yīkuài, xīle bǎntiān méixídiào.

486. kěxī  SV: be pitiful, be regretful (cf. zāogǎo)  
  a. Kěxī wǒ méinēng qù.  

487. yǒuyǒng  V: swim  
  487.1 yǒuyǒngchí  N: swimming pool  
  a. Tā yǒuyǒng yǒude hěn hǎo.

488. xiāngdāng  A: fairly, very much, extremely  
  a. Tā shuōde xiāngdāng kuài.

489. shuāi  V: fall (of a person); throw (something) down  
  489.1 shuāizhāo  RV: fell down and got hurt  
  489.2 shuāihuái  RV: it fell down and broke; it was thrown and broken  
  489.3 shuāidǎole  RV: fell down  
  489.4 shuāitāngxiāle  RV: fell flat  
  489.5 shuāisīle  RV: fell down and died  
  a. Liú diǎnr shén, bié shuāixiālai.  
  b. Tā shuāitāngxiāle, kěshǐ méishuāizhāo.

490. zhuí  V: chase after, catch up with  
  490.1 zhuíshāng  RV: catch up with  
  490.2 zhuíbushāng  RV: cannot catch up with  
  490.3 zhuídeshāng  RV: can catch up with  
  a. Tā pàode tài kuài, wǒ zhuíshē bǎntiān, jiānhūde zhuíbushāng.

491. zàiihu  V: be of concern to, care about  
  491.1 bǔzàiihu  it doesn't matter, don't care,  
  it makes no difference to  
  a. Nǐ hǎi qu buqù, wǒ yīdiǎnr dōu bǔzàihu.

492. wèi(de)shì  A: in order to, in order that  
  a. Wǒ gěi ni qǐán, wèi(de)shì jiào ni chūqu wǎnrwanr.

493. bǐnggān  N: cookies or crackers (M: -kuài,-hé)  
494. bǐngjílíng  N: icecream  
  494.1 bǐng  N: ice
III. Jùzi Gòuzào

1. Shuǎi and Diǎo Compared:

These two verbs are so easily confused that a comparative study is needed to clarify their use.

1.1 Shuǎi may have one of three meanings:

1.11 It means to drop and break:

Wān shuǎile.
(The bowl has been dropped and broken.)

1.12 It refers to the action of falling down. The actor may be a person or an animal but not an inanimate object:

Tā cóng chuángshang shuǎixin șiăile.
(He fell down from the bed.)

1.13 In the sense of "to crash" something, it refers to the harsh action of throwing something against something (like throwing a book on the table), or banging the door, etc.:

Tā qídă bă mēn yǐshuǎi jiù chăoqule.
(He was so angry that he banged the door and went out.)

1.2 Diǎo also has two common meanings:

1.21 It means to fall off or drop off (both animate and inanimate things):

Nèiben shū wǒ mēinázhù, diǎozăi dîshang le.
(I didn't get hold of that book and it dropped on the floor.)

1.22 It means to become detached from something, both as a verb or as an RVE:

Tā diǎole yīge ěrduo.
(One of his ears came off.)

Wǒ xīle bāntiān mèixídiǎo.
(I washed for a long time, but it didn't come off.)
1.3 **Exercise** - Translate into Chinese:

1.31 The child fell from the window but wasn't hurt.
1.32 I was careless and dropped the pen on the floor.
1.33 He jumped from the plane, he didn't fall off.
1.34 He threw his books rudely on the table and walked out.
1.35 As soon as that tumbler fell on the floor, it broke.
1.36 This is very sturdy. No matter how you drop it, it won't break.
1.37 This color is fast.
1.38 The wind blew all the flowers off the tree.
1.39 As that bird was flying, it bumped into the building and dropped dead.
1.40 I dropped my key on the chair.

2. **The Translation of "Enjoy" and "Send":**

There are certain English words which can be translated into Chinese in many different ways and sometimes cause confusion. In this lesson, we discuss translations of "enjoy" and translations of "send".

2.1 The verb "to enjoy" finds no simple equivalent in the Chinese language. When one wants to express the idea of enjoyment, one has to more or less beat around the bush by saying **wánrde hěn hǎo**, **juéde yǒuyì**, **ài**, **xǐhuān**, etc.:

- We enjoyed the party very much at his house.  
  (**Wǒmen zài ta jiā wánrde hěn hǎo.**)

- Did you enjoy his speech?  
  (**Nǐ juéde tāde yǎnjiāng yǒuyì ma?**)

- He enjoys eating good food.  
  (**Tā ài chī hǎo dōngxi.** or **Tā xǐhuān chī hǎo dōngxi.**)

2.11 **Exercise** - Translate into Chinese:

2.111 I enjoy writing Chinese characters very much.
2.112 I didn't enjoy the food at all.
2.113 We went to the park yesterday. I enjoyed it very much.
2.114 I don't think there are many people who enjoyed his speech last night.
2.115 How do you enjoy yourself every evening?
2.2 The verb "to send" has several Chinese equivalents:

2.21 It is translated as jì when it means to send by mail:

He sent me a letter last week.
(Shàngyībài tā gei wo jìlái yīfēng xīn.)

2.22 To send to...is translated as sòngdao:

Send this book to Miss Wang.
(Bā zhèiben shū sòngdao Wáng Xìner qu.)

2.23 To send for...is translate as pài rén qu qǔ, ná, mài, etc.

Don't bother to send it over. I'll send for it.
(Bié sònghlái. Wǒ pài rén qu qǔ ba.)

2.24 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.241 I have sent my cook for some fruits.
2.242 He sent me fifty dollars to buy a table.
2.243 By whom shall I send this letter?
2.244 I sent him over to England.
2.245 If you wish to see this book, I'll send for a copy.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxi


2. "Zuótiān nǐmen wánrède zěnmeyàng?" "Dàjiāde xíngqu hěn hǎo, wánrède hěn rěnào."

3. "Díào yú zěnme diào?" "Diàode shíhou bùnéng dònɡ, yàoshi yú láile, nǐ yídōnɡ, yú jìu pàolle."

4. "Nèige niānqīngde yě shì nǐde tónghuì ma?" "Dúle. Wǒde tónghuì dōu hěn niānqīng."

5. "Tā shì zěnme cóng fánɡshāng diàoxiálaide?" "Nèige rén hūrán yītuí ta, tā jìu diàoxiálaile."


7. "Tā niānqīngde shīhou yóuyōng yóude zěnmeyàng?" "Yóude xīǎngdānɡ háo, kěshì xiànzài láole."

8. "Dúbíuǒi wǒ méimǐizhāo bīnɡgān." "Bāyàojīn, yǒu bīnjīlínɡ jiù xíngle, bīnɡgān yǒu meiyou, wǒ yǐdīānr dou bǔzǎihū."　

9. "Tā kāi chē kāiè zhēn kuài, wǒ jiānzhīde zhǔfūbushānɡ." "Nǐ hēbì zhǔfū ta ne?"

10. "Nǐ wèi shèmē yīdīng yào xué Zhōngwén ne?" "Wēidēshí dào Zhōngguó qu zuò măimai."

191
V. Wěntí

1. Zhào Xs. tāmen qu yěcān, Sī Xs. wèi shénme méiqù? Hòulai Sī Xs. jiànzhao Zhào Xs. shuō shénme?

2. Nèitiān qu yěcān, Sī Xs. wèi shénme bùyuán yì qù? Zhào Xs. shuō dōu you shéi qùle? Yǒu pèngjian shéi?

3. Lǐ Xs. jiàoshéngme? Zhào Xs. zènme rènsīhui ta? Sī Xs. jiànguō ta meiyou? Lǐ Xs. shénme yàngr?

4. Nèitiān de tiānquǐ zènme yàng? Tāmen dōu zuò shénme wǎnr le?


6. Zhāng Xs. hūl diào yú būhul? Wèi shénme Zhào Xs. shuō tā būhul? Sī Xs. hūl diào yú būhul?

7. Zhào Xs. hūl yǒuyōng būhul? Tā xuè yǒuyōng shì zènme xuéde?

8. Tāmen qu yěcān de shǐhou dōu chīle shénme dōngxī le?

9. Wèi shénme Sī Xs. shuō yǒuyōng hěn yǒuyōng? Tā nèige gùshì shì zènme shùōde?

10. Tāmen chīde dōngxī dōu shì shéi zuòde? Shì shéi chīde zhúyì?

11. Tāmen nèitiān chīde dōngxī shénme zú lǎohū?

12. Sī Xs. chīguō chǎomiàn meiyou? Měiguóde Zhōngguó fànguǎnr dōu yǒu chǎomiàn ma?

13. Zhōngguó rén píngchǎng jījí chīde chǎomiàn, gén Měiguó fànguǎnr liè chǎomiàn yǐyàng būyǐyàng? Sī Xs. de chúzi hūl zuò chǎomiàn būhul?

14. Tāmen dào shénme dīfang qu chǐ dōngxī qule? Wèi shénme méidào Sī Xs. jiǎ qu?

15. Nǐ xīhuān yěcān ma? Zuì xīhuān dào shénme dīfang qu yěcān? Shì shānshāng, shì háibīnárshāng, háishi gōngyuánlǐ?

16. Yěcānde shǐhou chīde dōngxī dōu chābūduō yǐyàng ma? Dōu chī shénme?

17. Yěcānde shǐhou jiù wèideshì chī dōngxī ma? Chúle chī dōngxī hái néng zuò shénme shì?


20. Qǐng ni bā nǐ shàngcǐ yěcānde qǐngxìng shuō yìshuō.

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshì nǐ xiǎng wèn yīge pénghǒu, tā zuòtiān qǐng kě de qǐngxìng, nǐ zènme wèn?
2. 喜欢你gàoshēng nǐ de péngyou dào gōngyuán qu yěcǎn de qǐngxìng, nǐ zěnme shuò?

3. Nǐ shuō yìshū zhào xs. diào yú de shìqīng.

4. Nǐ shuō yìshū yěcān zǔhǎo chī shěnme dōngxi?

5. Yào shì dào le chīfàn de shíhou nǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐ de péngyou, suǒbìàn qù chī yídiǎnr dōngxi, nǐ zěnme shuō?

VII. Gǔshì
(On Record)

VIII. Fēnyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 The child says that he isn't lazy, but too tired. I think that while he may be tired, he is also lazy. But his mother thinks he merely says he is tired while actually he is just lazy.

1.2 The one who has a mustache and wears glasses is my colleague.

1.3 Everyone was interested in playing ball. They had an exciting time.

1.4 He told me that he was interested in fishing. But as a matter of fact I don't think he likes it, because I have asked him to go several times, and he hasn't gone with me even once.

1.5 He told me that Mr. Chen had suddenly passed away. I was so surprised.

1.6 This table is too heavy; I don't think I can move it by myself.

1.7 He said that the door wasn't locked, but I couldn't push it open.

1.8 I told him not to go by air, but he wouldn't listen to me. Now, look. The result is that he crashed and was killed.

1.9 He wasn't careful and fell into the lake.

1.10 There is a beautiful swimming pool, but unfortunately none of us can swim.

1.11 All of the food he bought, such as cookies, ice cream, Coca Cola, etc., is fairly good, but the prices are high.

1.12 If he hadn't chased me, how could I have fallen down!

1.13 It isn't the price I am concerned about; it's the style I don't like.

1.14 I came all the way from China so that I could see you.

1.15 I want to take the eleven o'clock train. Do you think I can make it?
2. Translate back into Chinese:

(473) a. As late as this and he isn't up yet! Wouldn't you say he's lazy?

(474) a. He said this lesson was very easy, but as a matter of fact, I think it is extremely difficult.

(475) a. He and I work together.
b. He is my schoolmate.

(477) a. 42th Street in New York is a very exciting place.

(478) a. He is very much interested in driving.

(479) a. That person is very young.

(480) a. Do you enjoy fishing?

(481) a. That door probably is locked. I pushed for a long time and it didn't move.

(482) a. He suddenly told me today he was going to get married.

(483) a. That door wasn't locked. As soon as I pushed, it opened.

(484) a. He said he would come. He talked a long while about it, but in the end he didn't show up.

(485) a. He wasn't careful and fell downstairs.
b. This garment has a soiled spot. I washed and washed but didn't get it out.

(486) a. Too bad I couldn't go.
b. What a shame for so fine a table to get broken.

(487) a. He swims well.

(488) a. He speaks fairly fast.

(489) a. Take care, don't fall off.
b. He fell down flat, but was not hurt.

(490) a. He ran too fast. I ran after him for a long while but couldn't catch up with him.

(491) a. Whether you (want to) go or not makes no difference to me.

(492) a. I am giving you money so you may go out and have some fun.

(498) a. "Can I make the nine o'clock train?" "No, you can't."
DIÈRSHIYÎKE - XÎHU LÜXÎNG

I. Dulhuâ

Yêu yitiä Simişi Xs. gên Zhâo Zîân Xs., Zhâo Tt. shângliang guânyu dào Hàngzhou qu lûxingde shîqing.

Zhâo Tt: SÎ Xs., nîn dào Zhîngguô lâìle zhême jiîûle, lîoshi hên màng, bûshî cânguân, jiûshi jiîngyân. Zîng ye mîidê gôngfu dào Shânghài fûjîn qu wànrwanr, shî bûshî?

SÎ: Shêtre shuô bûshî ne! Zhêtre jîge yuê zhênshî màngde bûdêlixo. BÎ wô zài Mêiguô de shìhou hãi màng. Yîzî yê mîidê jîhui dào gêcû qu kânkan.


Zhào Xs: Wô shi sänshiyîhào zài nîr kîhui. Sänshiyîhào shî xîngqi-sî, wô xîâng yâoshi zài nîr zhûdào xîngqi-ri, wômen yôu sîantianduôde gôngfu, kêyi kânkan chêng liotu gen Xîhu fûjînde fêngyîng, yê jîu chábûduôle. Yîoshi wômen xîngqi-ri xîwû huîlai, xîúxîxîlî, xîngqi-ri zôoshâng shânbân, zhêng hào. Nîn xîâng zhêmeyêng?

SÎ: Hàojîle. Zhège jîhuà dûî wô hên hêshî. Nîn shuô wômen zuô shênme chê qu ne?


(Dàole sänshiyîhào, SÎ Xs. dàole Zhàojiâ, támên yîkuâr dôngshên dào chêzhân qu. Dàole chêzhân.)

Zhào: Jiáoâhâng, jiáoâhâng.

Zhào Tt: Wômende xîngli hên shào, nîmen zîjî nà, hài bûxîng ma? Bûbî jiân jîâhâng le.

Zhào Xs: Yê xîng. Qîng nîmen zài zhîr kânzhê xîngli, wô qu mâi piào.

SÎ: Hào. Wômen kânzhê, nîn qu ba. (Zài piàofângr chuânghu qiántou.)
Zhào Xs:  Wǒ yào mǎi sānzhāng dào Hángzhōu qù de lǎihuípíào.
Màipíàode:  Hǎo, gěi nǐn piào. Yǐgōng shì sānshíliùkuàiliùmǎo qián.
Zhào:  Zhěige piào, zuò shénme chē dōu néng yòng ma?
Màipíàode:  Yàoshi yǒng zhěige piào zuò tèbié-kuàichē, děi jiā yǐdiǎnr qián. Zài chēshāng jiàogōi chāipíào de jiù xīngle.
Zhào Xs:  (duì Zhào Tt. gěn Sī Xs.) Piào mǎilái, wǒmen shàngché ba. Wǒmen de xīngqí yào guà pàizi búyào? Guàle pàizi shèngde náshāngnàxiàde.
Zhào Xs:  Hǎo, jiu tīng nǐde ba. Wǒmen shàng chè qu ba. Shèngde zhàobuzhāo zuòr.

(Tāmen jīnléi zhǎntái, shǎnglé chè.)

Sī:  Zhèr yǒu jīgé kōng zuòr. Wǒmen jiu zuòzài zhèr ba.
Sī:  Kě bùshí ma. Zuòshíde rèn, yīnlián dōu yǒu liǎngxīe xīngqíde jiā. Chābuduòde rèn, píngcháng dōu shèngxià yídīnr qián lài, děng fāngjī de shíhou hǎo chūchù lúxīng. Kěshì lúxīngde rèn yídū, néixiē fēngjīng hǎo yídīnr de dīfāng, jiù zōngshì yǒu hēn duō rèn, fēicháng rènào. Xīhuàn qīngjiāng de rèn, dào bīyuǎnyì qiān. Hánghòu zhěige dīfāng, qiūde rèn duō bǔduō?

Xì:  Wǒmen xiàle chè, dàsuàn xiān zuò shènme ne? Xiànzài xiān shàngliàngshāngliàng, shèngde dào le shíhou, bǔzhīdào zuò shènme hǎo.


II. Shèngzǐ Yòngfǎ

499. Xīhú  PW: West Lake (of Hangchow)
500. guānyú  CV: about, concerning, in relation to
   a. Zhèige gūshì shì guānyú zài Mèiguó de Zhōngguó rén de shìqíng.
501. lǚxíng  V/N: travel/travel, trip (M: cì)
   a. Fāngjià dé shíhou nǐ yào dào shénme dìfāng qu lǚxíng ma?
   b. Zhèici lǚxíng yǒu yǒu yīsì, yǒu méiyǒng duōshao qián.
502. gè-  SP: each, every
   502.1 gēchù  N: everywhere
   502.2 gēzhǒng  N: different kinds
   502.3 gēyàng  N: different kinds
503. yuèdī  TW: end of the month
   503.1 niàndī  TW: end of the year
   503.2 xiàyuè(yuè)dī  TW: end of the next month
   503.3 qūnlián niàndī  TW: end of last year
504. gōngshì  N: official or public business, in contrast to sīshì, personal or private matters
   504.1 bāngzhāng  VO: to conduct official business
   504.2 gōngzhīfāng  N: office
   a. Nǐn zài shénme dìfāng bāngzhāng?
505. Hángzhōu  PW: Hangchow
506. péi  V: accompany, escort, keep someone company
   506.1 péi kē  VO: help entertain a guest, keep a guest company
   506.2 péi(ke)  N: guest who is not the guest of honor
tu  to keep him company
   506.3 péi(ke) ta zuò yǒu yíhuīr  sit with him for a while
   506.4 péi(ke) ta zuò yǒu yíhuīr  go along with him and keep him company
   a. Nǐ yào shì qù, wǒ jiu péi nǐ qù.
507. shùnbiàn  A: when convenient, at your convenience
   a. Nǐ chūqù shíhou, shùnbiàn gěi wǒ mǎi yědiǎnr dōngxi.
508. jīhuà  V/N: plan
   a. Wǒmen děi xiǎn jīhuà jīhuà, mínghuá zěnmé qù.
509. zhǔzhī  V/N: organize/organization
   a. Wǒmen xiǎng zhǔzhī yíge lǚxíngtuàn.
510. Chūnjià-lǚxíngtuàn  N: Spring Vacation Travel Club
511. yǐwéi  V: suppose, think that, consider
   a. Wǒ yǐwéi ta bùlái(ne), kěshì ta lái le.
   b. Zhēijian shí, wǒ yǐwéi děi zěnmé bàn.

197
512. shú (or shòu)...
512.1 shú ren
512.2 niànshúle
512.3 zòushúle
512.4 zuòshúle

SV: be well acquainted with; ripe,
be cooked, done
N: acquaintance
RV: read (a book) until familiar with it
RV: go over (a piece of road) until familiar with it
RV: do (something) until familiar with it

a. Wǒ gèn ta hěn shú.
b. Zhèiben shū ta niànde bùgòu shú.
c. Zhèitiào lù, wǒ suànsī zhòushúle.

513. shèng
513.1 shèng zì
513.2 shèng ròu
513.3 shèng cài
513.4 shèng rěn

SV: be unfamiliar, raw, fresh
new word
uncooked meat
raw vegetables
stranger, new comer

a. Tā shuò ta gèn Lǐ Xs. tái shèng, bùhǎoyíshì shuò nèiju huà.
b. Zuòtiān wànsìháng wǒ tāltái zuòde ròu, méizuòshú, hǎi shèngzhé ne. Wǒ bùdān méigān gāosòng ta, bīngqì wǒ hái děi shuò, "zhēn hāochǐ".

514. cānjiā

V: participate in, join

a. Wǒ mèicānjiā tāmen nèige zǔzhī.

515. dōngshēn

VO: start on a journey

a. Zuòtiān nǐmen shì shénmé shíhou dōngde shēn?

516. mínghòutiān

TW: tomorrow or day after tomorrow

517. kān
517.1 kān háizi
517.2 kān dōngxi
517.3 kān fāng

V: watch
VO: take care of a child
VO: take care of things
VO: take care of a house

a. Láojià, nǐn gěi wǒ kānzhe diàn rì dōngxi.

518. jiā
518.1 jiā qián
518.2 jiā yìdiǎnr xiǎoxìn
518.3 jiāqílái
518.4 jiāshàng zhèige
518.5 jiāzài yǐkuàir

V: add, increase, raise
VO: increase money; get a raise
VO: be a little more careful
RV: add up, add together
add this in
add together

a. Ër jiā èr shì shì sl.
b. Jiāshàng ta, wǒmen yīgòng shì wūge rén.

519. shèngde

A: lest, avoid, in order to prevent
(some one from doing something)

a. Wǒ děi shèng yīdìānr qián, shèngde yínhou méi qián yǒng.
Shèngde nǐ mài lé.

520. fàndiàn
520.1 Xīhú Fàndiàn

N: hotel
West Lake Hotel

198
521. hǎo
521.1 wèi(de)shì hǎo  A: in order to, so that
   in order to, so that
   a. Wǒ bǎ zhèi liangzhǎng zhǐ liúqìlai, míngtian hǎo yǒu de yòng.

522. ...yīnì   MA: within...
   a. Sānshìkuài qián yīnì, wǒ jiù mǎi.

523. qīngjìng   SV: be quiet
   a. Wǒ zhùde nèige dìfāng hěn qīngjìng.

524. yuè   V: invite
524.1 yuēhǎo   RV: reach an agreement with
   (someone to do something)
   a. Tā zuòtiān lái yuè wǒ chūqù chǐfàn, kěshì wǒ méinén gū.
   b. Wǒ yǐjīng gēn tā yuēhǎo le, míngtian liǎnkuài zhōng jiān.

525. běndì   N: local place, indigenous, native
525.1 běndì rén   N: natives (of a place)
   a. Nèige màibáo de, bùdàn mài běndì bāo, yě méi bìde dìfāngde bāo.

III. Jùzǐ Gòuzào

1. The Difference Between Guānyu and Dùlyu:

Guānyu and dùlyu as coverbs with the meanings "concerning", "in regard to" and "as to", are usually interchangeable.

Guānyu (or dùlyu) zhèngzhìde shū, wǒ dōu xǐhuān kàn.
(I like to read all books on politics.)

But after the equative verb shì, guānyu may be used, while dùlyu may not.

Zhèige gūshì (shì) guānyu yīge zài Měiguó de Zhōngguóruìde shēnghuó.  
(This story is about life of the Chinese people in the U.S.)

1.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.1.1 I have nothing to say about that matter.
1.1.2 As far as history is concerned, I know practically nothing about it.
1.1.3 He has no interest at all in doing this kind of work.
1.1.4 This book is about an accident to an airplane.
1.1.5 He is experienced in repairing this kind of radio.

2. The Translation of Yíqián and Yíhòu:

Yíqián and yíhòu vary in translation with the way in which they are used.

2.1 Yíqián can be translated as "formerly", "before...", and "ago":

2.1.1 It means "formerly" when it is used as an MA and in this sense is interchangeable with cóngqián.

Yíqián (or cóngqián) wǒ zhùzài Zhōngguó.  
(Formerly I lived in China.)
2.12 It means "before..." when it follows a time-clause other than a number-measure time expression:

Chī wǎnfhàn yīqíán, bié niànhū.
(Don't study before supper.)

2.13 It means "ago" when it follows a number-measure time expression:

Sānniàn yīqíán wǒ mèizài zhèr.
(I wasn't here three years ago.)

2.2 Yǐhòu can be translated as "afterwards" and "after":

2.21 As an MA it means "afterwards":

Wǒ yǐhòu jiu shénme dou buzhīdàole.
(Afterwards, I blacked out completely.)

2.22 When it follows a time expression, it means "after":

Chīfàn yǐhòu wǒ būhē shuǐ.
(I don't drink after eating.)

Sānniàn yǐhòu wǒ jiu bǐyè 1e.
(I will graduate after three years.)

Mìngtian yǐhòu wǒ jiu būqùle.
(I will not go any more after tomorrow.)

2.3 Exercise — translate into English:

2.31 Nèige rěn zūzhíle yige lǚxíngtuán. Ta zūzhí yīqíán, xiān wèn wo cānjià bǔcānjià.

2.32 Yīqíán wǒ gēn ta bùshū, hòulài zài yīge gōngshìfāngrì zuò shí, zuòle jīgē yuè jīu shūle.

2.33 Sānniàn yīqíán, wǒ yīwéi tā nèige jīhuā hěn hǎo, xiànzài būzhīdà wǒi shénme, jiù dé būxíngle.

2.34 Yǐōshí nǐ kěn zuò fēijī, jīntiān dōngshēn, liǎngtiān yǐhòu yǐdīng dào.

2.35 Yīqíán tā mèicí jíe qíán wǒ dou jiègěi ta. Cóng qùnjì niànle wǒ méi shìqīng yǐhòu jīu méi fāzi zài jiègěi ta qían le.

3. Other Yī—Compounds:

Besides yīqíán and yǐhòu, there are a number of other compounds with the yī prefix. The meaning of yī itself varies. It may mean "by", "with", "where", etc. It is more important to the student to remember what each compound means as a whole.

3.1 Yī is often joined with expressions of place:

| yīdōng       | to the east of |
| yīxi      | to the west of |
| yīnán       | to the south of |
| yīběi      | to the north of |
| yīshàng    | above |
| yīxià     | below, beneath |
| yīlǐ (or yīnèi) | within |
| yīwài     | outside, beyond |
3.2 The directional compounds (yīdōng, yīxià, etc.) often stand after a place word:

Zhège dìfang yīdōng dōu shì hǎi.
(It is all sea to the east of here.)

3.3 The shàng, xià, lǐ, nèi and wài compounds often appear after a number-measure:

Yào shì sānshí kuài qián yīshàng wǒ jiù bùmǎile.
(I won't buy it if it's over thirty dollars.)

Yīge líniè wǒ yào shì bù húliai, nǐ jiù yīge rén qù ba.
(If I don't come back within one week, please go without me.)

3.4 Like yǐqián and yǐhou, yīshàng and yǐxià may sometimes be used as movable adverbs:

Wǒ yīshàng suǒshūde dōu shì tā gào sòng wǒ de.
(All that I said above was what he told me.)

Yǐxià wǒ jiù dōu bù dǒngle.
(From here on, it's beyond my comprehension.)

3.5 Exercise – Translate into Chinese:

3.5.1 They fought to the north of the Yellow River.
3.5.2 I will not leave this country before the end of March.
3.5.3 All the trees inside this wall are ours.
3.5.4 There are more than 300 pages in that book.
3.5.5 I enjoyed the book up to page 200; from there on I didn't like it very much.
3.5.6 The railroad station is east of our school.
3.5.7 The wall is built of rock up to here, from here on up, it is made of dirt.
3.5.8 I have to finish it within three days.
3.5.9 I have learned the first half of that song. From the fifth line on, I haven't yet learned it.
3.5.10 I think a house like this for less than twenty-thousand dollars is very reasonable.

IV. Pàiyīn Liànxiě

1. "Gāngcái zài gōngshìfángjì, nǐmen tǎnde shì shénme?"
   "Women tǎnde shì guānyú lǔxíngde jīhuà."

2. "Guānyú zǔzhī lǔxíngtuán de jīhuà nǐ yǐwéi yīngdāng zěnme bàn?"
   "Wǒ méiyǒu shènme zhùyì."

3. "Nǐ zuòtian zuò shénme le?" "Zuòtian wǒ pèizhe yìwéi shèng pèngyou dào gēchū cānguān cānguān."

4. "Yào shì nǐ dào Níuyuè lái, kěyì shùnbiàn dào wǒ jī shuòzuò."
   "Wǒ yǐdīng kān nín qù." 

5. "Wǒ yuē le yīge shù rén yīkūài qu chī wǎnfàn, nǐ yě cǎnjiā hǎo buhào?" "Hǎojíle. Shènme shíhou? Zài shènme dìfāng jiān?"
6. "Nǐmen qu lǚxíng, dàsuàn shénme shìhou dōngshēn?" "Dāgāi mínghòutian jiù yào dōngshēn le."


8. "Nǐ dàsuàn zhùzài nǎr ne?" "Wǒ děi zhào yīge qīngjìng difang, hǎo niànsū." 


10. "Tā shuōde bùshì guānyu lǚxíngde jīhuá ma?" "Ω! Wǒ yǐwéi tā hǎi shuō xiǎohuá ne." 

V. Wèntí 

1. Sī Xs. dào le Zhōngguó yǐhòu, wéi shénme méidào Shànghǎi fǔjīn qu wánrwanr? 

2. Zhào Xs. wèi shénme yào dào Hángzhōu qu? Tā shénme shìhou qù? Zhào Tt. wèi shénme qù? 

3. Zhào Tt. wèi shénme yào qǐng Sī Xs. yǐkūaì qù? 


5. Tāmen shénme shìhou dōngshēn? Dàsuàn zài Hángzhōu zhù jītìan? Nèitiān qu, nèitiān huìlái? 

6. Zhào Xs. nèitiān kāihū? Tā jīhuá zài ner zuò shénme? Tāde jīhuá Sī Xs. juède zēnmeyàng? 

7. Tāmen zuò huòchē qu zài lùshāng déi zǒu duōshào zhōngtōu? Tā shuō ta yào zēnméi yībei? 

8. Tāmen cōng shénme difang dòngde shēn? Tāmén de xīngli shì zījǐ nà de hǎishí jīliàng gěi tāmen nà de? Zhào Xs. mǎide piào shì lǎihuí-piào ma? Duōshào qiān? Tā mǎide piào kěyǐ zuò tèbié-kuāichē ma? 

9. Tāmén de xīngli guā páizi le meiyǒu? Wèi shénme? Zhào Xs. de yìsī zēnmeyàng? 

10. Zhào Xs. wèi shénme gěi Xīhú Fǎndiàn xiē xīn? Tā jǐzhāo huǐxīn meiyǒu? 

11. Xīhú Fǎndiàn yào shì méi fàngzi, tāmen zēnméi bàn? Wèi shénme Zhào Tt. xiǎng Xīhú Fǎndiàn yǒu fàngzi? 

12. Sī Xs. shuō Wèiguó rèn dōu xīhuān lǚxíng ma? 

13. Xīhú zhègè difang, qùde rèn dōu bùdū? Luān bùluān? 


15. Sī Xs. hái yào zuò shénme? 

17. Lǚxìng yǐqián yīngdāng zěnme yǔbei?

18. Zuò huǒchē de shíhou, xǐnglǐ shì zìjǐ dài hǎo, shì guà páizi hǎo? Yǒu shénmé hǎochu?


20. Qǐng nǐ bā nǐ shàngcì lǚxìngde qǐngxìng shuō yìshū?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng dào yīge dìfāng qu lǚxìng, nǐ xiǎng yuē nǐde pénghòu yǐkuài qù, nǐ zēnmé gèn ta shuō?

2. Yàoshi nǐde pénghòu yuē nǐ gèn ta yǐkuài qu lǚxìng, nǐ xiǎng wèn ta shénme wèntí?

3. Yàoshi nǐ yuànyí gèn ta yǐkuài qù, nǐ zēnmé shuō? Yàoshi nǐ bǔyuànyí gèn ta yǐkuài qù, nǐ zēnmé shuō?


5. Nǐ shuō yìshū nǐ lǚxìngde jǐngyàn.

VII. Běishū

A: Jǐntiān zhēn rè a!

B: Kě bùshì ma!


B: Nǐn wèi shénme būdào hǎibǐnr qu liǎngkuǎiliǎngkuǎi?

A: Wǒ bùhūl yóuyǒng.

B: Bùhūl yóuyǒng, méi guānxì. Nǐn yàoshi méi shì, wǒmen xiànzáì qu hǎo buhào?


B: Bùyào jǐn. Wǒ yǒu liǎngjiān. Dēng wǒ bā yóu yǒngyì nálái, wǒmen jǐn zhòu.

VIII. Fānyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 This story is about his trip to Japan.

1.2 I want to know something about the situation in China.
1.3 How long a trip was it?
1.4 Where are you planning to travel on your spring vacation?
1.5 They sell all sorts of native products.
1.6 You cannot join several kinds of organization at the same time.
1.7 I will be in Italy by the end of next month.
1.8 If you are going to town, will you please show him around at your convenience.
1.9 If you are going to make coffee, please make one more cup. Thanks.
1.10 This plan suits me perfectly.
1.11 As far as I'm concerned, I don't think his speech is well organized.
1.12 I thought he was an American, but actually he was a Frenchman.
1.13 I am acquainted with this town.
1.14 I don't feel at home when I meet strangers.
1.15 We have to start off a little earlier tomorrow.
1.16 This fish isn't salty enough. I'll have to add a little more salt.
1.17 I have to study hard, to avoid being embarrassed tomorrow, when the teacher calls on me.
1.18 I will buy another pen, so that in case I lose this one I will have something to use.
1.19 If you can give me some, that will save my buying it.
1.20 I must remember these Cantonese sentences so that when I go to a Chinese restaurant I can order a meal.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(500) a. This story is about Chinese people in America.

(501) a. Are you going to travel some where during the vacation?
b. It was an interesting trip and didn't cost much.

(504) a. Where do you work?

(506) a. If you are going, I will go along to keep you company.

(507) a. When you go out, buy some things for me at your convenience.

(508) a. We have to plan beforehand how we are going tomorrow.

(509) a. We want to organize to travel club.

(511) a. I thought he wasn't coming, but he showed up.
b. I think this matter should be done this way.

(512) a. I am very well acquainted with him.
b. He's not familiar enough with this book.
c. You can be considered familiar with this road.
(513) a. He said he doesn't know Mr. Lee well enough to say that.
    b. Yesterday the meat my wife cooked was not done. I not only
did not dare tell her, but also had to say: "It's very
delicious."

(514) a. I did not join their organization.

(515) a. When did you start yesterday?

(517) a. Please watch these things for me.

(518) a. Two and two is four.
    b. Counting him in, there are five of us.

(519) a. I have to save some money lest I should have nothing to spend
in the future.
    b. I have that book. If you want to read it I will lend it to
you, to save your buying it.

(521) a. I'll keep these two sheets of paper, so that I will have
some paper to use tomorrow.

(522) a. If it is within thirty dollars, I will buy it.

(523) a. I live in a quiet neighborhood.

(524) a. He came and asked me to eat out with him, but I couldn't make it.
    b. I have arranged with him to meet at six o'clock tomorrow.

(525) a. That newspaper man sells not only local papers, but also
papers from other places.
DIÈRSHIÈRKE – KÂN SHÙ, KÂN BÀO

I. Dùihuà

Yòu yìtiān, Zhàò Xs. xiàle bān, méi shì, jiǔ dào Sì Xs. nèr qu kànkan, tān yìtiān.

Zhàò: Sì Xs., méichūqu a?

Sì: Ài! Zìān. Cōng nàr lái?

Zhàò: Wǒ xiàle bān, méi shì, lāi kànkan nǐn.


Sì: Nǐn shuōdē hēn duì. Zhěxīē rìzī òuzhoubié qíngxìng zēnmeyàng?


Sì: Wǒmen xīnjíàode rēn xiǎng, zhīyǒu zōngjiāo nèng jiājiù yǐqìdē wèntí. Yāoshí rén rèn dōu yǒu lìxīn, ài rén de xīn, shǐjìéshànggě wèntí, jīu jiānánduōu. Bùzhīdào nǐn yǐweī zēnmeyàng?

Zhàò: Nǐn shuōdē bǔcuō. Bǔguō wǒ dùyu zōngjíàode dāolǐ, zhīdǎo tāi shāo, yīhòu déi hǎohào dérde yānjǐuyānjū. (Zhàò Xs. kànjiàn Sì Xs. zhūōzhīzhǎng fāngzhē yībēn shū.) Nǐn kàn shènmé shù ne?

Sì: Shì yīběn guānyu gòngchànrzhǔyì de shū. Wǒ xiǎng duō zhīdào yědiān rèn gòngchànbùhú yīdǎolǐ. Nǐn yě xǐhuān kàn shù ma?


Sì: Nǐn chǎng kàn shènmé shù?


Zhào: Nà yídìng. Wényánde shū nǐn yě néng kàn ma?


SI: Bùguò wǒmén Měiguó rén, juēde Déwēn, Fàwēn, mèiyī Zhōngwén zěnmé nán shīlè.


SI: Shéi shuō bushí ne! Wǒ shuō huà, sīzhēng jiū zǒngshì bǔzhūn.


Zhào: Zhōngguó rén shuō Yīngwén shuōbuhāo, yě yǐyàngde chángcháng chū xiǎohuār. Nǐn shuō dúl būdú?

SI: Yě dúl.

Zhào: Nǐn tíngjiānguó zhēgē gūshì ba. Yǒu yíge Zhōngguó xuēshèng, tíngjiān yǒude rén zài jīéshào wánle yǐshòu, shuō, "I'm charmed." Kēshī ta mèitíngqīngchu. Yǒu yīcì bùrèn gěi tā jīéshào yìwéi xiáojìe, nēige rén shuō, "Zhēitiān shì Lǐ Xī." Tā gǎnjīn shuō, "I'm charming."


Zhào: Zhēn yōuyìsī. (Kànkan bǐāo) Huǒ! Yījīng liùdìǎn le. Wǒ děi zǒuē.

SI: Máng shēnmé?

Zhào: Wǒ jǐntiān wǎnshāng yǒu yíge yuēhuī.

SI: Jǐdiǎn ne?

Zhào: Qǐdiǎn. Wǒ hǎi děi xiān huǐ jīā.

SI: Hǎi kěyì zhī zú shēifen zhōng.


SI: Hǎo, nèmē zǎijìān.
II. Shēngzī Yòngfǎ

526. xīnwén  N: news
527. fènr  M: issue, number (of something published periodically)
   a. Tā tiāntiān zǎoshang mǎi yífènr bào.
528. tímu  N: topic, theme
528.1 bāoshangde dàtímu  headlines
529. zǐxī  SV/A: be careful/carefully (cf. liúshēn, xiāoxin)
   a. Tā nèige rén hěn zǐxī.
   b. Qǐng nǐ zài zǐxīde kàn yīcì.
530. wúxiàndiàn  N: radio
531. jīqì  N: machine
532. zhùyǐ  VO: pay attention (cf. liúshēn)
   AV/V: pay attention to /pay attention
   a. Shàng kè de shíhou qǐng ni zhù yídān yī.
   b. Qǐng nǐ zhùyǐ nèige rén.
   c. Tā hěn zhùyǐ niánshū.
533. zhèngzhī  N: politics
534. jīngjí  N/SV: economy/be economical
535. zōngjiào  N: religion
535.1 xīn zōngjiào  VO: believe in religion
536. jiàoyù  N: education
537. fūzā  SV: be complicated (opposite of jiāndān)
   a. Zhèijiān shìqīng hěn fūzā.
538. kělián  SV: be pitiful (cf. kěxī)
   a. Nèige qióng rén zhēn kělián.
539. jiējué  V: solve, settle
   a. Zhēige wèntí, méi fǎzǐ jiējué.
540. zhùyǐ  N: principle (-ism)
540.1 gōngchānzhùyǐ  N: communism
541. xiǎoshuōr  N: novel
542. zázhī  N: magazine
543. huàbào  N: pictorial magazine
544. wényán  N: literary language, classical style
   a. Nèiběn shū shì yòng wényán xiěde.
545. chá
545.1 cháchulai
545.2 chá zì
V: investigate, inspect, look up
RV: find out about
VO: look up words
546. zìdiǎn
546.1 chá zìdiǎn
N: dictionary
VO: consult the dictionary

a. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ chácha zhèige zì.

547. cāi
547.1 cāizháole
V: guess
RV: guessed it

a. Nǐ cāicai shìshì.
b. Wǒ cāile bǎntiān, méicāizháo.

548. báihuà(r)
548.1 báihuàr xiāoshuò
N: colloquial language, vernacular style
novel in the vernacular

a. Wényán, báihuà fǎ dōu kànđōng.

549. xiěfǎ
549.1 shuōfǎ
549.2 kǎnfǎ
N: the way of writing
N: the way of speaking
N: point of view, way of looking at things.

550. sìshēng
N: four tones (of the Chinese Mandarin
language)

551. zhǔn
551.1 zhǔn shíhou
SV/A: be accurate/certainly
on time

a. Wǒde bǐbǐ bùzhǔn.
b. Qǐng nǐ zhǔn shíhou lái.
c. Wǒ míngtiān zhǔn lái.

III. Jūzi Gòuzào

1. Xiǎoxin, Liúshén, Zhùyì and Zǐxì Compared:

These four expressions are interchangeable in the sense of being care-
ful. In addition, zhùyì carries the meaning of being attentive or
concentrating one's attention on something; zǐxì means to be meticulous.
The following chart clarifies their parts of speech in usage:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>xǐǎoxin</th>
<th>liúshén</th>
<th>zhùyì</th>
<th>zǐxì</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SV</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VO</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

209
1.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

1.11 Be careful in your work.
1.12 Spend your money carefully.
1.13 He is careful about his clothes.
1.14 Please be very careful about your diet.
1.15 Pay attention to what I say.
1.16 He takes no care of his things.
1.17 Look out, the train is coming.
1.18 Be careful, don't drop it.
1.19 Give this matter your careful attention.
1.20 Accidents occur when people are not careful.

2. The Translation of "Care":

Although this English word is not as bad as "make" in its wide varieties of meaning, it is bad enough to warrant special attention to its many uses. Listed in the following are its most common uses:

2.1 It may be translated as guān or zhīhu, meaning "mind" or "pay a damn":

Wǒ bùguān (or bùzhīhu) ni qù būqù?
(I don't care whether you go or not?)

2.2 It may be translated as guān in the sense of taking care of:

Zhèijian shì, shéi guān?
(Who takes care of this matter?)

Wǒ zuǐ buxīhuān guān jiālǐ de shǐqìng.
(I hate to take care of household chores.)

2.3 It may be translated as zhǔyì, lǐshēn, zìlǐ or xīn in the sense of being careful. (Sec 1. above)

2.4 It means xīhuan or ài in the sense of caring for:

Wǒ buxīhuān chī yú.
(I don't care for fish.)

2.5 When used in the pattern "leave in...care", it may be translated as jiāo...guān:

Běi zhèijian shì jiāo(gei) ta guān ba.
(Let's leave this matter in his care.)

2.6 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.61 The child is ill for lack of care.
2.62 He doesn't take care of his money.
2.63 I confided my property to his care.
2.64 This matter demands special care.
2.65 Too much care cannot be exercised in writing letters.
2.66 He takes great care in the use of words.
2.67 I don't care a bit for what he says.
2.68 He may go anywhere he likes for all I care.
2.69 I do not care much for swimming.
2.70 The children were left in the care of their grandfather.
3. **Kēlián and Kēxi Compared:**

We should not be confused about the meaning and usage of these two words. Kēlián means to pity, be pitiful or pitiable while Kēxi means "too bad", "what a pity" or "unfortunately". The former can serve as a verb or a stative verb while the latter is most often used as a movable adverb. The former is used in a situation that deserves pity and sympathy while the latter is used in one that creates disappointment.

Kēxi zuōtian tā méilái.
(Too bad he didn't come yesterday.)

Nèige qiōnggrén duóme kēlián ne! Wǒ hěn kēlián tā.
(How pitiful that poor man is! I really pity him.)

(Note that when kēlián is used as a verb, the second syllable usually becomes unaccented.)

3.1 Because of the specific differences in meaning between these words, kēlián only refers to people and other living things that arouse human sympathy while kēxi may refer to both animate and inanimate things:

Tā zhēn kēlián, qiōngde lián chīfàn de qián dōu méiyǒu.
(He is truly pitiable. He is too poor to know where his next meal will come from.)

Kēxi nèige zhùōzi huìliè.
(Too bad that table is broken.)

3.2 **Exercise** - Translate into Chinese:

3.21 She is very intelligent. Too bad she isn't very pretty.

3.22 God pities those who pity others.

3.23 Unfortunately it rained yesterday; otherwise we would have had a grand time.

3.24 People who have wives are pitiful; people who don't are pitiful too.

3.25 Look what a pity it is!

IV. **Fāyín Liànxi**

1. "Jīntian wǎnbàoshàng yǒu shěnme xīnwén?" "Wǒ lián dà tímu hái méikàn ne."

2. "Wǔxiǎndiànlíde guānggāo nǐ zhǔyìle meiyōu?" "Wǒ cónglái bùtīng guānggāo."


4. "Tā bùshí yānjū jiàoyù ma?" "Wǒ yíwéi tā shí xué zhèngzhī jǐnjī de ne."

5. "Zhēige wèntí nǐ shuō zěnmé jījiùē?" "Zhēige wèntí tài fūzā, wǒ kàn wǒmén liánge rén jījiùēbùliè."
6. "Nǐ juéde shénme rén zul kǎilián?" "Wǒ xiǎng bǔxìn zǒngjiào de rén zul kǎilián."

7. "Zhèige zázhishangde xiǎoshuōr nǐ kǎnguò meiyou?" "Tīng shuō nèige zázhí cháng jiāng gòngchǎnzhùyǐ, wǒ bǔkàn."

8. "Nǐ húl chā zìdìān bùhuì?" "Wǒ bùchá zìdìān. Yǒu bùrènshì zī, wǒ kěyì cāi."

9. "Shuō Zhōngguò huà, yào shì shìshēng bùzhūn, bié rèn nèng dōng ma?" "Yēxū kěyì dōng yídianr."

10. "Tā fānde nèige xiǎoshuōr, shì yōng wényán fānde, shì yōng báihuà fānde?" "Dàgāi suānshí bāihuà."

V. Wèntí

1. Nèitiān Zhào Xs. wèi shénme dào Sī Xs. nèr qu? Sī Xs. yuànyì ta qù ma? Sī Xs. wēn ta shénme?

2. Zhào Xs. kàn báo le meiyou? Tā kàn de shì shénme báo? Tā zìxī kànle meiyou? Bāoshang yǒu shénme xīnwēn? Nèige xīnwēn Sī Xs. shì zēnme zhīdào de?

3. Zhào Xs. shuō wèi shénme fēijī cháng chūshī? Nǐ yīweī tā shuōde dūl būdūl?

4. Zhào Xs. shuō Ōzhoude qíngxìng zēnmeyàng? Tā dúiyu shíjiè-dáshí hěn yóuyánjiū ma?

5. Sī Xs. yīweī shǐjíeshangde wèntí yīngdāng zēnmé jiējué? Zhào Xs. dúiyu zǒngjiào yóuyánjiū ma?

6. Sī Xs. de zhūzīzhāng fāngzhè yīben shénme shǔ? Tā wèi shénme yào kàn nèiben shǔ?

7. Zhào Xs. yě xǐhuān kàn shǔ ma? Tā kàn shénme shǔ? Tā juéde kàn shǔ yǒuyīlái ma? Tā kàn de shǔ, ta jídēzhǔ ma?

8. Sī Xs. nèng kàn Zhōngwén shǔ bùnēng? Tā shǐ kàn wényánde hǎishi kàn báihuàde?


10. Sī Xs. yīweī Zhōngwén nán ma? Zhào Xs. yīweī xué wǎiguówén yīng-dāng zēnmé liānxì?

11. Méiguó rèn xué Zhōngwén wèi shénme méiyōu xué Dèwén Fàwén nèmě róngyì?

12. Shuō Zhōngguò huà, shìshēng hěn yàojīn ma? Yào shì shìshēng bùzhūn, yǒu shénme huālichū?

13. Zhōngguò rèn xué Yīngwén yōu shénme nánchu? Nǐ bǎ Zhào Xs. shuōde nèige xiàohuār shuō yìshū?

15. Zhao Xs. wèi shénme yào zǒu? Tā děi xiǎn dao shénme dìfāng qu?
17. Nǐ yìwéi shìjièshāng de wèntí yīngdāng zěnme jiējué?
18. Nǐ yìwéi fēijī chǎng chūshè shì shénme yuánǔ?
20. Nǐ xué Zhōngwén you shénme nánchū?

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?
1. Yàoshi nǐde pénghòu lái kàn ni, nǐ kànjiàn ta, nǐ shuō shénme?
2. Qīng nǐ bǎ jǐntiān bǎoshāngde dà tímu shuō yīshuō.
3. Yàoshi yǒu rén wèn ni, Zhōngguó shū, nǐ kàn dedōng ma? Nǐ shuō shénme?
4. Qīng nǐ bǎ Měiguó rén xué Zhōngwén de nánchù shuō yīshuō.
5. Yàoshi nǐ qu kàn nǐde pénghòu, tánle yīhuír, nǐ yào zǒu, nǐ zěnme gěn nǐde pénghòu shuō?

VII. Gùshì
(On Record)

VIII. Fǎnyì
1. Translate into Chinese:
1.1 Have you bought an evening newspaper? What does it say?
1.2 I only get the political news from the headlines. I never read the details.
1.3 You have to read this book carefully.
1.4 He is a meticulous person.
1.5 Please turn off the radio.
1.6 She uses a machine for laundering.
1.7 Will this machine work?
1.8 I can't get anyone to take notice of what I wear.
1.9 Pay attention to what he said.
1.10 Did you notice the radio news this morning?
1.11 He said he is not interested in religion.
1.12 The relationship is fairly complicated.

1.13 Not only has that old lady lost her son, but she is terribly poor. She is such a pitiful case.

1.14 I think both the people who haven't any religion, and these who have a religion but don't live it, are to be pitied.

1.15 Could you help me to solve this problem?

1.16 Some people believe that communism can solve the problems of this world.

1.17 That novel is written in vernacular style.

1.18 When I read a book which is written in classical style, I have to look up words in a dictionary.

1.19 I don't like to look up words in a dictionary. It's too much trouble. Whenever I run into words I don't know I just guess at them. Sometimes I guess right.

1.20 I don't think there is any way of making my tones accurate.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(527) a. Every morning he buys an issue of newspaper.

(529) a. He is a very careful man.
   b. Please read it through carefully once more.

(532) a. Please pay a little attention when you are in class.
   b. Please watch that man.
   c. He pays attention to study very much.

(537) a. This matter is very complicated.

(538) a. That poor man is very pitiful.

(539) a. There is no way to solve this problem.

(544) a. That book is written in classical style.

(546) a. Please look up this word for me.

(547) a. Try to guess it.
   b. After trying for a long time, I still didn't guess it.

(548) a. He can read both classical and vernacular styles.

(551) a. My watch is inaccurate.
   b. Please come on time.
   c. I will certainly come tomorrow.
Yǒu yītiān, Sī Xs., Zhào Xs., Zhào Tt. zài yǐkūài rē hē chá.

Zhào Xs.: Kūài fāngjià! 1ē. Sī Xs., nǐn yǒu shénme jīhuà?

Sī: Wǒ hǎi méi juédèng. Wǒmen yǒu duōshǎo rìzǐ jià, wǒ hǎi bǔzhǐ dào ne. Nǐn ne?

Zhào Xs.: Yě méi dìng. Yāoshǐ kěnèng, xiāng dào běǐfāng, Běǐpíng gēn Tiānjīng kǎnqù qu.

Sī: Ó, dúle. Zhào Tt. de fūqín mǔqīn dōu zài Běǐpíng, shī būshí?


Zhào Tt.: Nǐn yǐkūài qu, hǎo buhǎo?

Sī: Hǎo shì hǎo, kěshì wǒ qūbùliăo. Wǒmen děng duō jiù yǒu yīge xǐngqǐde jià.

Zhào Xs.: Yīge xǐngqǐ shì duān yǐdiānr. Zhúhǎo néng zài nèr zhù yǐliàngge yuè. Shùnbùn yě dào fújīngde dīfāng, xiāng shèmè xīshān ne, Wǎnli-chāngchēng a, Mínglíng a, shēnzhīyǔ, Běǐdàihé, dōu qu kǎnqù, cái hǎo.

Sī: Kě būshí ma! Wǒ tīngshūguo Běǐdàihé. Nǐn qùguò ma? Nèige dīfāng dàodǐ zěnme yàng?

Zhào Xs.: Qūguó. Kěshì wǒ juéde bùrú Qīngdào hǎo.

Zhào Tt.: Tā shì Shāndōng rèn, dāngrán shuō Qīngdào hāo le.


Zhào Tt.: Nǐ shūqūhù xiānglái jiu shì zhèiğyāng, Bǔjiè, hǎi shuǐ. Nǐ bǔjiède, zhěnme zhǐdào Qīngdào bǐ Běǐdàihé hǎo ne? Wǒ suīrán měídào Qīngdào qūguó, tīng nǐ zěnme yíshū, wǒ jiù gǎnshūgǒu nǐ shuōde bǔdùi.

Sī: Yīge dīfāng gěn lǐngwài yīge dīfāng bǐ, bēnlái shì hěn nán. Wǒ xiāng liǎnqīng dīfāng yǐdēng shì "gè yǒu suǒ chǎng". Zhào Tt., nǐn zài Běǐpíng zhānhé jīnliǎn?


Zhào Xs: Bēìqīng zhègè dīfáng, dàgāi shì rén rèn xīhuān. Dàodǐ shì zùòde duǒshāo niǎn de shōudū, hòulái yǒu-yǒu hěn duō duò xuéxīáo, zhèn kěyí shūō shì yīge wēnhuá chéng. Suǒyí yìqíé fēngsu xíguān yě dòu gěn biéde dīfáng bùyǐyǎng.


Sī: Bǔcūō. Yǎoshi jīàotōng fāngbiān, gēchùde rèn dōu chāng lǔxìng, yǒu háoxiè fēngsu xīguān, zírán jiù dōu chábudūde.

Zhào Xs: Yǎoshi nème shuō, jīàotōng bùfāngbiàn yě yǒu jīàotōng būfāngbiān de hǎochu. Gēchù yǒu gēchù tèbìé kòngqí, tèbìéde yǎngzi háoxiàng gēng yǒuyǐ. Yǎoshi nèr dōu yǐyǎng, nà lǔxìng hǎi yǒu shénme yǐlǐ?


Zhào Xs: Děle, děle. Fānzhēng wǒ shuō shénme dōu būdūl.

Zhào Tt: Nà dào būjǐliándé. Yǎoshi nǐ shuōde yǒuli, wǒ jiù bùnèng shuō nǐ būdūl.

Sī: Nǐmen dàgāi shénme shìhòu dōngshēn ne?

Zhào Xs: Hái méiyǐdìng. Nǐn fāngjiādìe shìhòu dàsuān zuò shénme?


Sī: Wǒ xiāng yě shì. (Kǎnkàn biāo) wǒ gāi zǒulé.


Zhào Tt: Nèměn nǐn liăbailiă lái chī wǎnfàn, wǒmèn zài tǎntān, hào buhuǎo?
552. jiānglái
MA: in the future, hereafter, later
   a. Jiānglái nǐ zhāngdàle xiǎng zuò shénme shì?

553. dīng
   553.1 dīng hǎo
   553.2 dīng kuài
   553.3 dīng yǒuqián
A: most
   excellent
   fastest
   richest

554. shènzhìyú
   554.1 bùdàn...shènzhìyú
   A: even, to the point of
   not only...but even...
   a. Tā làijíle, lèide shènzhìyú zǒuzhe jiù shùlǐzháole.
   b. Tā bùdàn bùgēn nǐ yào qián, shènzhìyú nǐ gěi ta qián,
      tā dòu bùyào.

555. dàodǐ
   555.1 suǐrán...dàodǐ...
A: after all, at bottom; (what) in the
   world?
   although...after all...
   a. Tā dàodǐ yào zuò shénme?
   b. Zhāng Xs. suǐrán zài Měiguó zhúle hěn jiǔ, dàodǐ tā shì
      Zhōngguó rén, yǒu hěn duō Měiguóde shìqìng, hǎishi bùtài dòng.

556. qíhou
N: climate

557. tóngshí
A: at the same time
   a. Nèige rén cōngmíng, tóngshí yě kěn yònggǒng.

558. kōngqì
N: atmosphere, air
   a. Niúnǎi bùxīnxianle, bié hēi.

559. xīnxīan
   559.1 xīnxīan niúnǎi
   559.2 xīnxīan jīdān
   SV: fresh; new
   fresh milk
   fresh egg

560. wánquán
SV/A: be complete/completely
   a. Tā wánquán bùdǒng.

561. bùtóng
SV: be different (more literary than
   bùyìyàng)
   a. Zhèi liǎngge bùtóng.

562. xiānglái
A: always and customarily, up to now
   a. Wǒ xiānglái bùxīhuàn kàn tā xiěde shū.

563. "gè yǒu suǒ chǎng" I.E.: each one has its own good points
   a. Tāmen liàngge ren shì "gè yǒu suǒ chǎng".
564. qiánhòu  A: all told, altogether, (from beginning to end)
564.1 qiánhòu yìgòng... first and last, altogether
   a. Tā qiánhòu yòngle wǒ bēibāikuí qián.
   b. Wǒ zài Zhōngguó qiánhòu yìgòng zhùle sānshíduōnián.
565. shēnghuò V/N: live/livelihood, living
   a. Tā jǐnlái de shēnghuò zěnmeyàng?
   b. Dōngxi tài gǔ, zěnmé shēnghuò?
566. dào  V: pour
566.1 dào chà VO: pour tea
566.2 dào shuǐ VO: pour water
567. tiǎo  V: choose; select
   a. Wǒ tiǎole yīge hóngde.
568. zhàng  N: account, bill
568.1 jī zhàng VO: put on account, charge
   a. Jīntiān wǒ méidài qián, jī zhàng chéng buchèng?
569. shèndì N: capital
570. wénhuà N: civilization, culture
571. fēngsuì N: custom
572. xǐguān N: habits
573. bújiāndé I.E.: not necessarily (so)
   a. Tā suírán zuò qǐchē, kěshì yě bújiāndé yǒuqìán.
574. jiàotōng N: communication and transportation
575. zìsī SV: be selfish
   a. Nèige rén tài zìsī, nǐ shuō duì buduí?
576. tōng V/RVE: pass through/get through
t76.1 tōng chē to be open to traffic, be accessible
      a. Nèige dìfāng tōng huǒchē ma?
      b. Zuótian wǎnshàng fēng tǎi dàle, suǒyì jīntiān diànhuà dōu
           bùtōngle.
576.2 tōng xīn to correspond by mail
576.3 tōng diànhuà to put through a phone call
576.4 dǎ diànhuà dǎbutōng cannot put through a phone call

III. Jùzi Gōuzào

1. The Translation of "Make":

In the English language there are certain words which, due to usage through the years, have come to mean so many different things that careful discrimination is needed in translation. The verb "to make"
is one of the most troublesome. Here are some of the most common uses of the verb "to make", translated into idiomatic Chinese:

1) He made a table for his wife.
   (Tā gěi ta tā tāi zhuō yī ge zhùzǐ.)

2) That car can make eighty miles an hour.
   (Nǐge chē yī ge zhòngtōu nèng zǒu--or pāo--bāshíyī.)

3) I will make this wall blue.
   (Wǒ yào bā zhēi ge qiánɡ nònɡchénɡ lándè.)

4) Don't make me buy something I don't like.
   (Bié jiào wǒ mǎi wǒ bù xǐhuan de dōnɡxi.)

5) The train will make New York within two hours.
   (Hūòchē zài liǎnɡge zhònɡtōu yǐnèi jiù kěyǐ dào Niuyuē.)

6) Can you make a fire in this wind?
   (Nǐ néng zài fēnglǐ shēnɡ huǒ ma?)

7) Does this make sense to you?
   (Nǐ juéde zhěi ge yǒu dào lǐ ma?)

8) We can make better time if we take this road.
   (Wǒmen yào shǐ zǒu zhě lǐ tāo lù jiù kěyǐ shēnɡ shíhou.)

9) I will make out a list tomorrow.
   (Wǒ mínɡtiān kāi yī ge dānzi.)

10) She had her old coat made over.
    (Tā bǎ yījīn jiù yīshànɡ gānle.)

11) My mind is made up.
    (Wǒ yǐjīnɡ juédìnɡle.)

12) Can you make out what he means?
    (Nǐ zhīdào tā shì shénme yǐsī ma?)

1.1 Exercise — Translate into Chinese:

   1.11 This is made by hand.
   1.12 He made fifty miles that day.
   1.13 I cannot make anything out of that book.
   1.14 The train makes fast time.
   1.15 That makes me very glad.
   1.16 He just cannot make up his mind.
   1.17 I think what he said doesn't make sense even to himself.
   1.18 We will make home by two thirty.
   1.19 I'll make you like me.
   1.20 It's too cold here. Let's make a fire.
   1.21 He has had his car red, but I don't like it.
   1.22 Will you make out a list of the things you want.
   1.23 I had this fur coat made over for her, but she still doesn't like it.
   1.24 This cloth will make me a good coat.
   1.25 He was made a teacher.

2. The Translation of "Take":

   This word is probably only next to "make" in its complexity in meaning. Here are some of the most common uses of the word:
1) Which room will you take?  
(Nǐ yěo nèijìan wūzi?)

2) Let's take a house in the country for the summer.  
(Wǒmen xiàtiān zài xiāngxià zuì yīsuǒ fāng zhù ba.)

3) Let me take your suitcase.  
(Wǒ gěi nǐ hǎi zhèige xiāngzi.)

4) Will you let me take your car?  
(Wǒ kěyì yòng nǐde qìchē ma?)

5) It took me a long time to get here.  
(Wǒ yōngle hén duōde gōngfu cài dào de zhèr.)

6) We ought to take it easy in this kind of weather.  
(Zhèmé rède tiānqì, wǒmen zúlǎo mānmānrde zuò.)

7) I took for granted that he wouldn't come.  
(Wǒ yìwèi tā bùlái le ne.)

8) The speech was taken down.  
(Néige jiǎngyǔn yǐjīng xièxíale.)

9) Let's take this road.  
(Wǒmen zǒu zhètiáo lù ba.)

10) Where will this road take us?  
(Zhètiáo lù tǒng shēnme difang?)

2.1 Exercise - Translate into Chinese:

2.11 I'll take this article with me.
2.12 It took me two weeks to finish that book.
2.13 He was taken for dead.
2.14 I have taken a house which is very close to yours.
2.15 What do you generally take for breakfast?
2.16 I took down what he said.
2.17 Which train are you going to take?
2.18 This river will take us to his house.
2.19 I wish I could take it easy as you do.
2.20 Which car will you take?
2.21 How long does it take to go there?
2.22 He took a room at my friend's house.
2.23 I offered him five hundred dollars but he wouldn't take it.
2.24 He took me home afterwards.
2.25 I took it for gold, but it was only made of copper.

IV. Fēiyǔn Liánxì

1. "Nǐ jiānglái dǎduō dǎsuàn zuò shénme?"  "Wǒ xiānglái bǔxiǎng jiāng-lái de shìqǐng."

2. "Jìnniánde qíhòu hǎoxiǎng gēn měinián bùtóng, nǐ shuō ne?"  "Wǒ kàn bǔjìándé ba?"

3. "Huáshèndùnde jiàozǒng fāngbiàn bùfāngbiàn?"  "Mèiguóde shǒudóu, nǐ xiǎng jiàozǒng hǎi néng bùfāngbiàn ma."

4. "Zhǐ lǐnxǐng de fēngsū xígùán, nèige difang hǎo?"  "Wǒ xiǎng shì gěi nǐ suǒ chāng."
5. "Zhèi chēlìde kōngqì wèi shénme zènme huài?" "Chǒu yǎn de rén tài duō."
7. "Lǎojià, qǐng ni géi wo dào yìwǎn chá, shuǐ yě xǐng." "Nǐ dàodī yào shénme?"
8. "Nǐ mǎi yí de shíhòu, wèi shénme tiāo nème dà gōngfu?" "Wǒ dǎi tiāo yǐtiǎo xīnxiàn."  
9. "Nǐ zuójìan wèi shénme méigèi wo dà diānhuà?" "Dàile sānclì dou méidàtōng."  
10. "Nǐ shuō zènmeiyàng rēn jiu bǔzǐsīlè?" "Wǒ kàn wēnhuà yàooshi gāo, rēn jiu bǔzǐsīlè."

V. Wèntí
1. Sì Xs. gén Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. yíkuāir hē chá de shíhòu, tāmen tān shénme wèntí?
2. Fāngjiāde shíhòu Sì Xs. yǒu shénme jīhuǎ? Tā zhídào bùzhídào tā you dúshao tiān jià?
3. Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. dǎsuàn dào nàr qu? Tāmen juédìngle meiyīng?
4. Sì Xs. wèi shénme bùnèng gèn Zhào Xs. Zhào Tt. yíkuāir qu?
5. Dào Bēipǐng qu lúxǐng zulǎo dēi zhù duó jiā? Dōu yǐngdāng dào fūjīn shénme dīfāng qù?
6. Zhào Xs. dào Bēidàihē qúguo meiyīng? Tā shuō Bēidàihē zènmeiyàng?
7. Zhào Xs. juéde Qīngdào zènmeiyàng?
8. Zhào Tt. dào Qīngdào qúguō meiyīng? Tā shuō Zhào Xs. shuōde huà dū bǔdūi?
9. Zhào Tt. zǎi Bēipǐng qiánhòu zhùguó dūshào shíhòu? Tā shí zài Bēipǐng shàngde zhōngxué ma?
10. Zhào Tt. shuō Bēipǐng yǒu shénme hǎochu? Bēipǐngde shēnghuó zènmeiyàng?
11. Zài Bēipǐng pùzǐlì mǎi dōngxī de qīngxīng zènmeiyàng?
12. Zhào Xs. shuō Bēipǐngde fēngsu xíguān wèi shénme gèn bùchū bùtōng? Zhào Tt. de yīsī zènmeiyàng?
13. Zhào Xs. shuō jiāotōng būfāngbiān yǒu shénme hǎochu? Zhào Tt. shuō jiāotōng būfāngbiān yǒu shénme húluíchu? Sī Xs. de yīsī zènmeiyàng?
14. Shī bushī Zhào Xs. shuō shénme Zhào Tt. dōu juéde būdūi?
15. Fāngjiāde shíhòu Sì Xs. dǎsuàn zuò shénme?
16. Fāngjiāde shíhòu nǐ dǎsuàn zuò shénme? Dào shénme dīfāng qu lűxǐng?
17. Nǐ juéde fāngjiāde shíhòu qu lűxǐng yǒu shénme hǎochu?
18. Zài chéng lǐtōu zhūde rēn, dào xiāngxi qu zhū jītīn yǒu shénme hǎochu?

221

20. Qǐng nǐ yòng Zhōngguó huà jiāng yǐjīng zìsī zhèige zì.

VI. Nǐ Shuō Shénme?

1. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu rén yuē nǐ yīkùlīr qu lǚxíng, kēshì nǐ qǔbùliǎo, nǐ zěnme gēn ta shuō?

2. Yàoshi bié rén shuōde huà, nǐ tīngzhe bùdú, nǐ zěnme bàn?

3. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu rén lǎo juéde nǐde huà bùdú, nǐ zěnme bàn?

4. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu rén wèn nǐ, shì tāde Zhōngguó huà shuōde hǎo, háishi tā tàitaide Zhōngguó huà hǎo, nǐ zěnme shuō?

5. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou zài nǐ jiālì zuòle yǐhuǐr yào zǒu, nǐ shuō shènmé?

VII. Bāishí

A: Nǐnde Zhōngguó huà shì zài nǎr xuéde?
B: Yě cháng cuò. Zhōngguó huàde shìshēng zhèn nán.
A: Nǐnde Zhōngwén shì zài xuéxiǎo xuéde ma?
B: Duìle. Wǒ zài Zhōngguó shàngguó zhōngxué.
A: Nǐ Zhōngguó shū dōu néng kàn ma?
B: Báihuàde xīng. Wényán de děi chā zìdiǎn.
A: Nǐ kàn zázhī de shíhou nǐ yǒu wèntí meiyǒu?
B: Yě nǐ bù rènshìde zǐ. Kēshì yǐsì ch'àbùdǔ kěyǐ dōng.

VIII. Fǎnyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 I not only find it hard to know future events, but I don't even know what's going on now.

1.2 The most I can do is to give all the money I have.

1.3 He said he hadn't even heard of him.

1.4 Why in the world don't you want to charge it to his account?

1.5 The food there is not always tasty, but after all, it is fresh.

1.6 If the climate is so bad, how is it possible for people to live there?
1.7 At the sea shore, not only is the scenery beautiful, but the air is fresh, too.
1.8 You don't like that fellow, and yet (at the same time) you say he's OK!
1.9 The atmosphere of the meeting was excellent.
1.10 I know the story, but not completely; after all I didn't see it myself.
1.11 These two methods differ somewhat, but each has its good points.
1.12 He has borrowed fifty dollars from me all told.
1.13 How is life over there?
1.14 Will you please pour me a cup of tea?
1.15 It is difficult to choose. The more you try to make a choice the less you succeed.
1.16 Do you have a charge account in this store?
1.17 This is the capital. You probably notice that the customs and habits differ from other places.
1.18 People who have culture are not necessarily unselfish.
1.19 All communications such as train, boat, plane, mail, telephone, telegraph are cut off.
1.20 Even if you try to call him, you won't necessarily get through.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(552) a. Later when you grow up, what do you want to do?
(554) a. He was terribly tired, so tired that he went to sleep walking. 
   b. He not only isn't asking money from you, but even if you give it to him, he won't accept it.
(555) a. What in the world does he want to do?
   b. Although Mr. Chang has been living in America for a long time, yet he's a Chinese after all and there are still quite a few American ways he doesn't understand too well.
(557) a. That person is clever, and at the same time he is willing to study hard.
(559) a. The milk is spoiled. Don't drink it.
(560) a. He doesn't understand a thing.
(561) a. These two are not alike.
(562) a. I have never liked to read his books.
(563) a. Each of those two men has his own talents.
(564) a. He used two hundred dollars of mine altogether.
   b. I lived in China for more than thirty years all told.
(565) a. How is he lately?
        b. Things are too high; how can we live?

(567) a. I have chosen a red one.

(568) a. I didn't bring any money today. Could you charge it?

(573) a. Although he has a car, he isn't necessarily wealthy.

(575) a. That fellow is too selfish. Don't you think so?

(576) a. Is that place reached by train?

        b. The wind was very strong last night, so all the telephones
           are out of order today.
SI: Dèlé. Wǒ zhè shì suífáían luàn shuō, mánahūhū, dōng yìjù, xī yìjù. Nǐmen chāng shuō "shuō huà róngyì, zuò shí nán." Wǒ kàn shuō huà yě bùjiàndé róngyì. Xuē shuō huà zhēn shì "huòdào lǎo, xuēdào lǎo".


SI: Bùzhīdào yòu zhēiyàngrde shū méiyǒu?


SI: Nǐn xiē yǐběn ba.


SI: Hǎo! Nà děi dúshāo nián?


SI: Yě yǒu. "Pángzi bùshí yīkǒu chīde." Dui budul?

II. Shēngzī Yòngfā

557. suīhuà N: proverb, common saying (M: jù)
557.1 suīyǔ(r) N: (interchangeable with suīhuà)
   a. Sūyǔ(r) (or suīhuà) shuō: "Huíde bùnán, nándé bùhul."

578. lèi M: kind, class, category
   a. Wǒ buyuànyí gén zhèlì jùn shuō huà.
579. lǐmào
579.1 yǒulǐmào
N: manners, courtesy
SV: be polite, have manners
a. Nèige háizi běn yǒulǐmào.
b. Lǎshǒu zài wàiguò shí yīzhōng lǐmào.

580. lǐ
580.1 sòng lǐ
N: courtesy, ceremony; gift, present
VO: give gifts
581. guài
V/SV: blame, be offended at/be strange, queer, odd
A: no wonder that
581.1 guàibude
A: no wonder that

581.2 nánguài
a. Wǒ shuōde bùdùì, nǐn bié guài wǒ.
b. Nèige rén zhēn guài.
c. "Lǐ duǒ rén bùguài."

582. jiǎ
SV: be false
a. Tāde húzi shì jiǎde.

583. shēngrì
N: birthday
584. jié
N: festival
585. guò
V: celebrate
585.1 guò shēngrì
VO: celebrate a birthday
585.2 guò nián
VO: celebrate the new year
585.3 guò jié
VO: celebrate a festival
586. bāishìhuò
I.E.: birthday best wishes
586.1 bāinián
I.E.: New Year congratulations
586.2 bāijié
I.E.: seasonal greetings
587. dàoxi
I.E.: congratulations
588. huānyíng
V: welcome
589. bǐjiāo
V/A: compare/comparatively
a. Wǒ bǎ zhèi liǎngge bǐjiāo bǐjiāo.
b. Nèige bǐjiāo dà yǒdīǎnr.

590. būsòng
IE: Don't accompany me further (by guest);
IE: Don't accompany you further (by host)
590.1 bié sòng
I won't accompany you further (by guest only)

591. qǐnghuìfú
IE: Please return (by guest)
592. mànhǒu
IE: Depart slowly, be careful (said to a
friend who has been visiting and is
leaving)
593. dàimàn
IE: I have treated you shabbily (said to
a friend at the close of a party)
594. lǐngjiāo
IE: May I receive your instruction?
(used to introduce a query)

a. Wǒ yǒu yīge wèntí gén nǐn lǐngjiāolǐngjiāo.
595. yángguǐzi  N: "foreign devil," foreigner
   a. Tiān bùpà, dì púpà, jiù pà yángguǐzi shuō Zhōngguó huà.

596. kǎi wánxiào  VO: make fun of, to crack a joke
   a. Nǐ bì gēn wò kǎi wánxiào.

597. mǎhū
d  597.1 mǎmǎhūhū (màmàhūhū)  SV: be careless, not serious minded
   SV: be careless, not serious minded
   a. Tā xiànglái shì mǎmǎhūhū.

598. húdu or (hútu)  SV: be muddled, mixed up, stupid
598.1 húlíhúdí (or húlíhútí)  SV: be muddled, mixed up, stupid
   a. Tā tài húdule. Shénme dōu nèngbǔqǐngchu.

599. Cáo Cāo  N: A hero of the Three Kingdom’s period.
   a. "Shuō Cáo Cao, Cáo Cao jiù dào."

600. zǎowān  A: sooner or later
   a. Tā zǎowān yào dào Zhōngguó qu.

601. pángzi  N: fat person

602. -kǒu
602.1 yīkǒu fàn  M: mouthful, measure for person
     a mouthful of rice
   602.2 jīkǒu(r) rén?  how many persons (in a family)?
   a. "Pángzi bùshì yīkǒu chíde."

III. Jūzi Gōuzào

1. Translation of Conventional Courtesy Remarks:

   Polite usages and small talk are things which cannot satisfactorily
   be translated word by word, or even sentence by sentence, from one
   language to another. The question is not so much "How do you say
   this in Chinese?" as "What would a Chinese say in this situation?"

   The following rambling patter which might be recorded at a social
   gathering cannot be matched phrase for phrase in Chinese. In some
   spot the remark is better omitted—it simply wouldn’t be said in a
   similar Chinese situation. In some cases the appropriate phrase
   isn’t a translation at all, merely what a Chinese would likely say.

   These passages should be studied in parallel as a lesson in Chinese
   social usage. Of course other variants are quite possible. Different
   people have a different repertoire of set phrases and habits of speech.
   This is just one sample.
A Sample of Polite Conversation

Chén: Mr. Wèi, I'd like you to meet my friend, Mr. Liú.

Chén: Wèi Xs., wǒ gěi nín jièshào yīge péngyou. Zhèiwei shì Liú Xs.

Wèi: How do you do, Mr. Liú. I have heard about you for a long time.

Wèi: Liú Xs., jiūyáng, jiūyáng. (lit: mutually)

Liú: Same here, Mr. Wèi.

Liú: Wèi Xs., bǐcǐ, bǐcǐ.

Chén: Wèi, you really shouldn't have done this. You have put yourself to a great deal of trouble.

Chén: Zhènshì bùgǎndìng, Wèi Xs. Tài máfān nǐmén le.

Wèi: (That's all right.) You deserve it. Happy birthday to you. And now will you be so good as to take Mr. Liú in and introduce him to the people inside. I must get back to the door and greet the people who have just arrived.


(Later in the reception hall)

Mrs. Wèi: (to a servant) Serve the drinks now, please. (to the guests) Will you all help yourselves please. (to Mr. Xiè) Won't you have some more?

Mrs. Wèi: (duì yǒngrén) Nǎ jiǔ lái ba. (duì kèrén) Qǐng suíbiān, zǐjǐ lái, bié kéqi. (duì Xiè Xs.) Nǐn zài lái diànr.

Xiè: After you please. This drink is delicious. May I ask what brand it is?

Xiè: Nǐn xiān lái. Zhè jiǔ zhènhào. Shì shènmé páizi de?

Mrs. Wèi: Mr. Wèi brought it from France. I'm glad you like it.

Mrs. Wèi: Mr. Wèi bāoguò lái, fǎguó dài. Nǐn xǐhuān, qǐng duō hé diànr.

Servant: Dinner is served, Madam.

Yǒngrén: Tài tài, fànlǎo le.

Mrs. Wèi: Shall we all go out to the dining room?

Mrs. Wèi: Shǎn wǒ lái dào fǎngtīng zuò ba. (Zài fǎngtīnglǐ dǒu zuò-hǎole yǐhòu)

(After all seated in the dining room)

Mrs. Xiè, which kind of meat would you prefer, or would you like some of each?

Xiè Tt., nǐn xǐhuān néige cài, hǎishì yǐyángr yào yídìānr?
Mrs. Xiè: I beg your pardon?

Xiè Tt: Duìbùqǐ, nín shuō shénme?

Mrs. Wèi: Which one do you prefer?

Wèi Tt: Nín yào nèige cài?

Mrs. Xiè: A little of the fried chicken, if you please.

(Later, Mr. Liú turns to Mr. Wèi)

Liú: Mr. Wèi, may I ask a favor of you? Perhaps this isn't the proper time for such matters, but I want to take advantage of the opportunity.

Wèi: Go right ahead, Mr. Liú. What can I do for you?

Liú: ...I shall be everlastingly obliged to you if you can do this.

Wèi: That's nothing at all. It will be a pleasure to do it for you.

Liú: You are so obliging. I appreciate it very much.

Wèi: The pleasure is all mine.

(Later)

Mrs. Wèi: Mrs. Lín, which kind of ice cream would you like? This is coffee and this is orange.

Mrs. Lín: Thank you, Mrs. Wèi, but if you will pardon me I won't take any dessert. It has been so appetizing a meal that I have had more than enough already.

(Later)

Chén: Mr. Liú, I think we'd better be going, don't you?

Liú: Let's see. It's ten-thirty. Would it be polite for us to leave so soon?

Chén: Oh, this isn't a formal occasion. We can leave any time we like. Besides, Mr. and Mrs. Wèi will understand that we have a long way to go home.


Liú: ...Yào shì nín nèng bāng wǒ zhèige mǎng, nà zhèn tài hào le.


Wèi: (Smiles appreciatively)

(Yǒu guò le yíhuīr)

Wèi Tt: Lín Tt., nín yào nèi yàngrde bǐngjílǐng? Yǒu kāfèide jùzhídé.


(Later)

Chén: Liú Xs., wǒ xǐng wǒmen déi zǒulé ba?

Liú: Wǒ kànkàn. Shìdiǎnbàn. Zēnme zǎo zǒu būdǎ hǎoyílì ba?


230
Liu: Just as you say. (stepping up to Mrs. Wei) Mrs. Wei, this has been a delightful evening and it was every good of you to welcome a stranger to your party.

Wei: I'm so glad you could be with us, Mr. Liu. It's been a pleasure meeting you, and I trust you will come to see us again when there aren't so many people and we can get really acquainted. Good night, Mr. Liu.

Liu: Good night, Mrs. Wei. I certainly shall. (to Mr. Wei) Good night, Mr. Wei.

Wei: Good night, Mr. Liu. I'm so glad Mr. Chen brought you. We must see more of each other.

Chen: Good night to both of you. I've had an awfully good time, and thank you ever so much for giving me such a lovely party.

Mrs. Wei: Do come and see us. And thank you for coming.

Wei: You good too! Zài jiàn, Líu Xs. Mânzòu, mânzòu.

IV. Fāyīn Liànxi

1. Lǐ duō rén bùguǎi.
2. Guī duó bùguǐ, jiàn bùjuàn.
3. Tiăn bùpà, dì bùpà, jiǔ pà yángguīzi shuò Zhōngguó huà.
4. Shuò huà róngyì, zuò shí năn.
5. Huídào lão, xuédào lão.
7. Shuò Cáo Cáo, Cáo Cáo jiù dào.
8. Bùpà măn, jiǔ pà zhăn.
11. Dáoxī, dáoxī.
12. Huânyíng, huânyíng.
15. Wǒ gēn nǐ fângjiăo diânr shí.

V. Wântí

1. Sī Xs. gên Zhào Xs. tâng yi shênme lăile? Sī Xs. hû shuò Zhōngguóde Kèqiùâ ma? Tâ dōu hû shênme?
2. 你hs. juède shènme yàngrde kēqihuà zui nán? zhào hs. yīwei nǐ- yàngrde kēqihuà kēyí bùyòng? nǐyàngrde fēi yòng būkè?

3. zhào hs. yīwei shènme yàngrde kēqihuà róngyi xué? shènme yàngrde kēqihuà nánxué?

4. shènme yàngrde fēngsu xīguàn Měiguó gen Zhōngguó yǐyàng? shènme yàngrde bùyìyàng?

5. Dào pěngyòu jiǎ qù, pěngyòu sòng kǎrēn chúlái, kǎrēn yǐnggǔi shuō shènme? yàoshi nǐ sòng kǎrēn dào měnkǒu, nǐ shuō shènme?

6. Zhōngguó ren qíng kě, chīfàn, yīqián chǎng shuō shènme? kǎrēn zǒu de shǐhòu shuō shènme?

7. Sì hs. juède kēqihuà yōuyòng méiyǒu? tā hǎi xiǎng xué shènme huà?

8. Sì hs. hū shuō nǐ jì jì Sūhuà? nǐ hū shuō nǐ jì jì Sūhuà?

9. wèi shènme zhào hs. shuō Sì hs. bùnèng suànshì yángguǐzi? Sì hs. juède ta zījìde Zhōngguó huà zēnmeyàng?

10. zhào hs. juède shuō huà nán bùnán? tā juède Měiguó rèn dú shuō huà hěn zhùyì, wèi shènme?

11. Sì hs. yīwei Měiguó ren shuō huà dōu hěn qīngchú ma?

12. Zhōngguóde Sūhuà yòu gèn Měiguóde chàbùdùde ma? nǐ zhīdào jīge?

13. yòu méiyǒu guānyú Zhōngguó Sūhuàde shū? yòu méiyǒu guānyú Měiguó Sūhuàde shū? yòu méiyǒu Zhōngwén yīngwén zài yīkuǎir de?

14. zhào hs. yào xiě nǐyàngrde shū ma? sì hs. nèng bùnèng xiě nǐ- yàngrde shū?

15. "Bàishǒu", "bānǐán", "bàjié", "dàoxī" dōushí zài shènme shǐhòu yòng?

16. "Lǐ duō rèn bǔguài" shì shènme yǐsǐ? "Lǐ duō rèn bǔguài" de "lǐ" zī shí shènme yǐsǐ?

17. "Tiān bǔpà, dì bǔpà, jiù pà yánqíngzhī shuō Zhōngguó huà," shì shènme yǐsǐ?

18. "Shuō huà róngyi, zuò shí nán," gèn "huódào lǎo, xuédào lǎo," dōu shí shènme yǐsǐ?


VI. nǐ shū shènme?

1. yòu rèn guó shēngrì, guòníán, huǒshì guò jié de shǐhòu, nǐ gèn tāmen dōu shuō shènme?

2. yòu rèn jiēhūndé shǐhòu shuō shènme? shēng xīxīhǎir ne?

3. nǐ yào wèn wěntí, zài wèn yīqián, nǐ yǐngdǎng xiān shuō shènme?
4. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō nǐ hěn yǒulǐmào, nǐ shuō shénme?
5. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō nǐ de Zhōngguó huà shuōde hěn hǎo, nǐ shuō shénme?

VII. Gǔshì
(On Record)

VIII. Fǎnyì

1. Translate into Chinese:

1.1 They are all the same kind of people.
1.2 He has very good manners.
1.3 Tomorrow will be his birthday. What kind of gift are you going to give him?
1.4 I gave him a generous present, because as the Chinese saying goes: "People don't criticize you for being over courteous."
1.5 He himself broke the glass but he blamed it on me.
1.6 What do you say! Is it genuine or a fake?
1.7 What do you say in Chinese on New Year's day?
1.8 When he came back, we had a big party to welcome him.
1.9 Just compare them, you'll find out which is thick and which is thin.
1.10 There is something I don't quite understand; I want to ask you about it.
1.11 Some Chinese call foreigners foreign devils; I don't know why. Maybe they just want to make fun of them.
1.12 This is very important, don't be careless.
1.13 He is so old that he's getting muddled.
1.14 Don't worry. Sooner or later I will give you back the five dollars.
1.15 Eat it. Just a mouthful won't hurt you.

2. Translate back into Chinese:

(577) a. As the saying goes: "To those who know how, it is not difficult; those who find it difficult, don't know how."
(578) a. I don't like to talk with this kind of people.
(579) a. That child has good manners.
b. In the West, hand shaking is a form of courtesy.
(581) a. If I say something wrong, please don't be offended.
    b. That person is very odd.
    c. "People don't criticize a person for being over courteous."

(582) a. His beard is false.

(589) a. Compare these two.
    b. That one is a little bigger.

(594) a. I have a question to ask you. (Please enlighten me.)

(595) a. I fear neither heaven nor earth, but only the way a
    foreigner speaks Chinese.

(596) a. Don't make fun of me.

(597) a. He is always careless.

(598) a. He's too muddled. He doesn't get anything straight.

(599) a. Speak of the devil and he appers.

(600) a. Sooner or later he'll go to China.

(601) a. "A fat person doesn't become fat in one mouthful."
LIST OF NOTES ON SENTENCE STRUCTURE

Lesson 1: (1) The Topic of a Sentence
(2) Purpose of Coming and Going and Directional Ending
(3) Use of 唱 and 憤

Lesson 2: (1) Shí—de Construction
(2) The Use of Bǐ
(3) Lián...Dōu (or Yē)

Lesson 3: (1) Adverbs in Associated Pairs
(2) Xiàng and HXoxīǎng
(3) Reduplicated Stative Verbs
(4) Reduplicated Functive Verbs

Lesson 4: (1) Time Expressions
(2) The Position of SV-Yidiānr
(3) If Not...Then...Otherwise

Lesson 5: (1) Vōde Vō, Vōde VO
(2) Duō as an Indefinite Number
(3) Adverbial Use of Stative Verbs
(4) Unusual Relationship of S-V-O

Lesson 6: (1) Time-Spent Expressions (Continued)
(2) (Dǎo)shi..., Kǒshi (Jiǔshi or Búguò)
(3) Must and Mustn't

Lesson 7: (1) Placewords as Objects
(2) Generalizations of Quality, Quantity or Degree
(3) Resultative Verb Endings

Lesson 8: (1) Resultative Verb Endings (Continued)
(2) Various Used of Suǎn

Lesson 9: (1) Lend and Borrow
(2) The Use of Lingwāi
(3) Duō(me), Zěnme, Zhème (Zěnme) and Néme

Lesson 10: (1) The Various Uses of Question Words
(2) The Uses of Zài

Lesson 11: (1) Lái and Qù as RV Endings
(2) The Various Uses of Qǐlái as an RV Endings
(3) The Various Uses of Jiù
Lesson 12: (1) The Bǐ Construction  
(2) The Various Uses of Cái

Lesson 13: (1) Zài, Jiù and Cái Compared  
(2) Zài and Cái Compared  
(3) Jiù and Cái Compared

Lesson 14: (1) Measures  
(2) Reduplicated Measures  
(3) Reduplicated Number-Measures

Lesson 15: (1) Descriptive Complement and Resultative Verb Compared  
(2) The Usage of Chuó

Lesson 16: (1) Multiples and Fractions  
(2) Prestated Topic of a Sentence

Lesson 17: (1) NU-M as a Predicate  
(2) Action-time Relationship

Lesson 18: (1) Ambiguity of Languages  
(2) Some More Bǐ Construction

Lesson 19: (1) Jiù and Cái Further Compared  
(2) The Translation of "More" into Chinese

Lesson 20: (1) Shuài and Diào Compared  
(2) The Translation of "Enjoy" and "Send"

Lesson 21: (1) The Difference Between Guānyù and Duìyu  
(2) The Translation of Yīqián and Yǐhòu  
(3) Other Yǐ- Compounds

Lesson 22: (1) Xiǎoxìn, Liúshén, Zhūyī and Ziān Compared  
(2) The Translation of "Care"  
(3) Kēlián and Kēxi Compared

Lesson 23: (1) The Translation of "Make"  
(2) The Translation of "Take"

Lesson 24: (1) Translation of Conventional Courtesy Remarks
### CHINESE DIALOGUES

#### VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A bùrú B = B bǐ A hǎo = A méiyòu B hǎo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A bùrú B dà = B bǐ A dà = A méiyòu B dà</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àisǐpǐlíng</td>
<td>N: aspirin (M: -piàn)</td>
<td></td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ài chī bǔchǐ</td>
<td>IE: eat it or not as you please</td>
<td></td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ài qu bǔqū</td>
<td>IE: go or not as you please</td>
<td></td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ài zǒu bǔzǒu</td>
<td>IE: leave or stay as you please</td>
<td></td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hàikēsǐ-guǎng</td>
<td>N: X-ray</td>
<td></td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ānjìng</td>
<td>SV: be quiet</td>
<td></td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ānxìándìngyào</td>
<td>N: sleeping pills</td>
<td></td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ãn guǐju</td>
<td>VO: according to custom</td>
<td></td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ãn(zhe)</td>
<td>CV: according to</td>
<td></td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>báihuà(r)</td>
<td>N: colloquial language, vernacular style</td>
<td></td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>báihuàr xiǎoshuò</td>
<td>novel in the vernacular</td>
<td></td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>báicài</td>
<td>N: cabbage (M: -kě, for trees and some vegetables)</td>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǎi jíé</td>
<td>IE: seasonal greetings</td>
<td></td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǎi nián</td>
<td>IE: New Year congratulations</td>
<td></td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǎishību</td>
<td>IE: birthday best wishes</td>
<td></td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bān</td>
<td>M/N: class (the group of students or the period of class)</td>
<td></td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bānfǎ</td>
<td>N: method of doing, way to do something</td>
<td></td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāngōng</td>
<td>VO: to conduct official business</td>
<td></td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāo</td>
<td>V/M: wrap/package, parcel</td>
<td></td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǎoqǐlái</td>
<td>RV: wrap up</td>
<td></td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǎogūǒ</td>
<td>N: parcel, parcel post (M: -jiàn, -ge)</td>
<td></td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǎoshāng</td>
<td>RV: wrap up</td>
<td></td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǎoxiǎnín</td>
<td>VO: buy insurance, guarantee</td>
<td></td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǎo huǒxiǎn</td>
<td>V/SV: guarantee/be safe</td>
<td></td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǎoshāngdè dàtǐmu</td>
<td>VO: buy fire insurance</td>
<td></td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-běi</td>
<td>M: glass of, cup of</td>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běi(zì)</td>
<td>N: cup, glass</td>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

237
běifāng  N: the North
běifāng rén  N: Northerner
Běijīng Dàxué  National Peking University
-bèi  M: times, -fold
bèishū  VO: recite (a lesson); to memorize, to learn by heart
běndí  N: local place, indigenous native
běndí rén  N: natives (of a place)
bǐāo  N: chart, blank, form (M: -zhāng)
bìē sòng  IE: Don't accompany me further (by guest only)
bǐfang  N/V: example/describe with gesture
bǐfangshuō  V: for instance
bǐjiāo  V/A: compare/comparatively
bìjìe  VO: graduate
bìng  N: ice
bìngjīlìng  N: icecream
bīnggān  N: cookies or crackers (M: -kuài, -hè)
bīngjià  N: sick leave
bīngsīle  RV: die of illness
bízi  N: nose
bòwùguān  N: museum
búdān....{bǐngqiē(yē)  not only...but
é rqī(yē)  179
búdān...shènzhìyú...  not only...but even...
būdào  V: less than, not quite (usually followed by a numeral)
búguó  A: but, only
bújiàndé  IE: not necessarily (so)
búlùn (wúlùn)  A: it doesn't matter, no matter what
búsòng  IE: Don't accompany me further (by guest); I won't accompany you further (by host)
búsuān  doesn't count, not reckoned as, not considered
búzài hu  IE: it doesn't matter, I don't care, it makes no difference to
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bùdělǐnɡo</td>
<td>IE: extremely, very; terrific</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bùɡǎn shuō</td>
<td>IE: one doesn't dare say, uncertain</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bùɡuǎn</td>
<td>V: don't care whether, no matter whether</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bùhǎoyǐsì</td>
<td>A/SV: be embarrassed, be shy</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bùrú</td>
<td>V: is not up to, is not as good as</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bùxǔ dònɡ</td>
<td>hands off, don't move</td>
<td>187</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bùtónɡ</td>
<td>SV: be different (more literary than bùyìyàng)</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bù</td>
<td>N: cotton cloth (M: -pǐ, bolt; -mǎ, yard; -chǐ, foot; cùn, inch)</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bù zuòde</td>
<td>made of cloth</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bùxié</td>
<td>N: cotton shoes</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bùyǐshānɡ</td>
<td>N: cotton garment</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buǒli</td>
<td>N: glass, plastic</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buǒlibǐi</td>
<td>N: glass, tumbler</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buǒlide</td>
<td>glass</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buǒli pǐbāo</td>
<td>plastic hand bag</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buǒli zuòde</td>
<td>made of glass or plastic</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cāi</td>
<td>V: guess</td>
<td>209</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cāizháole</td>
<td>RV: guessed it</td>
<td>209</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cài dànzi</td>
<td>N: menu</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cài yóu</td>
<td>N: vegetable oil</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cài yuánzi</td>
<td>N: vegetable garden</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cānguān</td>
<td>V: pay a visit to (a public place) inspect informally, go sightseeing</td>
<td>148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cānjīn</td>
<td>V: participate in, join</td>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cáo Cāo</td>
<td>A hero of the Three Kingdom's period.</td>
<td>228</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎo</td>
<td>N: grass, straw</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎodù</td>
<td>N: lawn</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎomàor</td>
<td>N: straw hat</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cènɡ</td>
<td>M: story (for lóu)</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

239
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>CV...V:</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>côngqi</td>
<td>qi</td>
<td>from...</td>
<td>never before, never do</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cônglai</td>
<td>lai</td>
<td>V:</td>
<td>investigate, inspect, look up</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cônglai...bù...</td>
<td></td>
<td>never before, never do</td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cônglai...(jiù)</td>
<td></td>
<td>MA:</td>
<td>heretofore, in the past</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cônglai...mēi...</td>
<td></td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>conductor</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chá</td>
<td>chā</td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>teacup</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháchulai</td>
<td></td>
<td>V:</td>
<td>taste</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chápiāo</td>
<td>pǐáo</td>
<td>RV:</td>
<td>find out about</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎpiàode</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>to punch tickets,</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cházhǐ</td>
<td>zǐ</td>
<td>to examine tickets</td>
<td>126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cházhǐdiǎn</td>
<td>zhǐdǐǎn</td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>make out (tasting)</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chábēi</td>
<td>bēi</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>look up words</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháyè</td>
<td>yè</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>consult the dictionary</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháng</td>
<td>chāng</td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>strong point (of people)</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chángchūlai</td>
<td>chūlai</td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>length</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chángduān</td>
<td>duān</td>
<td>stocking</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chángwāzi</td>
<td>wāzi</td>
<td>BP:</td>
<td>field</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎngqi gěrr laile</td>
<td>qí</td>
<td>RV:</td>
<td>begin to sing</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎngxī</td>
<td>xī</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>sing opera</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎngzānměishi</td>
<td>zǎnměi</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>sing a hymn</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎo</td>
<td>chǎo</td>
<td>V:</td>
<td>saute, fry</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎo cài</td>
<td>cài</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>to prepare a fried dish</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎocái</td>
<td></td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>a fried dish</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎofàn</td>
<td>fàn</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>to fry rice</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎofànn</td>
<td></td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>fried rice</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎojīdān</td>
<td>jīdān</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>scramble an egg</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎojiādān</td>
<td>jiādān</td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>scrambled egg</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎomiǎn</td>
<td>miǎn</td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>&quot;chow mein&quot;</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chènshān</td>
<td>shān</td>
<td>N:</td>
<td>shirt (M: -jiàn)</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chéng</td>
<td>chéng</td>
<td>SV:</td>
<td>be O.K., be satisfactory</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chéng</td>
<td></td>
<td>V:</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chéngshí</td>
<td>shí</td>
<td>RVE:</td>
<td>(change) into</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chīásīpǐlíng</td>
<td>sīpǐlìng</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>take aspirin</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chīchūlai</td>
<td>chūlai</td>
<td>RV:</td>
<td>make out (tasting)</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chīkǔ</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>suffer bitterly</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chōu yān</td>
<td>yān</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chū</td>
<td>chū</td>
<td>V:</td>
<td>produce (natural and manufactured goods)</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūchān</td>
<td>chān</td>
<td>V/N:</td>
<td>produce/product, produce (natural)</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūhān</td>
<td>hān</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>sweat, perspire</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūhān-</td>
<td></td>
<td>RVE:</td>
<td>make out, distinguish</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūshí</td>
<td>shí</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>have something go wrong,</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chū tàiyan</td>
<td>tàiyan</td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>have an accident</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūzūf</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>sun comes out</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūzhúyí</td>
<td>zhúyí</td>
<td>V:</td>
<td>for rent</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VO:</td>
<td>suggest a plan</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

240
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Entry Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chūjí-zhōngxué</td>
<td>N: junior high school</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūzhòng</td>
<td>N: junior high (abbr. of 378.1)</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūzhòngyī (niánjí)</td>
<td>first year of junior high</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūnjìà</td>
<td>N: spring vacation</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūnjìà-1xìngtuán</td>
<td>Spring Vacation Travel Club</td>
<td>197</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūnxìàoqìdōng</td>
<td>N: spring, summer, fall and winter</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūntian</td>
<td>TW: spring</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūle (chúqu...yīwāi)</td>
<td>in addition to... besides</td>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǔí</td>
<td>N: cook</td>
<td>75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chù</td>
<td>BF: place, office, point feature</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūchù</td>
<td>M: (for dzìfang) specifies localization</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuán</td>
<td>N: everywhere</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuán jiào</td>
<td>V: pass, spread</td>
<td>138</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuánlai chuánqu</td>
<td>VO: propagate religion, to preach the gospel pass around</td>
<td>138</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuǎnzhāng</td>
<td>N: captain (of a boat)</td>
<td>148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuàng</td>
<td>N: bed (M: -zhāng)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuàngdānzi</td>
<td>N: bed sheet (M: -chuàng, -gè)</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Entry Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-dá</td>
<td>M: dozen</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎbuqílái</td>
<td>RV: will not start to fight</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dādeqílái</td>
<td>RV: will start to fight</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎ diànhuà dābutōng</td>
<td>cannot put through a phone call</td>
<td>121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎkǒi</td>
<td>RV: open up</td>
<td>138</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎqílaiè</td>
<td>RV: begin to fight</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎ qiú</td>
<td>VO: play ball</td>
<td>179</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎsìle</td>
<td>RV: killed (by beating or a gun)</td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎtìng</td>
<td>V: to inquire or ask about</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎzhēn</td>
<td>VO: inoculate</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎqiántiān</td>
<td>TW: three days ago</td>
<td>66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāhòutiān</td>
<td>TW: three days from today</td>
<td>66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàjiā</td>
<td>N: everybody</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dà) lǐtáng</td>
<td>N: auditorium</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàxiǎo</td>
<td>N: size</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàxué</td>
<td>N: College, University</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàxué yǐnǐánjí</td>
<td>freshman</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàyī</td>
<td>N: overcoat (M: -jiān)</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàifu</td>
<td>N: medical doctor, physician</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dài(zhe)</td>
<td>V: lead</td>
<td>157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàimàn</td>
<td>IE: I have treated you shabbily (say to a friend at the close of a party)</td>
<td>227</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

241
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>大眼睛(r)</td>
<td>dà yǎnjīng(r)</td>
<td>wear glasses</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>空气</td>
<td>kōng qì</td>
<td>air</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>空气 (r)</td>
<td>kōng qì (r)</td>
<td>air</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>延迟, 废 (cf. 灵)</td>
<td>yán chí, kuì</td>
<td>to delay, waste (cf. 延)</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>延迟时间, 消耗时间</td>
<td>yán chí shíjiān, xiāo hào shíjiān</td>
<td>waste time, take time</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>延迟一个商业事务</td>
<td>yán chí yī gè shèngyè wùshì</td>
<td>delay a business affair</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>中心, 中间</td>
<td>zhōng xīn, zhōng jiān</td>
<td>the center of, middle of</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>菜刀</td>
<td>cài dāo</td>
<td>knife and fork (M: -fèn, -tào)</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不幸</td>
<td>bù xìng</td>
<td>be unlucky</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>倒茶</td>
<td>dào chá</td>
<td>pour</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>倒水</td>
<td>dào shuǐ</td>
<td>pour water</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>而且, 对比</td>
<td>ér qiě, duǐ bǐ</td>
<td>and yet, on the contrary</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>而后, 后来</td>
<td>ér hòu, hòu lái</td>
<td>after all, at bottom; (what) in the world?</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>道理</td>
<td>dào lǐ</td>
<td>teaching, doctrine</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>恭喜</td>
<td>gōng xǐ</td>
<td>congratulations</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>be ready</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>ready, completed</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>get sick</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>cannot be ready on time</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>receive something (as a gift or prize)</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>have a baby</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>gain experience</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>receive money (as a gift or prize)</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>acquire learning</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>gain knowledge</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>灯</td>
<td>dēng</td>
<td>lamp, light</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>指向</td>
<td>dīxiàn</td>
<td>insert (an advertisement, notice, etc.)</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>指向</td>
<td>dīxiàn</td>
<td>put in the paper</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>指向</td>
<td>dīxiàn</td>
<td>put an advertisement in the paper, magazine, etc.</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>指向</td>
<td>dīxiàn</td>
<td>pedicab—man (lit. one who pedals a pedicab)</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>灯号</td>
<td>dēng hào</td>
<td>grade, class</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>弯腰</td>
<td>wān yāo</td>
<td>bow down</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>弯腰</td>
<td>wān yāo</td>
<td>bow the head, lower the head</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>点燃, 火</td>
<td>diǎn huǒ</td>
<td>light, ignite, apply a match to fire</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>点燃, 火</td>
<td>diǎn huǒ</td>
<td>light a fire</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>点燃, 火</td>
<td>diǎn huǒ</td>
<td>light a cigarette</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>点燃, 火</td>
<td>diǎn huǒ</td>
<td>light a match</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>点燃, 火</td>
<td>diǎn huǒ</td>
<td>lighted</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

242
<p>| diànhàoju | N: Telegraph Office 45 |
| diànhèng | N: electric light 64 |
| diànhuàjú | N: Telephone Office 45 |
| diànmèn | N: switch (electric) 65 |
| diànyìng | N: motion picture 178 |
| diànyìngruānzi | N: movie theater 178 |
| diào | V: drop, fall 188 |
| diàoxiālai | RV: come off 188 |
| diàoxiāqu | RV: drop, fall 188 |
| diào yú | VO: fish (with hook and line) 187 |
| diànhàn | N: floor 65 |
| dīlǐ | N: geography 149 |
| dītān | N: rug, carpet (M: -kuài, -zhāng) 75 |
| dīwǔcéng | fifth floor 168 |
| dīyīye | the first page 157 |
| dīng | A: most 217 |
| dīng hǎo | excellent 217 |
| dīng kuài | fastest 217 |
| dīng yōuqíán | richest 217 |
| dīng | V: fix, order 65 |
| dīng dīfang | VO: agree on a place, reserve a place 65 |
| dīnghào | RV: settled 65 |
| dīngqìan | N: deposit (on purchase or rent) 65 |
| dīng shìhòu | VO: make an appointment, set a time 116 |
| dīng yúqīhuí | VO: make a date or an appointment to reserve a seat 126 |
| dōngtian | TW: winter 28 |
| dōngyuàn | N: east yard 27 |
| dōng | V: move, touch 187 |
| dōngbùlìkō | RV: cannot move 187 |
| dōngshēn | VO: start on a journey 198 |
| dōngwù | N: animal 178 |
| dōngwǔyuán | N: the Zoo 178 |
| dōnghuá | N: hole 105 |
| duānchu | N: shortcoming (of people) 167 |
| duānwǎ | socks 56 |
| duì...yōu xìngqu | be enthusiastic about 187 |
| duì...yōuyánjiu | have specialized knowledge in... 36 |
| dūiyu | CV: with respect to, in relation to, towards 179 |
| dūbàn, dūbàn | A: most likely, most of, the majority 19 |
| dūshāo...V...ji... | A: a little bit (more or less) 126 |
| dūshāo...V...yǐdiān... | A: a little bit (more or less) 126 |
| dūxiè | IE: many thanks 125 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>èsīle</td>
<td>RV: die of hunger, starve (to death) 139</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ěrbǐnhoukē</td>
<td>N: ear, nose, throat department 167</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ěrduō</td>
<td>N: ear (M: -zhī, one of a pair) 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ěrděng</td>
<td>second class 125</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāshēng</td>
<td>VO: have a fever 96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāyīn</td>
<td>VO/N: pronounce/pronunciation 157</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fānchēng Zhōngwén</td>
<td>RV-O: translate into Chinese 158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fān(yì)</td>
<td>V/N: translate/translation; translator 158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fān yì shū</td>
<td>VO: translate books 158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fānzhēng</td>
<td>MA: anyway, anyhow 46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fǎndiǎn</td>
<td>N: hotel 198</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fǎng</td>
<td>BF: direction, a region 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fǎngdōng</td>
<td>N: landlord, landlady 64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fǎngzuō</td>
<td>N: house rent 64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fǎng jià</td>
<td>VO: close school for a vacation, to have a vacation 149</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fǎng sāntiān jià</td>
<td>RV: have three days vacation 149</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāngxìa</td>
<td>RV: put down 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēi...bùkě</td>
<td>IE: must, it won't do otherwise 76</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēijīchāng</td>
<td>N: air field 149</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēi</td>
<td>V: waste, use a lot 86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fèiqián/fèi qián</td>
<td>SV/VO: expensive/cost money, take money 86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fèishíhou/fèi shíhou</td>
<td>SV/VO: time consuming/use time, take time 86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fèishí/fèi shí</td>
<td>SV/VO: laborious, troublesome/take a lot of work 86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēn</td>
<td>V: divide, separate, share 139</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēnbié</td>
<td>N: difference 158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēnbiè zài zhèr</td>
<td>the difference is right here 158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēnbiè hěn dà</td>
<td>the difference is considerable 158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fānchēng sānkuài</td>
<td>RV-O: divided into three pieces 158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēn dōngxi</td>
<td>RV-O: give me my five dollars share 139</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēngéi wǒ wūkuài qián</td>
<td>RV: separate 139</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēnkāi</td>
<td>M: pattern for fractions 149</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fēnzhī-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēngfù</td>
<td>SV: be abundant, rich 115</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēng</td>
<td>N: wind 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēngjīng</td>
<td>N: scenery, view 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēngsū</td>
<td>N: custom 218</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fènr</td>
<td>M: issue, number (of something published periodically) 208</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

244
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Simplified</th>
<th>Traditional</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fǔshang</td>
<td>Fǔshàng</td>
<td>甫上</td>
<td>fǔshang</td>
<td>home, residence, family (courteous reference to other people's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fǔzā</td>
<td>Fǔzā</td>
<td>甫杂</td>
<td>fǔzā</td>
<td>be complicated (opposite of jiǎndān)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fǔjìn</td>
<td>Fǔjìn</td>
<td>甫進</td>
<td>fǔjìn</td>
<td>vicinity, near by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāi</td>
<td>Gāi</td>
<td>加</td>
<td>gāi</td>
<td>V: it is fitting that, should it's time to go whose turn?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāi zhōu le</td>
<td>Gāi zhōu le</td>
<td>加著乐</td>
<td>gāi zhōu le</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāi shéi?</td>
<td>Gāi shèi?</td>
<td>加 seeks?</td>
<td>gāi shéi?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāi</td>
<td>Gāi</td>
<td>加</td>
<td>gāi</td>
<td>V: correct, change, alter, revise RV: cannot change RV: can change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāibuliāo</td>
<td>Gāibuliāo</td>
<td>加把力了</td>
<td>gāibuliāo</td>
<td>RV: corrected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāidēliāo</td>
<td>Gāidēliāo</td>
<td>加得力了</td>
<td>gāidēliāo</td>
<td>RV: change for the worse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāiháole</td>
<td>Gāiháole</td>
<td>加好乐</td>
<td>gāiháole</td>
<td>VO: alter clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāihuáile</td>
<td>Gāihuáile</td>
<td>加好话了</td>
<td>gāihuáile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāi yǐshāng</td>
<td>Gāi yǐshāng</td>
<td>加以伤</td>
<td>gāi yǐshāng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gān</td>
<td>Gān</td>
<td>貢</td>
<td>gān</td>
<td>V: dare, venture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gānjǐn</td>
<td>Gānjǐn</td>
<td>貢近人</td>
<td>gānjǐn</td>
<td>A: hurriedly, at once, promptly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāojí–zhōngxué</td>
<td>Gāojí–zhōngxué</td>
<td>加集–集中学</td>
<td>gāojí zhōngxué</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāozhōng</td>
<td>Gāozhōng</td>
<td>加中</td>
<td>gāozhōng</td>
<td>N: senior high school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāozhōngsān (niánjī)</td>
<td>Gāozhōngsān (niánjī)</td>
<td>加中三年 (年几)</td>
<td>gāozhōngsān (niánjī)</td>
<td>N: senior high (abbr. of 379.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gè–gèchù</td>
<td>Gè–gèchù</td>
<td>各–各处</td>
<td>gè–gèchù</td>
<td>N: third year of senior high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gèyàngér</td>
<td>Gèyàngér</td>
<td>各样儿</td>
<td>gèyàngér</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;gè yǒu suǒ cháng&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;各有关长&quot;</td>
<td>各有关长</td>
<td>&quot;gè yǒu suǒ cháng&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gèzhōng</td>
<td>Gèzhōng</td>
<td>各中</td>
<td>gèzhōng</td>
<td>SP: each, every</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gěi...juān qián</td>
<td>Gěi...juān qián</td>
<td>该...欠钱</td>
<td>gěi...juān qián</td>
<td>N: senior high (abbr. of 379.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gêi</td>
<td>Gêi</td>
<td>各</td>
<td>gêi</td>
<td>V: follow get married to ask for contribution, solicit fund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēn</td>
<td>Gēn</td>
<td>根</td>
<td>gēn</td>
<td>V/A: follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēn...jiéhūn</td>
<td>Gēn...jiéhūn</td>
<td>根...结婚</td>
<td>gēn...jiéhūn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēn...juān qián</td>
<td>Gēn...juān qián</td>
<td>根...欠钱</td>
<td>gēn...juān qián</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēnshāng</td>
<td>Gēnshāng</td>
<td>根商</td>
<td>gēnshāng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēnzhe</td>
<td>Gēnzhe</td>
<td>根哲</td>
<td>gēnzhe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōnglǐ(de)</td>
<td>Gōnglǐ(de)</td>
<td>公理 (得)</td>
<td>gōnglǐ</td>
<td>BF: publicly established (school, factory, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngshí</td>
<td>Gōngshí</td>
<td>公事</td>
<td>gōngshí</td>
<td>N: official or public business, in contrast to sīshí, personal or private matters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngshìfángér</td>
<td>Gōngshìfángér</td>
<td>公事房儿</td>
<td>gōngshìfángér</td>
<td>N: office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngsī</td>
<td>Gōngsī</td>
<td>公司</td>
<td>gōngsī</td>
<td>N: company, corporation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngyuán</td>
<td>Gōngyuán</td>
<td>公园</td>
<td>gōngyuán</td>
<td>N: park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngkè</td>
<td>Gōngkè</td>
<td>公克</td>
<td>gōngkè</td>
<td>N: field of learning, course, lessons, 37 school work (M: -mén, course)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngkèbiǎo</td>
<td>Gōngkèbiǎo</td>
<td>公克表</td>
<td>gōngkèbiǎo</td>
<td>N: schedule of day's classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngqian</td>
<td>Gōngqian</td>
<td>公钱</td>
<td>gōngqian</td>
<td>N: wage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gòngchǎnzhǔyì</td>
<td>N: communism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gù</td>
<td>V: hire, employ (used with reference to the laboring class, compare with qīng)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gù chē</td>
<td>VO: hire a conveyance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gù chūzǐ</td>
<td>VO: employ a cook</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gù rén</td>
<td>VO: employ people</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gù sānlún</td>
<td>VO: to hire a pedicab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gù yōngrén</td>
<td>VO: employ a servant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guā huīzi</td>
<td>VO: shave (interchangeable with guā liǎn)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guā fēng</td>
<td>VO: wind blows</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guà</td>
<td>V: hang (something)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guàqǐlái</td>
<td>RV: hang up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guāhào</td>
<td>VO: register</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guāhào chuò</td>
<td>N: registration (desk, window, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guāhào xīn</td>
<td>N: registered letter (M: -fēng)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guà páizi</td>
<td>VO: to check baggage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guàshāng</td>
<td>RV: hang up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guài</td>
<td>V/SV: blame, be offended at, be strange, queer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guàibude</td>
<td>A: no wonder that</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guān</td>
<td>N: officer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guānyu</td>
<td>CV: about, concerning, in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guānxì</td>
<td>N: relation, connection, relevance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǎn</td>
<td>V: manage, take care of, attend to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǎndeliào</td>
<td>RV: can manage (actual form uncommon)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǎnzi</td>
<td>N: tube, pipe (M: -ɡên)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-guǎn</td>
<td>N: hall, building</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guāng</td>
<td>N: light, ray</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guǎngdōng</td>
<td>PW: Kwangtung (province)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guǎngdōng huà</td>
<td>N: Cantonese (dialect)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guǎngdōng rén</td>
<td>N: Cantonese (people)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǎnggáo</td>
<td>N: advertisement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǐ</td>
<td>N: customs, rules and regulations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǐ (zi)</td>
<td>N: chest, cabinet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yì (shāng) guǐ</td>
<td>N: wardrobe, chest of drawers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǔguǐ</td>
<td>N: book shelf</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wāngguǐ</td>
<td>N: cupboard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guò</td>
<td>V: pass, cross over</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guò jiāng</td>
<td>IE: you flatter me</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guò jiē</td>
<td>VO: cross a street</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guò jié</td>
<td>VO: celebrate a festival</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guòlái</td>
<td>RV: come over</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guò NU -tiáo jié</td>
<td>go NU blocks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guò nián</td>
<td>celebrate the New Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guò shěngrì</td>
<td>VO: celebrate a birthday</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guòqu</td>
<td>RV: go over, pass away (die)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guòzhòng</td>
<td>SV: overweight, too heavy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese Character(s)</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hánjiā</td>
<td>N: winter vacation</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hán</td>
<td>N: sweat</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàngzhōu</td>
<td>PW: Hangchow</td>
<td>197</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàngkōngkuàixīn</td>
<td>N: air mail special delivery (M: -fēng)</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàngkōngxīn</td>
<td>N: air mail (M: -fēng)</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàngkōngxīninfēngr</td>
<td>N: air mail envelope</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàngkōngxīnzhī</td>
<td>N: air mail letter paper</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàngkōngyōupiāo</td>
<td>air mail stamp</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hào</td>
<td>A: in order to, so that</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàochu</td>
<td>N: good point, benefit</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàoshūhuà</td>
<td>SV: be affable, easy to get along with</td>
<td>86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàowéng</td>
<td>SV: be good to smell</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàoxiǎng</td>
<td>V/A: resemble/a good deal like, just as though, it seems that resemble, appearance of</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàoxiǎng...de yàngzī</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàoxiǎng...shíde</td>
<td>resemble</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-hào(r)</td>
<td>M: number, size</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hébì</td>
<td>A: why is it necessary to? why insist on...? why must?</td>
<td>95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hébì fēi...bǔkē</td>
<td>95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Méqi</td>
<td>SV: be friendly, affable</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Méshī</td>
<td>SV: be suitable, fit</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hézi</td>
<td>N: box (small)</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-hé(r)</td>
<td>M: a box of</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hèibān</td>
<td>N: blackboard (M: -kuài)</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hènjǐū méijiàn</td>
<td>Ph: haven't seen you for a long time</td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hóng màozi</td>
<td>N: red cap</td>
<td>125</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hòngtóng</td>
<td>N: copper</td>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hòngyè</td>
<td>N: red leaf</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hòu</td>
<td>SV: thick (in dimension)</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hòuyuànr</td>
<td>N: backyard</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hūrán</td>
<td>MA: suddenly</td>
<td>187</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hú</td>
<td>N: lake</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Húdǔ (or hútǔ)</td>
<td>SV: be muddled, mixed up, stupid</td>
<td>228</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Húlìhǔdǔ (or hūlǐhǔdǔ)</td>
<td>SV: be muddled, mixed up, stupid</td>
<td>228</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hújiāomàìnr</td>
<td>N: (ground) pepper</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Húzǐ</td>
<td>N: beard, mustache</td>
<td>187</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
hūshī
N: nurse (M: -wèi) 116
huāyuánzǐ (huāyuányǔn)
N: garden 178
húá chūán
VO: row boat 179
hùlàbào
N: pictorial magazine 208
hùàichu
N: bad point 167
hùnnyǐng
V: welcome 227
hùnqìng
N: environment 178
hùn
V: exchange, change 65
hùn dōngxi
exchange something 65
hùn qián
exchange money 65
hùn yǐshàng
change clothes 65
hùnghūnghūngrén
yellow race 36
hùnghúntóng
N: brass 115
hùn (gei)
V: return (borrowed money or things) 74
hùnr
N: flower (M: -duǒ) 28
hùrfúdá
V: answer 158
hùrfúdá wèntī
VO: answer a question 158
hùl
AV: may, would 37
hùl
N: meeting 137
hùo
SV: be alive, living 139
hùobuliǎo
RV: be unable to live 139
hùoguólai
RV: come to 139
hùozhe
living 139
hùǒ
N: fire, stove 37
hùǒchēpiào
N: railroad ticket 3
hùǒjī
N: waiter, clerk (in stores) 54

jī
N: chicken (M: -zhī) 19
jǐdàn
N: (chicken) egg (M: -dá, dozen) 19
jǐdántāng
N: egg drop soup 19
jǐdōnghǎi
N: Christianity (usually refers to the Protestant church as vs. the Catholic church) 116
jǐhuī
N: opportunity, chance 18
jǐqì
N: machine 208
jǐfènzhījī
NU: what fraction? 149
jǐkǒu(r) rén?
how many persons (in a family) 228
jǐniánjǐ?
PW: what grade or year (in school)? 10
ji
ji bāoguō
ji chuqu
ji dōngxī
jígǎi
jílài
jíqu
jí xīn
jízōu

jí
ejūde
jíxing
jí zhāng
jízhe
jízhù

jǐ
jǐ qián
jǐqílái
jǐshāng zhēige
jǐ yǎdiǎnr xiāoxīn
jǐzài yǐkuàir

jiā měnkǒur

jiā

jiā
jiāju
dài jiāju

jiàqian
jiàqian dī
jiàqian gāo
jiàqian guǐ
jiàqian hǎo
jiàqian piányi

jiàzì
shūjià(zì)
yīshāngjià(zì)

jiān

jiānchá
jiānchá bìng
jiānchá xǐngli

jiāndān
jiānzhī(de)

jiàn
jiàn dàifū

jiānglí

V: mail, send by mail
VO: mail parcel post
RV: mail out
VO: mail things
V: mail to
RV: send by mail (here)
RV: send by mail (there)
VO: mail letters
RV: mail out

remember, keep in mind
V: remember
M: memory
VO: put on account, charge
V: keep in mind
RV: fix or hold in mind

V: add, increase, raise
VO: increase money; get a raise
RV: add up, add together
add this in
VO: be a little more careful
add together

gateway of a home

SV: be false

N: furniture (M: -jiàn, -tào)
VO: be furnished, include furniture

N: price, cost
low priced
high priced
expensive
priced right
inexpensive, cheap in price

N: rack, shelf, frame
N: book shelf, book case
N: frame for hanging clothes, clothes hanger, colthes tree, clothes rack

M: (for rooms)

V: examine
be examined (for a disease)
inspect baggage

SV: be simple
A: simply, just

SV: be cheap

VO: see the doctor

MA: in the future, hereafter, later
jiāng
  jiāngdào
  jiānghuà
  jiāng jiàqian
  jiāngshū
  jiāngtáng
  jiāngyàn

SV: be meticulous, particular
V: be meticulous or particular about; care a great deal about

jiāngjiǔ

N: soya sauce

jiāngyǒu

V: turn over to, hand over to
N: communication and transportation

jiāo(gei)
  jiāogeī tā
  jiāotōng

N: foot (of a person)
N: porter (baggage)

jiāozi

N: meat dumplings

jiào
  jiào huī
  jiào hú bānde
  jiào hú xuéxiào
  jiào hú yīyuàn
  jiàotáng
  jiàoyù
  jiàoyuán

N: church (organization)
N: church or mission school
N: church or mission hospital
N: church (building)
N: education
N: teacher (M: -wèi)

jiào shénme míngzi?
  jiàoxīng

RV: awaken

jiē diànhuà
  jiē rén
  jiēzhào
  jiēzhe

VO: answer a phone call
VO: meet and escort someone
RV: received, met

A: continuing, going on, or tying in where one left off when interrupted
continue reading
continue speaking
continue writing

jiēzhe niànn
  jiēzhe shùn
  jiēzhe xiè

SV: be strong, durable, sturdy
N: festival

jié

A: as a result, finally
N: result, solution
VO: marry

jiējué

V: solve, settle

jiè

V: borrow, lend, loan
V: lend to
CV...V: borrow from
VO: borrow money, lend money

250
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jièguǎng</td>
<td>please excuse me, pardon me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jièshèn</td>
<td>N: letter of introduction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīhuà</td>
<td>V/N: plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīn-</td>
<td>BF: gold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnbǐ</td>
<td>N: gold watch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīndé</td>
<td>N: of gold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnyíntóngtǐxiětǐ</td>
<td>N: gold, silver, brass, iron and tin (known as the five metals)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnzi</td>
<td>N: gold (N: -liǎng, ounce) made of gold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnzhī</td>
<td>A: recently</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīngjī</td>
<td>N/SV: economy/be economical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīngyànyàn</td>
<td>N: experience</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīngshēnbǐng</td>
<td>N: spirit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīngché</td>
<td>N: mental disorder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīngchájú</td>
<td>N: policeman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīngguān</td>
<td>N: police department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnǔ</td>
<td>N: police officer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnǔuīng</td>
<td>SV: long (of time)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnǔshì...yē...</td>
<td>IE: I've longed to meet you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiūnèměibàn</td>
<td>IE: Good, let's do it that way</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiūshì...yē...</td>
<td>A: even if (in supposition)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>júzhǔng</td>
<td>BF: office</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>júzhǔng</td>
<td>N: the one in charge of the office, postmaster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>júzǐ</td>
<td>N: orange, tangerine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>júzǐshuǐ</td>
<td>N: orange juice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jū</td>
<td>V: raise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūqílái</td>
<td>RV: raise up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūshǒu</td>
<td>VO: raise one's hand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juǎn</td>
<td>V: give, donate, contribute</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juǎnqian</td>
<td>VO: donate money, raise money by donation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juāngēi</td>
<td>V: donate to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juédìng</td>
<td>V: decide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

231
kāi
V: make out, write out (a note, slip, etc.)
(105)
kāi dānzi
VO: make out a slip (106)
kāi huì
VO: open a meeting, hold a meeting (137)
kāi liúshēngjī
VO: play the phonograph (157)
kāi wánxiào
VO: make fun of, to crack a joke (228)
kāi xīalai
RV: list (105)
kāi yào fāng
VO: to prescribe (169)
yīgē tǐāor
VO: write a note (105)

kān
V: watch (198)
kān dòngxi
VO: take care of things (198)
kān fāng
VO: take care of a house (198)
kān hǎizi
VO: take care of a child (198)

kànchūlái
RV: make out (seeing) (158)
kǎndáifu
VO: see the doctor (96)
kān diàn yǐng
VO: go to the movies (178)
kángfǎ
N: point of view, way of looking at things (209)

kànliái kànqù
consider from one angle and another (138)

kàn xì
VO: go to a play (178)
kànzhē bān
IE: do as you see fit (86)
kànzhē xiàng
look like (10)

kǎo
V: toast, bake (85)
kǎomiàn bāo
N: toast (85)
kǎo miàn bāo
VO: toast or bake bread (85)

kǎo
V: examine, take an examination (in studies) (158)
kǎoshì
V: examine, take an examination (in studies) (158)
kǎo shū
N: examination
examine, take an examination (in studies) (158)

kē
N: department (167)

kē sou
V/N: cough (96)

kē-
 prefixed to verb with much the meaning of the English—able, -ible (168)

kē bū shì le ma!
IE: isn't that the truth!, sure enough! (28)

kēkǒu kělè
N: coca cola (189)
kēlǐăn
SV: be pitiful (cf. kěxi) (208)
kēněng
SV/A/N: possible/possibly/possibility (168)
kēpā
SV: be productive of fear (168)
kēqù dī fāng
SV: places one can go to (168)
kěxi
SV: be pitiful, be regretful (cf. zāngǎo) (188)
kěxiào
SV: be laughable, funny (168, 116)

kě
SV: be thirsty (168)

kěshí
N: class room (149)

kētáng
N: class room (149)
kōng
kōng fāng
kōng hēzi
kōng le
kōngqī
kōng wūzi
kōng zuō

SV: be empty, vacant
vacant house
empty box
it's become empty
N: atmosphere, air
vacant room
vacant seat

-kǒu
M: mouthful, measure for person
228

kūqilai lé
RV: begin to cry
96

kū
SV: be bitter to the taste;
be hard, difficult (of life)
139

kùzi
N: pants, trousers (M: -tiǎo)
106

kuàixǐn
N: special delivery (M: -fēng)
45

kuān
SV: be wide, broad
54
N: width
55

kuǎnzhǎi
SV: be sleepy
168

L

lā
lāguolai
lāshänglái
lāshǒu
lāxiǎöu

V: pull
148
RV: pull over
148
RV: pull up
148
VO: shake hands
148
RV: pull down
148

RV: there isn't enough time,
can't make it
189
RV: there is time, can make it
189
N: round trip ticket
125
VO: send a letter (here)
37

lǎn
SV: be lazy
187

lèi
M: kind, class, category
226

lǐ
N: courtesy, ceremony; gift, present
227
N: church (lit. worshipping hall)
116
N: manners, courtesy
227

lǐ'àitáng
lǐmào

Lǐ Bāi
N: Li Po (one of the most celebrated poets of the T'ang Dynasty)
159

lǐshǐ
N: history
148

liánzī
N: curtain
75
N: drapes, shades, curtains
75

liánxì
V/N: practice
158

liáng
V: measure
54

liángkuài
SV: be cool (comfortably cold)
28
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>liǎngbān</th>
<th>two classes</th>
<th>148</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>liǎobude</td>
<td>IE: extremely, very; terrific</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐngsül</td>
<td>SV: odds and ends of, sundry, sundries</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐngqían</td>
<td>N: small change</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐngsül(de) dōngxi</td>
<td>odds and ends, sundry articles</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐngsül(de) shíqīng</td>
<td>sundry affairs</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐngjiào</td>
<td>IE: May I receive your instruction? (used to introduce a query)</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐngwài</td>
<td>A: besides, in addition to</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liú</td>
<td>SP: other</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liúqílái</td>
<td>V: keep, set aside, detain, save</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liú húzí</td>
<td>RV: put away</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liú shěn</td>
<td>VO: grow a beard or mustache</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liúshēngjī</td>
<td>V/VO: take care/be careful</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liúshēngjī pīānzī</td>
<td>N: phonograph</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liú tǐdō</td>
<td>N: phonograph record</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liúxià</td>
<td>VO: leave a message</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liúkǒu(r)</td>
<td>RV: leave it here</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lùzǐ</td>
<td>N: end of a street</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐxǐng</td>
<td>N: stove, range, heater, furnace</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luàn</td>
<td>V/N: travel/travel, trip (M: cī)</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luānpīdàzāo</td>
<td>SV: be confused, in disorder, mixed up, helter-skelter, in trouble</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luān shuō</td>
<td>IE: in confusion, speak recklessly, not know what one is saying</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**M**

<p>| máfàn | N: trouble, nuisance | 2 |
| mǎnghū | SV: be careless, not serious minded | 228 |
| mǎnghū hū | SV: be careless, not serious minded | 228 |
| mǎn | SV: to be full | 137 |
| mǎncē | N: local train | 125 |
| mǎnzōu | IE: Depart slowly, be careful (said to a friend who has been visiting and is leaving) | 227 |
| mǎnmānr(de) | A: slowly | 19 |
| méi | N: coal (M: -jīn, catty; -dūn, ton) | 115 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>méiyōu bànfǎ</td>
<td>VO: there is no way out</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méiguānxi</td>
<td>IE: It doesn't matter, it's not important.</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi(you) guānxi</td>
<td>VO: not related to, not relevant</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi shénme kēshūde</td>
<td>nothing that can be said</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi wénf</td>
<td>IE: There is no problem.</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méixiāngdào</td>
<td>RV: didn't expect</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi zhīshī</td>
<td>VO: uninitiated; uneducated</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi zuòr</td>
<td>there are no seats</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mènfángr</td>
<td>N: gatekeeper's room, gatekeeper</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mènkour</td>
<td>N: gate way, door way, in front of the door</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mènpiló</td>
<td>N: entrance ticket (of any kind)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mèng</td>
<td>N: dream</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mèngjiàn</td>
<td>RV: dreamed about, see... in a dream</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mǐ</td>
<td>N: hulled rice (grain) (M: -dǒu, peck; -shēng, pint; -jīn, catty)</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mínghòutiān</td>
<td>TW: tomorrow or day after tomorrow</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>míngzi</td>
<td>N: name (M: -gè) (his) name is...</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>míngzi jiáo...</td>
<td></td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miánhuá</td>
<td>N: cotton (M: -jīn, catty; -bāo, bale)</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miànbāo</td>
<td>N: bread (M: -kuài for slice; -gè for loaf)</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mùshī</td>
<td>N: preach, pastor, minister</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ná...zuò bīfang</td>
<td>take... for an example</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná shōu bīfang</td>
<td>PH: to describe with the hands</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná zhà</td>
<td>RV: take hold of</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà shì zìrán</td>
<td>IE: Naturally!</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎi</td>
<td>N: milk</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nánchū</td>
<td>N: difficulty</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nánɡuài</td>
<td>A: no wonder that</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nánfāng</td>
<td>N: the South</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nánfāng rèn</td>
<td>N: Southerner</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nányōngren</td>
<td>N: male servant</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nèikē</td>
<td>N: medical department</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nèirén</td>
<td>N: my wife (polite remark)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niáŋqīng</td>
<td>SV: be young</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niāndì</td>
<td>TW: end of the year</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-niánjī</td>
<td>M: grade in school</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

255
niǎnquīngde
niǎnquīng rén
N: young person
study in college
young person

niàn dàxué
niānshíle
niān Zhōngwén
RV: read (a book) until familiar
VO: study Chinese
with it

niǎor
niǎor jiàò
N: bird (M: -zhǐ)
singing of birds

Nǐn qǐng
IE: please go ahead, after you

niú
niúnǎi
N: cow, ox, cattle
cow's milk

nòng
V: arrange, take care of, see to,
lend to, handle

nòngcuòle
RV: make a mistake, didn't do it
right

nònghùàile
RV: it's been fixed

nòngzuò
RV: break (something)
take away

nuǎnhuo
SV: be warm (comfortably warm)

nǚyōngren
N: maid

P

páizi
N: sign, tag (baggage), brand,
made

pái
V: select, appoint or sent
(someone to do something)

-pán
chāpánzi
pánzi...
N: plate, platter, tray
yīpán cài
a dish of food

pāngzi
N: fat person

pǎolāi pǎoqù
run back and forth

pèi
pèike
V: accompany, escort
N: guest who is not the guest
of honor

pèi kè
VO: entertain a guest
to keep him company
pèi(zhe)ta
go along with him and keep
pèi(zhe)ta qù
him company
pèi(zhe)ta zuò yīhuír
sit with him for a while

pēn
N: basin, tub

pāng
V: bump into, run into
pēnghuaí
RC: bump into and break
pēngjiān
RC: meet by accident
pēngshāng
RC: run into
pf
pfáo
pfáiyí
pixiàng
pixié
pízi
pízi zuòde
piànzi
piànzi
piào
piǎofǎngr
piàoliáng
píngguō
píngxīn
pǔtōng
pǔtōng huà
pùzi mènkōur

qí
qí mǎ
qí zìxíngchē
qídāo
qíshì
-qílái
qí míngzi
qíhou
qíwàn
qíánhòu
qíánhòu yīgòng
qínyuànr
qín
qínhóng
qínlán
qíáng

N: skin, fur, leather, hide (M: -kuài, zhǎng)
N: hand bag, brief case, suit case
N: fur coat (M: -jiàn)
N: suitcase, trunk, chest (leather)
N: leather shoes
N: fur, leather, hide made of leather
N: record, film
N: card, calling card (M: -zhāng)
N: ticket (M: -zhāng)
N: ticket office
SV: be attractive, smart looking
N: apple
N: ordinary mail (M: -fāng)
SV: ordinary, common (cf. píngcháng)
A: ordinarily common speech
entrance of a store

Q

V: ride, straddle
VO: ride horseback
VO: ride a bicycle
V: pray
A: in fact, as a matter of fact
RVE: start to, begin to; (also indicates success in attaining object of the action)
VO: give a name, to name
N: climate
A: by all means, without fail, be sure
A: all told, altogether, (from beginning to end)
first and last, altogether
N: front yard
SV: be light (in color), shallow (of water, thought)
N: light red
N: light blue
N: wall

257
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>词语</th>
<th>英译</th>
<th>注释</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qínjìn</td>
<td>SV: be diligent (referring to physical work)</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīng</td>
<td>SV: light (in weight)</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīngjìng</td>
<td>SV: be quiet</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīngnián (ren)</td>
<td>N: young person</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīngcài</td>
<td>N: green vegetables</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīngtiān</td>
<td>N/VO: clear sky, day or weather</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīngxìng</td>
<td>N: condition, situation</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīngdài fù</td>
<td>VO: call a doctor</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīnghuì</td>
<td>IE: Please return (by guest)</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīngjià</td>
<td>VO: ask leave</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīngkè</td>
<td>VO: invite guests, give a party</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qīngwèn</td>
<td>IE: may I inquire</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qióng</td>
<td>SV: be poor</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qióngrén</td>
<td>N: poor people</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiūtian</td>
<td>TW: fall</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiū</td>
<td>V: ask, beg</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiū rén</td>
<td>VO: ask for help, ask a favor</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qū</td>
<td>fetch, take out, call for (jiē and qū both mean 'fetch', but jiē usually refers to people, qū to things)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qū bāoguō</td>
<td>VO: get parcel post</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qū chúlái</td>
<td>RV: take out, withdraw</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qū dōngxi</td>
<td>VO: fetch things</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qū qián</td>
<td>VO: fetch money, withdraw money</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qū xínglǐ</td>
<td>VO: get baggage</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qùn nián niândì</td>
<td>TW: end of last year</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qù xīn</td>
<td>VO: send a letter (there)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rènáo</td>
<td>SV: be noisy and bustling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rènkǒu</td>
<td>N: population</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sāndēng</td>
<td>third class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāncénglóu</td>
<td>third floor, three stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sānfēndé yóupiào</td>
<td>a three-cent stamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sānfēnzhěyì</td>
<td>NU: one third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sānghuà xuéqì</td>
<td>three terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sānlúnhà</td>
<td>N: pedicab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sānlúnr</td>
<td>N: pedicab (M: -liàng)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sàn
sànbù
sàn huì

shēfēi

Shāndōngshēng
shāndōng

shāngfēng

shāngliang

shāngbān
shāng dàxué
shāngdǎi
shānglái xiàqù
shāngxuéqī

Shàoxiàn

shèhuì
shèhuixué

shēn
shēnhuáng
shēnlǐ

shèntǐ

shènhme-de
xiàng...shènhme-de

shènzhìyú

shēng
shēng
shēng cài
shēnghuǒ
shēng lúzǐ
shēng rén
shēngrì
shēng ròu
shēng zǐ

shēngyín or shēng

shēng
shēng
shēngde

shēngqíán/shēng qián
shēngshíhòu
shēng shíhòu
shēngshí/shēng shí
shēngzhǎng

Shèngjīng

V: disperse, break up, adjourn 137
VO: take a stroll, take a walk 27
VO: adjourn a meeting 137

N: sofa (M: -gě, -tào) 75
Shantung province 36
N: cave 105

VO: catch cold 95

V: discuss, talk over 74

VO: go to class; go to work 148
go to college 36
N: God (M: -wěi) 137
go up and down 138
last term 149

PW: a fictitious town 114

N: society 36
N: sociology 36

SV: be deep (color, water, thought) 55
N: deep yellow 55
N: deep green 55

N: body, health 179
N: and so on
such as...etc. 75

A: even, to the point 217

V: give birth to; be born 35
SV: unfamiliar, raw, fresh 198
raw vegetables 198

V/N: live/livelihood, living 218
VO: start a fire in the stove, 65
light the furnace
stranger, new comer 198
N: birthday 227
uncooked meat 198
new word 198

N: sound, noise 95

N: province 36
V: save (economize) 85
lest, avoid, in order to
prevent (someone from
doing something) 198

SV/VO: economical/save money 86

SV/VO: time-saving/save time 86
SV/VO: trouble-saving/save trouble 85
N: governor of a province 148

N: Holy Bible, the Scriptures, 138
the Bible

259
shī
N: poem, poetry (M: -shǒu) 137
shītou
N: rock, stone 178
shǐzài
SV: be real, honest 167
shǐzài shuō
A: really, actually 167
shǐzī
N: across in the shape of the 3
Chinese character ten (十)
shǐzī-lùkǒu
PW: street or road intersection 3
shǐ
V: try 46
shǐ wěndu
VO: take temperature 96
-shǐ
N: style, pattern fashion 74
jiǔshǐ
old style 74
nánshǐ zhájiā
southern fried chicken 74
xīshǐ
western style or fashion 74
xīshǐ fǎngzi
western style house 74
xīshǐ jiāju
western style furniture 74
xīnshǐ
modern style 74
Zhōngshǐ
Chinese style 74
shǒushi
V: fix, repair, clean up, put in 10
order, straighten out
shǒushi dōngxi
straighten things up 10
shǒushi hǎole
straightened out 10
shǒushi qíchē
repair an automobile 10
shǒushi wūzi
finished fixing 10
shǒushi xíngle
fix up a room 10
shǒushi tuó
pack up 10
shǒu diàndēng
N: receipt 66
shǒujin
N: flash light 64
shǒuxu
N: towel (M: -tiāo; -kuài) 10
shǒudì
N: procedure, process 167
shǒushi
N: capital 218
shǒushi
N: jewelry (M: -jiàn) 105
shū (or shòu)
SV: be well acquainted with; 198
ripe, be cooked, done
shū ren
N: acquaintance 198
shūjià
N: summer vacation 149
shù
N: tree (M: -kě) 28
shùyèzi
N: tree leaf 29
shuā
V: brush 11
shuā yá
VO: brush teeth 11
shuā yǐshāng
VO: brush clothes 11
shuāzi
N: brush (M: -bā—generally for 11
things which have handles or
parts grasped by the hand in
using)
shuāzi
V: fall (of a person); 188
throw (something) down
shuāzǐdiào
RV: fell down 188
shuāzǐdiào
RV: fell down and came off 188
260
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shuāihuáiile</td>
<td>RV: it fell down and broke; it was thrown and broken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuāisīle</td>
<td>RV: fell down and died</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuāitángxiale</td>
<td>RV: fell flat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuāizhao</td>
<td>RV: fell down and got hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-shuāng</td>
<td>M: pair (for shoes, socks, gloves, chopsticks, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuǐguānzi</td>
<td>N: water pipe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuǐguǒ</td>
<td>N: fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shùnbian</td>
<td>A: when convenient, at your convenience</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōfǎ</td>
<td>N: the way of speaking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōlí shuōqǜ</td>
<td>discuss (the matter)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuō shǐzài de</td>
<td>back and forth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǐlì(de)</td>
<td>tell you the honest truth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sī</td>
<td>BF: privately established (school, factory, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīrén</td>
<td>V: die</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīníanjí</td>
<td>N: dead person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǐshēng</td>
<td>PW: fourth grade or year (in school)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǐng lǐ</td>
<td>N: four tones (of the Chinese Mandarin language)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūihuà</td>
<td>VO: give gifts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>súyǔ(r)</td>
<td>N: proverb, common saying (M: -jù)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>súshè</td>
<td>N: proverb, common saying (M: -jù; interchangable with sūihuà)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūnán</td>
<td>N: dormitory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūnánchuílái</td>
<td>V: reckon, calculate, add, count</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūnánshang</td>
<td>RV: figure out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūfrán...dàogǐ</td>
<td>RV: include in, add, count</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūfrán...kěshi</td>
<td>although...after all...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suǒ</td>
<td>A: although...(yet)...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suǒqīlái</td>
<td>V/N: lock (M: -bǎ)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suǒshàng</td>
<td>RV: lock up (things, people)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-suǒ(r)</td>
<td>RV: lock up (doors, locks)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M: for houses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tái  N: stage, platform 126
táitou  VO: lift up one's head, 159
raise up one's head
tàiyang  N: sun, sunlight 178
tănzi  N: blanket (M: -kuài; tiǎo) 75
-táng  BF/M: hall/class period 149
Tăngshì  N: Táng (Dynasty) poetry 158
(M: shōu)
tăng
	tăngxìa  V: lie down 95
	tăngzài chuángshàng  RV: lie down, fall down 95
	 lie on the bed 95
-tào
	yítào jiāju  M: set of, suit of 75
	yítào pánzi wǎn  set of, furniture 75
	yítào shū  set of dishes 75
	yítào yǐshàng  set of books 75
	yítào yǐshàng  suit of clothes 75
(tèbiè)-kuàichē  N: express train 125
tèng  SV: ache 95
tǐmu  N: topic, theme 208
tǐyùguǎn  N: gym 149
Tiānzhǔjiào  N: Catholic Church (Roman) 116
tiàn

tián biǎo  V: fill in 168
	 VO: fill in a form 168
tián  SV: be sweet 19
tiāo  V: choose; select 218
tiào  N: brief note, short message 66
tiě
tiěde  N: iron 115
	 N: of iron 115
tǐngchūlai  RV: make out (hearing) 158

tǐng piānzì  VO: listen to record 157
tǐng xì  VO: go to a play 178

tǐngzhe xiàng  sounds like 10
tǐng

tǐng chē  V: stop, park 2
	 VO: park a car, stop a train 2
tǐng

tǐng hǎo  A: very 84

tǐng shūfu  very good 84

tǐng yōuyì  very comfortable 84

tǐng yóuyì  very interesting 84
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tōng</td>
<td>V/RVE: pass through/get through to be open to traffic, be accessible by train or bus to put through a phone call to correspond by mail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tóng</td>
<td>N: copper, brass N: of copper, of brass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōngbān</td>
<td>N/VO: classmate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōngshí</td>
<td>A: at the same time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōngshí</td>
<td>N/VO: co-corker, colleague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōngxué</td>
<td>N/VO: schoolmate, fellow students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōngkuai</td>
<td>SV: be content, be happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tóu</td>
<td>V: steal A: stealthily, secretly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tóutōrde</td>
<td>A: stealthily, secretly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōu</td>
<td>SV: first class train N: have a headache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōudōng(chō)</td>
<td>SV: first class train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōutōng</td>
<td>N: library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tǔ</td>
<td>N: dust, earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuǐ</td>
<td>V: push RV: push open RV: push up RV: push down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàizi</td>
<td>N: sock, stocking (M: -shuang, -zhī for one of a pair)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wài</td>
<td>EX: hello (used in telephone conversation only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàile</td>
<td>surgical department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wānquán</td>
<td>SV/A: be complete/completely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàng shàng tuǐ</td>
<td>push upward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wéi</td>
<td>CV: for A: in order to, in order that in order to, so that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèi(de)shí</td>
<td>N: temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèi(de)shí hǎo</td>
<td>N: thermometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wēndù</td>
<td>V: review</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

263
wén
wénchúlai
wénjìan
wénhuà
wénnyán
wènti
wèir
wǒ zhì jǐ lái
wǒ gàn shuō
wǒ lái
wǒ nèirén
wǒmen dàjìā
wǒfāng
wǒxiāndiàn
wù

xiǎo
xīfū
xīcān
xīhú
xīhú Fǎndiàn
xīguàn
xīdèdiáo
(xī)liànpén
xīzào
(xī)zǎofāng
(xī)zǎopén
xī
xīyuánzì
-xià
xiàbān
xiàqì yǔ láile
xià wù
xiàxuěgī
xià xuě
xià yǔ
xiàyuè(yuè)dī

V: smell
RV: make out (smelling)
RV: smelled
N: civilization, culture
N: literary language, classical style
N: question, problem
taste, flavor, odor
IE: I want to do it myself
IE: I venture to say that, I'm sure
IE: I want to do it
my wife (polite remark)
N: bedroom (M: -jiān)
N: radio
N: fog

X
N: tin
N: Western-style clothes
(M: -tào)
N: Western-style meal (M: -dàn)
PW: West Lake (of Hangchow)
N: West Lake Hotel
N: habits
RV: can be washed off
N: wash basin
VO: to take a bath
N: bathroom (M: -jiān)
N: bath tub
N: play, opera
N: opera house, theater
BF: (RV-ending indicating downward motion or capacity)
VO: class is dismissed; office hours are over
RV: begin to rain
VO: become foggy
next term
VO: snow (falls)
VO: rain (falls)
TW: end of next month
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xià</td>
<td>xìà</td>
<td>V: startle, frighten</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàhuàile</td>
<td>xìàhùài</td>
<td>RV: scared to pieces</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàsīle</td>
<td>xìàsīlè</td>
<td>RV: scared to death</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià yìtiǎo</td>
<td>xìà yìtiǎo</td>
<td>startled</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàtian</td>
<td></td>
<td>TW: summer</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xián</td>
<td>xián</td>
<td>SV: be salty</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiánncài</td>
<td>xiánncài</td>
<td>N: salted vegetables</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiánjīdàn</td>
<td>xiánjìdàn</td>
<td>N: salted egg</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiánròu</td>
<td>xiánròu</td>
<td>N: salted meat</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiányú</td>
<td>xiányú</td>
<td>N: salted fish</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàn</td>
<td></td>
<td>M/N: hsien, county</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiànzhǎng</td>
<td>xiànzhǎng</td>
<td>N: magistrate of a county</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāng</td>
<td></td>
<td>SV: be fragrant, smell good</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>banana</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngjiǎo</td>
<td>xiāngjiǎo</td>
<td>N: perfume</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngshūǐ, xiāngshuí</td>
<td>N: good smell, aroma</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngwèi</td>
<td>xiāngwèi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngdāng</td>
<td></td>
<td>A: fairly</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngzi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngqílái</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: suitcase, trunk, chest</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngqǐ lǎojiǎ lāile</td>
<td>RV: recall, think of recall old times</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngqǐ tǔ shuòde laile</td>
<td>recall my old home</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngqǐ yǐqiānér</td>
<td>recall what he said</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shìqǐng laile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāng bānfā</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO: to think of a way</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngbūqílái</td>
<td></td>
<td>RV: do not remember</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāng zhúyì</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO: think of a way</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàng</td>
<td></td>
<td>AV: resemble, seem like</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàng...nàyàngr</td>
<td>SV: look alike</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàngpíānr</td>
<td></td>
<td>like that</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàng...zhèyàngr</td>
<td>N: photograph</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiānglái</td>
<td></td>
<td>like this</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎode</td>
<td></td>
<td>A: always and customarily, up to now</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td></td>
<td>V: know</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎoshuōr</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: novel</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎoxué</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: elementary school</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàozhǎng</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: principal of a school president of a college</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiē</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: shoe (M: -shuǎng for pair, -zhǐ for one of a pair)</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiēpù</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: shoe store</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiēbùdé</td>
<td></td>
<td>RV: writing cannot be finished on time</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiēfǎ</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: the way of writing</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīn</td>
<td></td>
<td>heart, mind</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

265
新信
xinwen
xinxi'an jidan
xinxi'an niuni
Xinyu GongsI
xin
xinfengr
xin jiao
xin Jidujiiao
xin Tianzhujiao
xin tong (you tong)
xinxiang (youxiang)
xin Yisujiiao
xinzhii
xin zongjiao

Xingqi
xingqir
xingqitiann
xingqiyou

Xingli
xinglipiaoz
xiong
xingqu
xingkuai
xiuxi
xuyao
xu
xueqi
xuewen
xue Zhongwen

Xue
SV: fresh; new
N: news
fresh egg
fresh milk
N: New Asia Company
V: believe
N: envelope
VO: accept a religion, adhere to
a religion, be a Christian
VO: be a Christian
VO: be a Catholic
N: mail box (M: -ge)
N: mail box (M: -ge)
VO: be a Christian
N: letter paper (M: -zhang)
VO: believe in religion

N/TW: week/Sunday
TW: Sunday
TW: Sunday (interchangeable
with xingqir)
TW: Monday
N: baggage (M: -jian)
N: baggage ticket
V: wake up
N: interest (cf. yuyisi)
A: fortunately
V: rest, take a vacation
V: need
N: need
V: permit, allow, let
N/M: semester, term
N: learning, knowledge
VO: study Chinese
N: snow

Y
yao
ygao
yake
yashe
yuan
N: tooth
N: toothpaste (M: -tong--
meaning tube, keg, barrel, tank)
N: dental department
N: toothbrush (M: -ba)
N: tobacco, cigarette (M: -zi, stick; -gen, stick; he(r), box; -bao, pack; -tiakor, carton); smoke

266
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>English Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yán</td>
<td>N: salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánjiǔ</td>
<td>V: study, make special investigation or study of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánshèr, yánse</td>
<td>N: color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánjǐǎng</td>
<td>V/N: give a speech, lecture/a speech (interchangeable with jiǎngyǎn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánjīng</td>
<td>N: eye (M: -zhī)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánjīng(r)</td>
<td>N: eye glasses (M: -fù, set)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánkē</td>
<td>N: optical department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yángguīzǐ</td>
<td>N: foreign devil, foreigner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánghuō</td>
<td>N: matches (M: -gēn for stick; -hé(r) for box; bāo for package)--lit. foreign fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yào</td>
<td>N: medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yáofǎnr</td>
<td>N: prescription (M: -zhāng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yáofǎng</td>
<td>N: drugstore (cf. yáopù)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yáopù</td>
<td>N: medicine (herb) shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yàoshi</td>
<td>N: key (M: -bā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yēlǔ Dàxué</td>
<td>Yale University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yēsūjiào</td>
<td>N: Christianity (usually refers to the Protestant church as vs. the Catholic church)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yěcān</td>
<td>V/N: picnic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yē</td>
<td>M: page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèzǐ</td>
<td>N: leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīfu</td>
<td>N: clothes (M: -tào for suit, jiān for piece)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīyuàn</td>
<td>N: hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yíqiè</td>
<td>N: all of anything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yíge xīngqī</td>
<td>NU-M: one week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐbāo dōngxi</td>
<td>N: a package of something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐbāo yān</td>
<td>N: a package of cigarettes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐbiānr...yǐbiānr...</td>
<td>A: on one side...on the other, on one hand...on the other, a mouthful of rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐkǒu fàn</td>
<td>N: soap (M: -kuài)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐzǐ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...yīnèi</td>
<td>MA: within</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīwèi</td>
<td>V: suppose, think that, consider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīdǐānyǐdǐāny(de)</td>
<td>A: little by little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīn tiān</td>
<td>N/VO: cloudy day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīn-</td>
<td>BF: silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīnde</td>
<td>N: of silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐnshāor</td>
<td>N: silver spoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐnzi</td>
<td>N: silver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

267
yīnggǎi
A: ought to (interchangeable with yīngdāng)

yòngchu
N: use, usage
VO: put time and effort into
SV: work or study hard

yònggōng
N: servant

yòngren
SV/VO: put heart into,
apply one's mind to

yòngxīn
PH: write in Chinese
made of copper (brass)

yòng Zhōngwén xiě
(yòng) tóng zuòde

yòu
N: oil, sauce

yòuchǎi
N: mail man
N: postage
N: postage stamp (M: -zhāng)
N: Post Office

yòufēi

yòupiào

yòuzhèngjū

yòuqi (shì)
A: especially, above all

yòuyǒng
V: swim
N: swimming pool

yòuyōngchǐ

yòudǎoǐ
SV: be logical, reasonable
V: there is plenty (of it)
there is a difference

yòudeshǐ
VO: to be related to,
to be relevant

yòufēnbiē
SV: be well disciplined,
well mannered

yòugānxì
VO: energetic, spirited

yòugūijū
VO/SV: have experience/
be experienced

yòujiāngshēn
VO/SV: logical, reasonable
SV: be polite

yòuyǎngyàn
SV/VO: be interested in,
show interest in

yòulǐ
SV: learned

yòulǐmào

yòuxióngqu

yòuxuěwēn
SV/VO: have specialized knowledge

yòuyuǎnjū
A: a little bit

yòuyīdiǎnr
VO: well informed, educated
there are seats

yòuzhīshǐ

yòzuōr
N: rain

yú
N: reason

yuánghù

yuánzǐ
N: garden (M: -ge)
theater (M: -jīǐ)

yuǎnzi
N: yard

yuē
V: invite

yuēzhǎo
RV: reach an agreement with,
(someone to do something)

yuēhuì
N: engagement, appointment

yuèdī
TW: end of the month
N: moon

yuèliàng

268
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yuè...yuè</td>
<td>A: the more...the more...</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuè chī yuè pàng</td>
<td>the more you eat the fatter you are</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuè lì yuè...</td>
<td>A: getting more and more...</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuè lì yuè nán</td>
<td>getting more and more difficult</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuè lì yuè zāogāo</td>
<td>getting worse and worse</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuè xiě yuè kuài</td>
<td>the more you write the faster you get</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yùncǎi</td>
<td>N: cloud (M: -kuǎi)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yùnqì</td>
<td>N: luck, fortune</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yùndōng</td>
<td>V: exercise</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yùndōngchāng</td>
<td>N: athletic field</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zázhì</td>
<td>N: magazine</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zài hu</td>
<td>V: be of concern to, care</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zài shuō</td>
<td>A-V: see about it, talk further, consider it further</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zài</td>
<td>A: furthermore, moreover</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zànměi</td>
<td>V: praise</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zànměishǐ</td>
<td>N: hymnal, hymn</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zāogāo</td>
<td>SV: what a mess! too bad</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zāowǎn</td>
<td>A: sooner or later</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zéi</td>
<td>N: thief</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎ</td>
<td>V: fry in deep fat</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎ jǐ</td>
<td>N: fried chicken</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎ jiǎozi</td>
<td>VO: fry chicken</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎ yǔ</td>
<td>N/V: fried meat, dumplings</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎi</td>
<td>N: fried fish</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎi huār</td>
<td>VO: fry fish</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎi</td>
<td>V: take off (hat, flower, etc.)</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>take down (picture, telephone receiver, etc.; opposite guǎ)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎi</td>
<td>VO: pick flowers</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎnshǐ</td>
<td>SV: be narrow</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎnzhù zhǎntái</td>
<td>A: temporarily, for the time being</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎng</td>
<td>RV: stop, stand still</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N: station, platform</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhăng</td>
<td>V: grow, rise in price</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–zhāng</td>
<td>N: head (of an organization)</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhāng</td>
<td>N: account, bill</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhāoliǎng</td>
<td>VO: catch cold</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
zhǎo (qiǎn)  V(O): make change  56
zhǎo dài fū kàn bìng  PH: see the doctor for an ailment  96
zhǎo mǎ fan  VO: look for trouble, make trouble  2
zhào ài kē sī-guāng  VO: take an X-ray  169
zhào ài kē sī-guāng xiàng  VO: take an X-ray picture  169
zhào xiàng  VO: take a picture, be photographed  168
zhào xiǎnɡjǐ  N: camera  168
zhèibān  this class  148
zhèixuěqǐ  this term  149
zhèizhǒnɡ rèn  this kind person  36
zhèn  N: needle, pin  96
M: stitch, shot, etc.
zhèntou  N: pillow  75
zhènɡ  A: just, exactly  125
zhènɡ bā diǎn (bā diǎn zhènɡ)  eight o'clock sharp, exactly eight o'clock  125
zhènɡ shì kǔ lí qián  ten dollars even  125
zhènɡ hē shí  just right  55
zhènɡzhí  N: politics  208
zhī shí  N: knowledge  179
zhī  V: be worth  106
zhī qián/zhí qián  VO/SV: be worth (so much) money/ be valuable  106
zhīde  AV: worth while  106
zhǐ  V: point  167
zhǐ zhe  V: pointing  167
zhīnǎo  A: the best thing is to..., the only thing to do is...  178
zhōnɡ xué  N: high school, secondary school  115
Zhōng wēn  N: Chinese  46
Zhōng wēn shū  N: Chinese book  46
Zhōng yěyōnɡ Gōnɡyuán  N: Central Park  178
-zhōnɡ  M: kind of, sort of, race  36
zhònɡ  SV: heavy (in weight)  47
zhù yì  N: idea, way, plan  179
zhǔ yī  N: principle (-ism)  208
-zhú  BP: (denoting firmness or security)  46
zhǔ xǐáo  VO: live in the school  149
zhǔ yǐ yuán  VO: stay in the hospital  169
zhǔ yuán  VO: stay in the hospital  169
zhǔ yuán de bīng rén  N: in patient  169
zhǚ yí  VO: pay attention (cf. liú shén)  208
AV/V: pay attention to/pay attention to
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhuàng</td>
<td>zhuàngmǎnle</td>
<td>V: pack, load</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zhuàngqīlái</td>
<td>RV: packed full</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zhuàngshāng</td>
<td>RV: pack up</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RV: pack up</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuī</td>
<td>zhuībushāng</td>
<td>V: chase after, catch up with</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zhuīdēshāng</td>
<td>RV: cannot catch up with</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zhuīshāng</td>
<td>RV: can catch up with</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RV: catch up with</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuībù</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: table cloth</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhūnn</td>
<td>zhūnshíhòu</td>
<td>SV/A: be accurate/certainly on time</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǐxi</td>
<td></td>
<td>SV/A: be careful/carefully (cf. liǔshēn; xiǎoxìn)</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zīdiǎn</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: dictionary</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zīliāishuǐ</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: running water</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zīliāishuǐbǐ</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: fountain pen</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zīrán</td>
<td></td>
<td>SV/A: be natural/of course, naturally</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zīsī</td>
<td></td>
<td>SV: be selfish</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zīxíngché</td>
<td></td>
<td>V: bicycle</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōngjiào</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: religion</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōng(shi)</td>
<td></td>
<td>A: always</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōubudàng</td>
<td>zōuǐi zōuqù</td>
<td>RV: to tired to walk any farther</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zōushūlè</td>
<td>walk back and forth</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RV: go over (a piece of road) until familiar with it</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǔ</td>
<td>zǔchūqu</td>
<td>V: rent</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zǔfāng</td>
<td>rent out</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zǔqían</td>
<td>VO: rent a house</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N: rental</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǔzhǐ</td>
<td></td>
<td>V/N: organize, organization</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǔi</td>
<td></td>
<td>N: mouth</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòbuxià</td>
<td>zuòmǎnle</td>
<td>RV: will not seat</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RV: all seats are taken, (the room) is full</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zuòshānr</td>
<td>VO: to ride a pedicab</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(zuòr)</td>
<td>N: seat (M: -gè)</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòshùlè</td>
<td></td>
<td>RV: do (something) until familiar with it</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòchéng</td>
<td></td>
<td>RV: accomplish</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòděle</td>
<td></td>
<td>RV: the job is completed</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòlǐbāi</td>
<td></td>
<td>attend a religious service, go to church</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòliànxi</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO: do exercise</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zuòmèng</td>
<td></td>
<td>VO: dream</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>